





Division

SCB

Section

10,773b







鮮 英 文 法  
선 영 문 법

AN INTRODUCTION

TO THE

KOREAN SPOKEN LANGUAGE

BY

HORACE GRANT UNDERWOOD

IN TWO PARTS :

PART I. GRAMMATICAL NOTES

PART II. ENGLISH INTO KOREAN

SECOND EDITION

REVISED AND ENLARGED WITH THE ASSISTANCE OF

HORACE HORTON UNDERWOOD, A.B.

EUROPE AND AMERICA

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY, NEW YORK

THE FAR EAST

KELLY & WALSH, LTD., YOKOHAMA, SHANGHAI

THE KOREAN RELIGIOUS TRACT SOCIETY, SEOUL, KOREA

(ALL RIGHT RESERVED)

1914

**PRINTED BY**  
**THE FUKUIN PRINTING Co., L'td.,**  
**YOKOHAMA, JAPAN.**

## PREFACE.

---

It was hardly expected when this volume saw the light of day in 1889 that so many years would pass before it was supplemented by something more elaborate and better and it is only the fact that nothing else has been prepared to take its place and that the author has been so beseeched for a new edition that has led us to issue this second edition.

We have sought advice and help and suggestions for changes on every hand and regret very much that the press of work has hindered others from giving to us the assistance that would have made this book of much more value to the student of Korean.

In the present edition the author is glad to say that he has had the assistance of his son who went over the revision of the book with the enthusiasm of a new student of the language.

We regret that more changes have not been made because we feel that the imperfections of the book would have warranted a more thorough revision of the book, but a careful review of all the parts with the assistance of some of the best Korean scholars available did not result in more than what is seen in this new edition. There are one or two appendices that have been added which will contribute not a little to the study of the language. The use of the book we believe will be very much enhanced by the alphabetical indices; one, a general index in English and the other an index of grammatical forms in Korean.

Special credit should be given to Mr. Sang-Kyu Pack, Ph. B. of Brown University, U. S. A. who has assisted me throughout.

As before, so again the author would gladly welcome any criticisms or suggestions either as to form or matter with which the student of the language may kindly favor him.

Seoul, Korea, January 1914.

H. G. U.

---

## PREFACE.

---

TO FIRST EDITION.

In this introduction to the study of the Korean spoken language, a systematic grammar, in the strict sense of the word, has not been aimed at. It has been attempted simply to *introduce* the student to the study, to clear away some of the obstacles and difficulties that present themselves, and to show him the way by which he can become a proficient speaker of Korean.

Passing through Japan on my way to Korea, Dr. Imbrie's "English-Japanese Etymology" was brought to my notice; and, the plan of study there presented appealing to me as best suited to my individual needs, I decided to adopt it in the study of Korean.

In carrying out this idea, I was greatly aided by obtaining the Korean translation of Dr. Imbrie's sentences prepared by Mr. Song Soun Yong, (who had become my teacher) at the direction of Lieut. Bernardo (U.S.N.)

After correcting, arranging and adding to them, I found them of so great advantage to myself, and they proved of such valuable assistance to the many to whom I loaned them, that I determined, to carry the classification still further, to formulate rules of which the sentences should be illustrations, and to throw the whole into a form similar to Dr. Imbrie's book.

Most of this was done over three years ago, but various circumstances hindered its publication, and, in the mean time, realizing that such a work was in a measure one-

sided and approached the language merely from the English standpoint, a first part, which has been called "Grammatical Notes," and which views the subject from the opposite side has been prepared.

From the very nature of the case, the second part taking English idioms and phrases and showing their Korean equivalents, assumes more of a practical than a theoretical form. On the other hand, the first part taking Korean phrases, idioms, sentences, showing their use among the Koreans, their structure, and their various forms, becomes more theoretical than practical.

This complete division of a work on a language into two parts, each of which approaches it from a different standpoint, has, it is believed, never been attempted in one book before, and yet it is felt that such a division will materially aid the student in obtaining an accurate and well *systematized* knowledge of neat distinctions, and idioms, and enable him more speedily to speak a pure and not an Anglicized Korean. It is true that at times, the one naturally overlaps the other, but is equally certain, that each has its own especial place, which the other can in no way fill, and a true conception of any language can best be obtained by viewing them separately.

The author takes pleasure in acknowledging valuable suggestions made by Prof. Homer B. Hulbert of the Royal Korean University, concerning some of the uses of the compound tenses, and also his indebtedness to Mr. A. Stewart Annand who kindly corrected much of the proof, and whose friendly assistance in many ways has greatly aided him.

Credit also is due to the pioneers in the language, the French missionaries, from whose work the author gained

his first ideas of Korean grammar. To more than any one else, however, thanks are due to Mr. Song Soun Yong (宋淳容) whose sound ideas on the use of the language as it is spoken to-day, and whose intimate acquaintance with the Chinese classics, combined with his thorough knowledge of the use of the native *Ernun* have been of invaluable assistance.

The author will gladly welcome any criticisms or suggestions either as to form or matter, with which students of the language may kindly favor him.

H. G. U.

Seoul Korea,

November 1889.

---

1. The first of these is the fact that the

the second of these is the fact that the

the third of these is the fact that the

the fourth of these is the fact that the

the fifth of these is the fact that the

the sixth of these is the fact that the

the seventh of these is the fact that the

the eighth of these is the fact that the

the ninth of these is the fact that the

the tenth of these is the fact that the

the eleventh of these is the fact that the

the twelfth of these is the fact that the

the thirteenth of these is the fact that the

the fourteenth of these is the fact that the

the fifteenth of these is the fact that the

the sixteenth of these is the fact that the

the seventeenth of these is the fact that the

the eighteenth of these is the fact that the

the nineteenth of these is the fact that the

the twentieth of these is the fact that the

the twenty-first of these is the fact that the

the twenty-second of these is the fact that the

the twenty-third of these is the fact that the

the twenty-fourth of these is the fact that the

the twenty-fifth of these is the fact that the

the twenty-sixth of these is the fact that the

the twenty-seventh of these is the fact that the

the twenty-eighth of these is the fact that the



# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

## PART I.

### GRAMMATICAL NOTES.

#### CHAPTER I.

##### **Introductory remarks on the study of Korean.**

1, \* Difficulties surrounding the study.—2, A Korean teacher.—3, Approach the study from two sides.—4, Use of this book.—5, Korean written language.—6, Necessity for the study of Chinese.—7, Ōnmun and Chinese rarely if ever mixed.—8, Pronunciation.—11, Arrangement of chapters.—12, Honorifics ..... Page 1.—10.

#### CHAPTER II.

##### **The Korean alphabet and its Sounds.**

13, An alphabet.—14-22, Vowel sounds.—23-27, Diphthongs and triphthongs.—28, The consonants.—29, The part euphony plays.—30-38, Simple consonantal sounds.—39, Aspirated consonants.—41, Names of simple consonants ..... Page 10-23.

#### CHAPTER III.

##### **The Noun.**

42, Korean noun indeclinable.—43, Distinctions of number, subject, object not made.—44, Postpositions.—45, Methods of expressing gender.—46, Ambiguity in regard to number.—48, Reduplication of words.—51,—Compound nouns and the use of a knowledge of Chinese.—52,

---

\* These numbers refer to the paragraphs.

Uses of 군, 장이, 질 etc.—53, Verbal nouns.—54, Surnames.—56, Korean titles.—57, No names for women.—58, The wrong and proper use of the term 부인 ..... Page 24—39.

## CHAPTER IV.

### Pronouns and Pronominal adjectives.

59, All pronouns really nouns.—60, Personal Pronouns.—62, Personal pronouns and postpositions united,—63, No third personal pronoun in Korean.—65, Reflexive pronouns.—66, All Korean interrogatives also indefinite.—67, 어늬, 헛던, and 무슴 used adjectively.—69, Use of 아요.—71, Demonstrative pronouns.—72, Words derived from these.—73, The relatives 자 and 바 ..... Page 40—53.

## CHAPTER V.

### The Numeral.

74, Two sets of numerals. Adjective and substantive forms.—75, Sinico-Korean numerals have only an adjective form.—77, Specific classifiers.—79, Money.—81, Oriental numbers.—82, The months of the year.—83, Days of the month.—85, Hours of the day—86, Fractions.—87,—Multiples,—88, Interest on money.—89, The Korean word 번.—90, Weights and measures.—92, The peculiar use of ㉔ and the meaning of 즈음 ..... Page 54—71.

## CHAPTER VI.

### The Postposition.

93, Kinds of postpositions.—94, Simple postpositions.—95, Euphonic changes that may creep in.—109, 나 and 가 considered as postpositions.—111, Composite postpositions,—113, Verbal postpositions.  
Page 72—86.

## CHAPTER VII.

### The Verb.

114, Difficulties; terminations and conjunctions not distinguished.—115, Verb impersonal and no number.—118, A few so called "personal

forms.—119, Two kinds of verbs, active and neuter; active verbs.—120, Neuter verbs.—121, Three voices; active, causative and passive.—122, Method of forming the passive voice. Method of forming the causative.—123, Causative in *ㅅ*.—125, But one conjugation.—127, The Basal Conjugations.—128, Each part divisible into three parts.—The stem.—129, The tense root.—132, The particle *ㅂ*.—133, Simple and compound tenses.—134, The use of the simple tenses.—135, The use of the compound tense.—136, The form *ㅂ* defective and lack of discrimination between terminations, and conjunctions.—137, Different kinds of terminations.—138, Declarative terminations.—141, Interrogative terminations.—144, Propositive terminations.—145, Imperative termination.—146, The parts of the Basal Conjugations.—147, Indicative mood.—148, Volitive mood.—149, Two kinds of participles.—150 Verbal participles.—151, Different forms of past verbal participle have caused discussion.—153, Postpositions may be affixed.—155, The use of the verbal participle; As connectives.—156, Introducing cause, manner, means.—157, Used also with object of principal verb.—158, In making compounds.—159, The future verbal participle.—160, Relative participles.—161, The four most common.—162, The present, its form and use.—163, The past, its form.—164, It uses.—165, Past relative participle of neuter verbs.—166, The future relative participle.—167, Future past relative participle.—166, Progressive participle.—169, Each tense has its relative participle.—170, The Former Supine.—171, Verbal noun in *ㅁ*.—172, Verbal noun in *ㅅ*.—176, The desiderative base.—177, The negative base.—178, The principle parts.—179, The paradigm of the basal conjugation.—180, Other verbs to illustrate.

Page 87,—142.

### The Verb (*Continued*).

181, The verb with conjunctions.—182, List of these conjunctions.—183, Their union with indicative tenses.—185 to 203, The use of these conjunctions considered individually.—204, The desiderative form.—205, Another desiderative form.—206, Negative particles.—207, Formation of negative verbs.—208, The negative verb *마오*.—209, Certain other negative forms.—210, Auxiliary verbs.—211, A list of some of them.—212 to 219, The uses of these auxiliaries.—220, Modifications produced by nouns forming new verbs.—221, List of these words and their uses.—227, Adverbial effect produced by nouns with postposition when used with the verb.—228, Verb in indirect

discourse.—229, The imperative verb.—230, Contractions and ellipses.—242, The principal parts of some verbs ..... Pages 142—193..

## CHAPTER VIII.

### The Adjective.

243, True adjectives.—244, Adjectives used attributively and predicatively.—245, Distinctions attainable through adjectival verbs.—246, Formation of adjectives.—247, Adjectives in 슨 —248, Adjectives formed by reduplication of stem.—249, Nouns used as adjectives.—250, Comparison of adjectives—little used.—251, How formed.—252, Use of 보 —253, Use of 에 —254, Superlative how formed.

Page 194—199

## CHAPTER IX.

### The Adverb.

255, Primitive adverbs.—256, Derived adverbs. Those derived from verbs.—257, The future verbal participle used as an adverb.—258, Distinctions between these two classes of adverbs.—259, The Korean past verbal participle used as an adverb.—260, Adverbs derived from nouns and pronouns.—261, Comparison of adverbs.—262, Primitive adverbs used with postposition.—263, Numeral adverbs.—264, Position of adverb in sentence.—265, Korean responsiveness.—266, Answers to negative questions ..... Pages 200—204.

## CHAPTER X.

### The Conjunctions.

267, Two classes of conjunctions—Co-ordinate and subordinate.—268 and 269, Uses of co-ordinate conjunctions.—270, Subordinate conjunctions etc. .... Pages 205—207.

## CHAPTER XI.

### Honorifics.

271, Importance of use of honorifics.—272, Persons spoken of, how honored.—273, Honorific form of verb how constructed.—274, Hono-

rific verbs honoring the subject.—275, Honorific verbs honoring the object.—276, The two honorifics combined.—277, The use of honorific nouns, postpositions etc.—278, List of some of these nouns.—279, These honorifics not the same in all the provinces.—280, Terms for addressing servants etc..... Pages 208—212.

## CHAPTER XII.

### The Structure of the sentence.

281, The general rule.—282, Position of the different parts of speech in relation to the words they govern or are governed by.—283, Position of the parts of a sentence.—284, Several verbs connected.—how used.—285, Indefiniteness of Korean sentences.—286, Use of two negatives.—287, The use of elliptical forms.—288, Constant absence of postpositions—verbal modification etc.—289, Use of conjunctions; the sentence and paragraph the same.—290, Need of practice.

Pages 213—217.

## PART II.

# ENGLISH INTO KOREAN.

### Chapter I. THE VERB.

§ I. The verb "To be" ..... Page 221

§ II. The verb "To have" ..... " 225

§ III. Auxiliaries.

Am, Is and Are—Was, Were—Do and Did—Have, Has, and Had  
—Shall and Will—Should and Would—Can and Could—May  
and Might—Let, Make, Have and Get—Must—Ought and  
Should—Think and Suppose—Intend—Want—Wish and Hope  
—Need—Seem and Look ..... Pages 227 to 257

§ IV. The Infinitives ..... " 258 " 262

§ V. Passive Construction ..... " 262 " 266

§ VI. Conditional Sentences ..... " 267 " 268

Chapter II. THE NOUN ..... " 269

Chapter III. THE ARTICLE ..... " 270 " 271

Chapter IV. THE PRONOUN ..... " 272 " 279

§ I. Personal Pronouns.

Simple and Compound ..... " 272 " 275

§ II. Relative Pronouns ..... " 275 " 277

§ III. Interrogative Pronouns ..... " 277 " 279

Chapter V. PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

This, That, and Such—Either, Neither and Both—Each—Some—  
Any—Every—No, None and Nobody—All—Several—Few—  
One, Ones—Other, Another—Same—Much—Many—Most—  
Enough ..... Pages 280 to 319

Chapter VI. THE ADJECTIVE.

§ I. Used Attributively, and Predicatively ..... Pages 320 to 322

§ II. The Comparison of Adjectives.

Comparative degree—Superlative degree ..... Pages 322 to 325

Chapter VII. THE ADVERB.

§ I. .Adverbs of Place.

Here—There—Where ..... Pages 326 to 331

‡ II. Adverbs of Time.

Always—Whenever—Usually—Often and Frequently—Sometimes  
—Seldom—Never and Ever—Again—When—While—As—  
Then—Now—Already—Formerly—Recently, and of Late—  
Ago—Just Now—Still and Yet—Till and Until—By and By—  
Soon—Directly—Before—After and Since—Long Time—Some-  
time—Finally and At Last ..... Pages 331 to 359

‡ III. Adverbs of Cause, Manner and Degree.

Why—Accordingly, Consequently, and Therefore—How—So—  
Like and As—Very—Only—Too—Even—Almost—About.

Pages 359 to 368

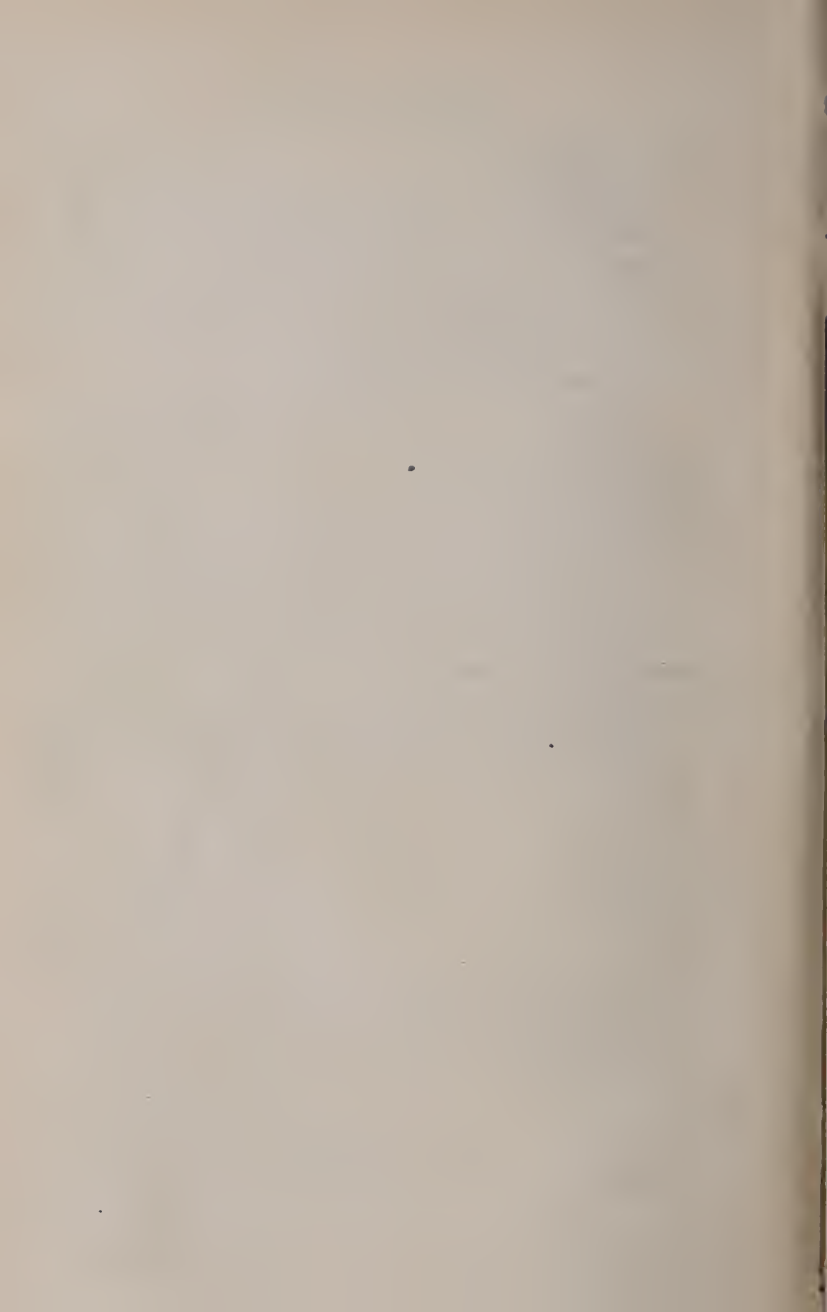
Chapter VIII. THE NUMERAL....., 369 to 370

Chapter IX. THE PREPOSITION.

At—In—On—To—From, Out of and Off—By—Through—With  
—Without—Of—For—Across, Over, and Beyond—Among—  
—Around—Before—Behind—Between—During—Except, Be-  
sides and But—Instead of—Over and Above—Under and Below  
—According to—In accordance with ..... Pages 371 to 391

Chapter X. THE CONJUNCTION.

And—Both.....and—Too, Also—But—Though, Although, and  
Still—Either, Or, and Whether—Neither.....Nor—If, and  
Unless—Because—Then—That—Than.....Pages 392 to 406.





# PART I.

---

## GRAMMATICAL NOTES.

---

### CHAPTER I.

---

#### INTRODUCTORY REMARKS ON THE STUDY OF KOREAN.

---

1.—The study of Korean is as yet in its infancy, ways and means are few, and good books written in the native character are still fewer.

Despite the fact that twenty odd years have passed since the first edition of this book was published and that new Missionaries have many facilities provided in the form of organized language classes and several very helpful books; the difficulties are still many. Obviously even in that part of the language which we get through books we must have the assistance of native teachers, and Koreans with an accurate knowledge of the rules of grammar or with any idea of the real functions of a teacher are still rare.

Under these circumstances, the difficulties which sur-

round the student are numerous, and while in these pages the writer tries in part to systematize the language, and to aid the student, it must be remembered that no language was ever learned entirely from books, and from the very start he must accustom his ear to accurately hear, and to retain every variety of sound, and by unremitting effort train his tongue to reproduce them exactly.

The test of exactness in pronunciation is the ability to make oneself understood, not merely by one's own teacher and native associates, who will soon become accustomed to the wrong pronunciations, and mistakes of a foreigner, but by strangers and outsiders. The writer would therefore strenuously urge upon the learner the necessity of daily use among the people, of what he learns. Let him not be afraid of mistakes, by mistakes he must learn. Let him from the very first day, though he knows but one or two words, go out and begin to use them.

We have said that the test of exactness in pronunciation, is the ability to make oneself understood by strangers and outsiders. Here we must remember that another element besides that of the individual word enters in, that of the *rate* of pronunciation of the combinations of syllables and words which make up, what is in fact the unit of effective speech, the sentence. Let each word be pronounced ever so correctly if the rate of speech in the completed sentence be not at least approximately correct, the result if understood at all, will be stilted and laughable.

2.—A Korean teacher is of course indispensable, but he cannot be expected to teach in any sense of the word as we understand it. He is to give the exact pronunciation, to assist in reading the character, to explain forms of

expression and idioms, if possible give distinctions between synonyms, and to correct the mistakes of the learner. From him the student is to get all he can, and upon him to practice at every opportunity. He should be a good Chinese scholar ; as the Chinese enters so largely into the composition of words, and as far as possible, a man well acquainted with the native Korean character, and having no knowledge of English, so that the student shall from the start be thrown upon his own resources.

3.—It must be borne in mind, that not only are the characters and words different from those to which we have been accustomed, but also the forms of expression and the idioms. The surroundings of the Korean are entirely different and his habits of thought are necessarily as unlike ours as his surroundings ; hence “ Put yourself in his place ” should be the motto of the student ; he must early learn *to put himself in the place of the Korean*. He must learn to hear with Korean ears, to see with Korean eyes, to enter heartily into the life and surroundings of the Korean, to appreciate fully all their circumstances, and as far as possible in fact, to think Korean. Until this is done at least in part, no one can become a speaker of Korean, and as long as the student continues to think in English, and to translate word for word into Korean, he will not be speaking Korean at all, but simply an Anglicized jargon of words, almost as unintelligible to the uninitiated, as Pidgin English is to the foreigner when he first lands on Chinese soil, and in many cases he will convey a meaning directly opposite to what he intends.

4.—To accomplish this end and think in Korean, we must approach the language from two sides, the Korean

and the foreign. This has been the object in this work. In the first or grammar part of the book, the effort has been made to present Korean from the Korean stand point. That is to say ; to take the Korean as it is, systematize it in part, divest it of everything foreign, show as far as possible how the Korean thinks and how he constructs his sentences. In the second part, on the other hand, we have tried to approach the language from the foreign standpoint, and taking English ideas, English thoughts and English methods of expression, to show how they would be expressed by the Korean. These have been named for convenience Parts I and II, not because the one should be studied before the other, or is of more importance, for they should be studied together, and we should try to approach the language from the two sides at once.

I would particularly emphasize this last as many, even among those who teach the language, seem to consider Part I proper for the beginner and Part II a fitting study for the second year, As a matter of fact Part II would be better for the beginner, if the two parts are to be studied separately, but really the two must be taken together if the student would secure the greatest benefit from the use of this book.

In the study of the second part, the student is urged to take each sentence and analyze it carefully, ascertain the "whys" and "wherefores," notice its structure and *memorize* it; at the same time reading carefully Part I, and comparing what it says with what he finds put in practice in Part II. Of course the chapter on The Alphabet and its Sounds, must be mastered first, but as soon as this is done let the student begin on the sentences in Part II,

while he is at the same time reading carefully, and learning all there is to be learned in the chapter on the noun. He need not wait till he has studied the verb but simply glance at such words and terms as may be necessary.

5.—This work does not enter into the study of the Korean written language, which differs from the spoken, largely in verbal terminations and a few expressions never used in the colloquial. A little careful study, will soon acquaint one with these and their meanings, and while much hard work would be needed to make one a proficient and exact writer of "the book language," one may soon with comparative ease understand it.

6.—In the writing of Korean, two forms of character are used, the native Önmun and the Chinese. In all official correspondence, philosophical books, and in fact in nearly all books of real value, the Chinese character was used in the past, the native Önmun being relegated to a few trashy love stories and fairy tales. This difference in the written language, led to the assertion that there are two languages in Korea, and we sometimes hear foreigners talk of "speaking in the Önmun." There are not two languages and this expression is wrong, for the "Önmun" is simply a system of writing, and it would be as sensible to talk of "speaking in Munson's system of short hand." The idea that there are two languages in Korea is strengthened by the fact, that foreigners, who are perhaps tolerably well acquainted with words purely Korean, have, when they heard conversations carried on between officials and scholars, been unable to understand what was said. They have been on their way to the houses of the officials and passing through the streets and hearing the merchants the middle classes, and the coolies, talking among them-

selves, have been able to understand, while when they came into the presence of the officials, they have been unable to comprehend the meaning of statements and questions addressed directly to them. At once they have said "There are two languages" while the truth is that the officials have simply been using those Korean terms which have been derived from the Chinese. Chinese may be called the *Latin* of Korea. It is more polite and scholarly to use "*Latinized*" Korean; but among merchants, middle classes, and in common daily conversation this is not largely used: the learner does not hear it, hence the difficulty. This however being the case, it becomes necessary to make a study of these Sinico-Korean terms, for which he will find frequent and important use.

In connection with his use of these terms one thing must be borne in mind, that if a Sinico-Korean noun is used, the adjective or pronominal adjective used to qualify or limit it, should also be Sinico-Korean and *vice-versa*. All such words however undergo inflection and change as though pure Korean. This rule is more apparent, and is more necessary of observation in connection with the formation of compound words.

7.—Reference was made in the previous paragraph to the two forms of writing used. They were however for the most part, kept entirely distinct, and unlike the Japanese, the two were seldom mixed. Now and then in a letter written in the Chinese, Korean particles might be interspersed to assist the reader, or in a letter written in the "Önmun" the names of persons, places, etc., might be written in the Chinese. A few books were to be found written in both the Chinese and the "Önmun" but for the most part, the Chinese character was written on one page



with its equivalent in Önmun on the other, The rule was, as we have stated, not to mix the two characters, and the almost universal practice to use either the Önmun or Chinese alone.

8.—Before leaving the subject of Chinese and “Önmun we would call attention to the fact that the great majority of the students of Korean utterly neglect the study of the Chinese characters on the ground that they cannot study two languages at once and prefer to study Korean.” Nothing could be more ridiculous or more short sighted. The study of the Chinese character is not the study of a different language but the study of Korean derivations carried on in Korean and opening up new etymological avenues leading the student to a clearer understanding of the language which he hears, and nearer to a mastery of elegant and scholarly speech. It will bring him the respect and regard of scholarly Koreans and broaden his vocabulary with astonishing ease and speed as new words will appear as merely new groupings of old friends.

This lack of vocabulary on the part of missionaries is often remarked among Koreans and indeed it would be laughable were it not rather disgraceful to notice how completely at sea many even of the older missionaries are when a conversation takes a turn not directly religious or domestic or when any but a religious book is taken up. It may be claimed that a perfect knowledge of a foreign language is impossible, but whether we dispute this point or not, we ought simply to bring our knowledge to a point where we can join intelligently in conversations outside the ordinary domestic and religious lines and read with a fair amount of ease literature more difficult than the Bible and translated hymns.

9.—Great care must be exercised in the matter of pronunciation.\* An effort has been made in the chapter on the alphabet and pronunciation, to give rules to aid in this, but do not be satisfied with these, test each rule given, for yourself, try them with your teacher, and prove the result by conversation with natives, who have not accustomed themselves to your peculiarities and mistakes.

There must be from the start systematic drill of both ear and tongue. Which of the two is most important it is not easy to state, but certainly if one does not manage to distinguish with the ear the different sounds it will be impossible to reproduce them with the tongue.

One must as far as possible daily go where he will hear the Koreans talking among themselves. He should do this from the second day of his arrival and note-book in hand mark down the sounds as he hears them. This should be his constant practise. He should never allow himself to get to the place where words and sounds pass him unnoticed. Get acquainted with some Korean who is popular, and has a large circle of friends, become a regular habitue of his Sarang at the hour when you know the Koreans will be assembling. At the start, it will seem as though the Koreans speak with unusual rapidity until your ear becomes more accustomed to the sounds.

The tongue also must be drilled. Various are the exercises that may be suggested but the best the writer knows, is to take a good long Korean sentence learn it off by heart, practice clause by clause until the whole can be repeated at least as fast as by the fastest Korean speaker. In order to secure this, time yourself with a watch and be sure you reach some standard, such for instance, as that suggested by Prof.

---

\* See Appendix on phonetics.



Cummins of 5 syllables per second. After such a sentence has been thus learned, begin again with another until it becomes one's habit to speak and talk as fast as the ordinary Korean. In this drill however from the very start one must articulate clearly and correctly, or the speed will be worse than useless.

10.—As has been observed above, Koreans think along entirely different lines from the foreigner, and we would here warn the learner against a few mistakes into which, on this account, he is apt to fall. As will be stated further on, in many cases Koreans do not use the terminations, signifying number, case, etc. unless ambiguity would be caused by their absence. It is not a universal rule, but it is so common that one is almost safe in adopting it as such, and saying: "Never use such terminations unless a true interpretation of the sentence requires them."

Foreigners are apt in their efforts to speak correctly to use postpositions wherever possible, and thus to speak in what the Korean must consider a stilted manner. This almost *laconic conciseness* of speech is much more observable in the use, or rather neglect of use of the personal pronouns, and here more than anywhere else the foreigner is most apt to blunder.

11.—Native grammarians make but three parts of speech, namely; Nouns, Verbs, and Particles: and, while it might have been well in some respects to have confined ourselves to this division, it has been deemed best for the sake of convenience, to classify and arrange these three divisions under nine heads, namely: Nouns, Pronouns, Numerals, Postpositions, Verbs, Adjectives, Adverbs, Conjunctions, and Interjections.

As all pronouns are in reality nouns, the chapter, on the former, immediately follows that on the latter. As nearly all true Korean adjectives, are really verbs, the chapter on verbs precedes that on adjectives.

12.—Finally we would urge that much care and pains be taken in the study of Korean honorifics. At first sight they appear so numerous and varied that the student is almost discouraged, but he will soon learn that with some trifling exceptions, the whole matter is governed by but a few rules. It is important that he address servants and attendants in low terms, and speak of himself in higher terms ; while in the presence of officials and men of high rank, he must always speak of himself in low terms and address them in the highest forms. While this in theory is so contrary to the Christian idea, in practise in Korea it is almost a necessity, unless one desires to be considered entirely ignorant of both language and propriety.

---

## CHAPTER II.

## THE KOREAN ALPHABET AND ITS SOUND.

13.—Unlike most languages of the East, Korean has neither a syllabary like the Japanese, nor a system of characters representing individual ideas, like the Chinese, but a true native alphabet. The writing is always in syllables, each syllable forming we might say a separate character, but divisible into its component parts.

14.—The Korean alphabet contains twenty-five letters, of which eleven are vowels and fourteen consonants.

They are as follows:—

## VOWELS.

ㅏ a, ㅑ ya, ㅓ ǒ, ㅕ yǒ, ㅗ ō, ㅛ yō, ㅜ u, ㅠ yu,  
ㅡ eu, ㅣ i, ㅚ a.

## CONSONANTS.

ㅋ k, ㅁ m, ㄴ n, ㅂ p, ㄷ r or l, ㅅ s or final t,  
ㅌ t, ㅈ j, ㅇ ng, ㅊ hk, ㅍ hp, ㅎ ht,  
ㅊ tj or ch, and ㅇ h.

As is stated in all books on foreign languages, it is an impossibility to give the exact pronunciation of all the letters of one language in that of another, but a few words here concerning the pronunciation and use of the above alphabet, may be a help in the study of Korean.

Of the vowels, it will be seen at once that the second, fourth, sixth, and eighth are simply modifications of the

first, third, fifth and seventh, and it will be noted that this modification is shown in the writing, by the reduplication of the characteristic sign of the vowel, and expressed in the speaking, by the interposition of the sound of the English consonant *y* before the vowel sound. If then we give the sounds of the first, third, fifth and seventh, we will at once have the sounds for all of the first eight vowels.

Note.—No vowel can stand alone at the commencement of a Korean syllable, but if it has no consonant of its own must be preceded by the consonant ㅇ, which is then mute.

### PRONUNCIATION OF THE VOWELS.

Whereas English vowels may have a glide such is not the case as a rule with the Korean vowels even though final.

15.—아. This vowel has two sounds.

(1) That of the Italian *ä* found in the English words *father*, *arm*, etc.

Ex. 알, *äl*, (*egg*) ; 안경, *än-gyeng*, (*spectacles*).

(2) That of the regular English short *ă* found in *mat*, *add*, etc.

막대기, *mäk-tă-gi*, (*a stick*).

16.—어. This vowel has two sounds.

(1) That of the regular English short *ö* seen in *not*, *odd*, etc.

Ex. 얼핏, *öl-hpit*, (*quickly*) ; 어디, *ö-dai*, (*where*) ; 업소, *öp-sö*, (*to carry on the back*).

(2) That of the German *ö*, or the English *ur* of *urn*.

Ex. 어루신너, *ö-rö-si-nai*, (*father*) ; 어룬, *ö-run*, (*adult*), and 업소, *öp-sö*, (*to be lacking, to be not*).

17.—오. Here we can use the regular long and short English *o* sounds.

---

\* See Appendix on phonetics.

(1) Long  $\bar{o}$ , of old, etc. is for the most part found in open syllables.

Ex. 호랑이, hō-rang-i, (*a tiger*); 오,  $\bar{o}$ , (*five*).

(2) The short  $\check{o}$  of lot, etc. occurs generally in closed syllables.

Ex. 봉, pŏng, (*an envelope*); 공수, kŏng-sa, (*minister*); 오늘, ō-nel, (*to-day*).

18.—우. From this vowel we get the sound of either the long  $\bar{oo}$  of *moon*, or the short  $\check{o}$  of *wool*.

(1) Ex. 구경, koo-gyeng, (*a sight*); 부리, pōō-ri, (*a beak*); 눈, nōōn, (*snow*).

(2) Ex. 풀, hpŏol, (*herbage*); 눈, nŏōn, (*eye*).

19.—As has been said above, the compound vowels 야, 여, 요, 유, have respectively the sounds of the above four simple vowels with *y* preceding.

Then. 야 will be either  $y\bar{a}$  or  $y\check{a}$ .

여 will be either  $y\bar{o}$  or German  $y\check{o}$ .

요 will be either  $y\bar{o}$  or  $y\check{o}$ .

And 유 will be *yoo*.

20.—으. Here we have the sound of the French *eu*, as in *feu* (*fire*)

Ex. 그, keu, (*that*); 그늘, keu-neul, (*shade*); 늙은이, neulk-eun-i, (*an old man*).

21.—이. This vowel has two sounds.

(1) The sound of  $\bar{i}$  in the words *machine*, *pique*.

Ex. 비, pī, (*rain*); 시, sī, (*hour*); 이상하오, ī-sang-ha-o, (*to be strange*).

(2) The sound of the regular English short  $\check{i}$  of *ill*, *hit*, etc.

Ex. 기다리오, kī-da-rī-o, (*to wait*); 십, sip, (*ten*).

22.—으, This vowel has really four sounds.

(1 & 2). The same two sounds as given for 아.

Ex.

(1) **한하오**, hān-ha-o, (*to hate*); **수신**, sǎ-sin, (*ambassador*).

(2) **기다리오**, ki-dǎ-ri-o, (*to wait*).

(3) Most commonly the sound is that of the short Italian *a* seen in staff.

Ex. **말**, (*horse*); **어해**, à-hai, (*boy*).

(4) The sound of *e* in cable, **오널**, ò-nel, (*to-day*); **고름**, kò-rem, (*pus*); **기름**, kī-rem, (*oil*).

Note.—In spelling the Koreans distinguish between 아 and 으 by a reference to their position in writing, calling 아 “upper *a*” and 으 “lower *a*.”

23.—Before we turn to the consideration of the consonants it would be well to linger a little while over a few combinations, of vowels. In the following diphthongs and triphthongs it will be seen that 오 and 우 placed before other vowels in the syllable generally give the sound of the English *w*.

The combinations most commonly used with their pronunciations are as follows.

1st. **애**, has the sound of the *ai* before *r* in *air* etc.

Ex. **개**, (*a dog*); **내**, (*I*); **대개**, (*for*); **새**, (*new*).

2nd. **어**, has the same sound as the preceding:

Ex. **대신**, (*instead*); **미우**, (*very*).

24.—3rd. **에**, has the regular long sound of the English *a* in *day*.

Ex. **네**, (*you*); **셋**, (*three*).

Sometimes also it has the sound of the short English *e* in *end*.

Ex. **메누리**, (*a daughter-in-law*).

It has also though very rarely, the sound of *i* in *machine*.

Ex. 메토리, (*hempen sandals*).

4th. 예, properly has the sound of the English word *yea*.

Ex. 계란, (*eggs*) ; 예비하오, (*to make ready*).

However, after consonants where it would be hard to pronounce the *y*, the sound is the same as 예, though perhaps a little prolonged.

Ex. 데일, ,(*the first*) ; 세상, (*the world*).

25.—5th. 와, has the sound of *wä*, the *a* being the long Italian *a* which is seen in *father*, etc.

Ex. 과히, (*excessively*) ; 화초, (*flowers*) ; 실과, (*fruit*).

6th. 외. Here we have No. 1 preceded by 오 which having the effect of *w* gives us the sound of *wa* in *ware*.

Ex. 왜국, (*Japan*) ; 화, (*a torch*).

7th. 외. The exact sounds that this diphthong may have, can only be learned by practice.

Sometimes it may have the sound of *we* in *were*, as 되오, (*to become*) ; 괴롭소, (*to be troublesome*) ; sometimes that of *wa* in *way*, as 누외, (*husband and wife*) ; sometimes almost this same sound with the *w* less distinct, as 죄, (*sin*) ; and sometimes also the sound of French *eu*, as 쇠, (*metal*).

26.—8th. 위, consists of 우 placed before 이, and may therefore have either of the two sounds which are derived respectively by placing *w* before the two sounds of the latter vowel,

Ex. 1st, 월, (*moon*). 2nd, 원하오, (*to desire*) ; 권하오, (*to exhort*).



At times also it may have the sound of *wo* in *won*.

Ex. 원, (*a mandarin*) ; 권, (*a volume*).

9th. 위, may have any of the sounds of 에, preceded by *w*, but for the most part it is restricted to the sound of *wa* in *way*.

Ex. 궤, (*a box*) ; 왜, (*why*).

10th. 위. This diphthong has the force of *w* before the long continental *i* sound and may be pronounced like the English *we*.

Ex. 귀, (*ear*) ; 귀호오, (*to be rare*) ; 뒤, (*back*).

11th. 위. This combination of vowels is rarely found, and it has the same sound as 위 though perhaps a little more prolonged.

Ex. 취호오, (*to be intoxicated*).

27.—12th. 의. The effect of this diphthong is produced by pronouncing the two sounds of 으 and 이 together, running them into one.

Ex. 귀슈, (*a soldier*).

Note.—There is a tendency among foreigners to pronounce this like the short *i* of *hit*, but this is wrong and should be carefully avoided.

Sometimes this becomes almost the same as the English *we* without movement of the lips.

Ex. 의심, (*doubt*).

### THE CONSONANTS.

28.—Of the Korean consonants, nine are simple and five are aspirated.

The simple are ㄱ *k*, ㄴ *m*, ㄷ *n*, ㄹ *p*, ㄺ *r* or *l*, ㄻ *s*, ㄼ *t*, ㄽ *j*, and ㅇ *ng*.

The aspirated are, ㅋ, ㆁ, ㆅ, ㆆ and ㆏.

Five of the simple consonants, ㄱ, ㄴ, ㄻ, ㄼ, and ㄽ are often doubled when they can be written as such, or



the doubling is expressed by placing 人 before the letter. This 人 is then called "twin siot." These double consonants may then be written :—

ㄱㄱ, ㅈㅈ, ㅊㅊ, ㄷㄷ, ㅌㅌ,  
or ㄱᄇ, ㅈᄇ, ㅊᄇ, ㄷᄇ, ㅌᄇ.

The effect of the doubling, is generally expressed by a harder and more incisive utterance of the double consonant, while that of the aspirating, by a decidedly rough breathing. These differences can only be learned and reproduced by careful study and constant practice.

29.—In connection with the consonants and their sounds, euphony plays an important part, sometimes completely changing the sound of the consonant itself, sometimes merely modifying, and sometimes rendering it absolutely mute. The rules of euphony cannot all be here given, but in describing the sounds of the consonants, an attempt is made to so explain them and their changes that the main difficulties may be overcome.

It may be well to notice here, that euphony plays such an important part in Korean, that it oftentimes completely changes the initial consonant of postpositions and other suffixes. In a language where the character is syllabic like the Japanese, there is not the same latitude for such changes as in a language purely alphabetic like the Korean. It is these euphonic changes in the postpositions which have led foreigners to follow and tenaciously hold to, the example of the French Missionaries, in Latinizing the noun and giving five distinct declensions with eleven cases each.

#### CONSONANTAL SOUNDS.

30.—We will consider first the simple consonants.

1st. ㄱ. This has commonly the sound of *k* in *king*  
As, ㄱ, kap, (*price*) ; 가오, ka-o, (*to go*).

Sometimes it may have the sound of *g* in *give*.

Ex. ㄴ다가, it-ta-ga, (*in a little*), and 막다, mak-tä-gi, (*a stick*).

When before ㅁ (m), ㄴ (n), or ㄹ (r) ; this letter has the sound of *ng*.

Ex. 약물, yang-moul, (*medicinal water*).

ㄴㄴ이, nŏng-nŏk-i, (*enough*).

약력, yang-ryok, (*medicinal effect*).

31.—2nd. ㅁ. This is pronounced like the *m* of *money*.

Ex. 머므오, mö-meu-o, (*to tarry*).

32.—3rd. ㄴ. This for the most part has the common sound of *n* in *panel*.

Ex. 나, na-nän, (*as for me*) or 눈, nŏon, (*eye*).

Sometimes when followed by the vowel *i*, it has the effect of the English *y*, or may be mute.

Ex. 니, yi, (*a tooth*) ; 익히오, ig-hi-o, (*to be cooked*).

When preceded or followed by ㄹ *l*, both consonants take the sound of *l*, in *calling*.

Ex. 별노, pyel-lo, (*specially*) ; 날, nal-lai, (*swiftly*).

33.—4th. ㅇ. Before a vowel this is mute. In Korean no vowel is allowed to stand alone, or to begin a syllable, and in cases where this would occur ㅇ is used.

Ex. 아오, a-ō, (*to know*) ; 아마, a-ma, (*perhaps*).

At the end of a syllable, this has the sound of *ng* in *song*.

Ex. 양, yang, (*sheep*) ; 병, pyung, (*a bottle*).

34.—5th. **ㅂ**. This commonly has the sound of the unaspirated *p* in English.

Ex. **밥**, pap, (*rice*) ; **보오**, po-o, (*to see*).

Sometimes it may have the sound of *b*.

Ex. **아바지**, abaji, (*father*) ; **불가불**, poul-ga-boul, (*of necessity*).

Before **ㅁ** (*m*), or **ㄴ** (*n*), or **ㄹ** (*r*), it generally has the sound of *m*.

Ex. **협문**, hyŏm-mun, (*side gate*) ; **압니**, am-ni, (*front teeth*) ; **십리**, sim-ni, (*ten ri*).

35.—6th. **ㄷ**. This consonant may have the sounds of *l*, *n*, or *r*.

It has the sounds of *l* :—

(a). At the end of a word.

Ex. **말**, mal, (*horse*) ; **불**, pul, (*fire*) ; **밀**, mil, (*wax*).

(b). When it is followed by another consonant in the same syllable.

Ex. **히달프소**, ai-dalp-so, (*to hate*) ; **사달크**, ga-dalk, (*reason*).

(c). When it follows or precedes the consonant. **ㄴ**

Ex. **칼노**, kal-lo, (*with a knife*) ; **환란**, hwal-lan, (*calamity*) ; **말니오**, mal-yi-o, (*to prevent*).

It is pronounced *n* :—

(a). At the beginning of a word.

Ex. **릭일**, nai-il, (*to-morrow*).

(b). Sometimes at the beginning of a syllable in the middle of a word.

Ex. **공론하오**, kong-non-ha-o, (*to consult together*).

It generally has the sound of *r*, when coming between two vowels, or between a vowel and ㅎ.

Ex. 아름답소, a-ram-tap-so, (*to be beautiful*) ; 일홈, ir-hom, (*a name*).

Sometimes before ㅣ, and the compound vowels, it has the sound of *y*.

Ex. 리, yi, (*profit*) ; 료량, yo-ryang, (*deliberation*).

36.—7th. ㅅ. At the beginning of a word this letter has the sound of *s*.

Ex. 삼가오, sam-kao, (*to take care*) ; 삭, sak, (*pay*).

At the end of a word it has the sound of *t*.

Ex. 갓, kat, (*hat*) ; 낮, nat, (*mid-day*) ; 몇, met, (*how many*).

The sound of this final ㅅ is however sometimes modified by the initial letter of the syllable which follows it.

Before another ㅅ it becomes *s*.

Ex. 갓수로, kas-sa-ro, (*with a hat*).

Before ㅈ, it has the sound of *k*.

Ex. 샅기, sak-ki, (*young*) ; 잣고, chak-ko, (*frequently*).

Before ㅁ, it becomes *n*.

Ex. 갓모, kan-mo, (*hat covering*).

When the compound vowels ㅟ, ㅢ, ㅤ, ㅥ, are preceded by ㅅ, the *y* is mute, and they have the sounds of the corresponding simple vowels.

Ex. 상관, sang-gwan, (*importance*) ; 세상, sē-sang, (*the world*).

37.—8th. ㅊ. This letter has generally the sound of *t*, in *told*.

Ex. 답장, tap-jang, (*answer*) ; 달소, tal-so, (*to be different*).

Sometimes it may have the sound of *d* in *dance*.

Ex. 대답하오, tai-dap-hao, (*to answer*) ; 견디오, kyun-dai-o, (*to endure*).

Before ㅈ, or any of the compound vowels, the *y* sound of the compound vowels disappears, and ㅈ has the force of *ch*.

Ex. 지경, chi-gyung, (*territory*) ; 효소, c'ho-so, (*to be good*).

Note.—This rule does not hold in the province of Pyang An Do where ㅈ always retains the sound of ㅈ and the *y* sound is retained in the double consonants.

At the end of a syllable ㅈ becomes ㅊ, although retaining the sound of *t*. but in some ancient books it is still found as ㅈ.

38.—9th. ㅈ. This consonant for the most part has the sound in *ch* in *choose*.

Ex. 잡소, chap-so, (*to catch*) ; 쥐, chwi, (*a rat*).

Sometimes it may have the sound of *j* in *joy*.

Ex. 죽이오, ju-gi-o, (*to kill*).

As in the case of ㅈ so also in the case of this consonant, when followed by the compound vowels, the *y* sound is lost and that of the simple vowel only, remains.

#### ASPIRATED CONSONANTS.

39.—The aspirated consonants are.

ㅋ, ㆁ, ㆁ, ㆁ, ㆁ.

As has already been said the exact pronunciation of these aspirated consonants cannot be expressed in English. Suffice it to say that, each one has a rough explosive sound of the corresponding simple consonant.

ㅋ, is aspirated *k*.

Ex. 칼, hkal, (*a knife*)? 키, hkeui, (*height*); 코, hkö, (*nose*).

ㅌ, is aspirated *p*.

Ex. 품, hpeum, (*rank*); 풀, hpööl, (*grass*); 팔, hpal, (*eight*).

ㄷ, is aspirated *t*.

Ex. 탐심, htam-sim, (*envy*); 토함오, hto-ha-o, (*to vomit*).

ㅊ, is aspirated *ch*.

Ex. 차, cha, (*tea*); 착함오, chak-ha-o, (*to be honest*).

ㅎ, being ㅎ aspirated has the effect of *h* in house.

Ex. 합함오, hap-ha-o, (*to unite*); 혼인, hon-in, (*marriage*); 항상, häng-säng, (*always*).

#### DOUBLED CONSONANTS.

40.—It is no easy task to properly reproduce the sound given by Koreans to the doubled consonants, much less to describe them accurately. It may be said however that as a rule the effect of the “twin siot” or doubling is to change the natural surds *k*, *p*, *s*, *t*, to the sonants *g*, *b*, *z*, and *d*, *j*. These sounds like all others must be obtained from the Koreans direct, and ear, and tongue drilled and drilled till they are distinguished and can be reproduced.

샤투리 gatouri, (*female pheasant*); 샤다 gata, (*to peel*)

빼앗다 bai-ät-ta, (to seize) 빨래 ballai, (washing)

쌉쌀하다 Zapsalhata (to be bitterish); 쓰다 zeuta  
(to be bitter)

싸 da, (the earth) 뛰다 dwita, (to jump)

짜다 Jata, (to be salt) 쫓다 Jotta, (to pursue)

41.—The Koreans have given names to the nine simple consonants, but the vowels and aspirated consonants have no distinctive names, and can only be expressed by the sounds they represent. The names of the nine simple consonants are,

ㄱ—기억, ki-ok.

ㅋ—口音, mi-om.

ㄴ—니은, ni-eun.

ㄷ—비읍, pi-op.

ㄹ—리을, li-eul.

ㅅ—시옷, si-ot.

ㅈ—지읒, ji-keut.

ㅊ—차읒, jät.

ㅎ—이힉, i-haing.

It will be noticed that for the most part the name gives the initial and final sound of the consonant it represents.

Enough has now been said to enable the student to gain an idea of the true sounds of the Korean alphabet, and some of the various modifications that they undergo. No book can ever tell him when and where long and short sounds should be used. These he must learn by practice.

---



## CHAPTER III.

## THE NOUN.

42.—Heretofore it has been the custom to consider that the Korean noun is declinable, and grammarians have variously classified the noun as belonging to, from one to five declensions, each having a number of cases varying from six to ten. There have been two causes for this, first the intimate acquaintance of those who have tried to systematize the language, with Latin and Greek, and the tendency that would thus naturally arise to make the languages conform. Secondly, on coming to Korea they found different nouns with various endings to express the same idea, and losing sight of the fact that they were but euphonic changes of various postpositions, called them cases.

The Korean noun is however indeclinable. In what has heretofore been regarded as declension, the noun itself is not *declined*, undergoes no change,\* remains the same

---

\* Note.—There are probably only three exceptions to this rule 것, 무것 and 여럿 which may really be considered as one, since 여럿 and 무엇 are but contractions and were originally 여러것 and 무슴것. In all these words the final *t*, or *s*, is taken from the stem and prefixed to the postposition. At times also, still further contractions are made and we can have 걸 for 거술, 무얼 for 무어술, etc.



throughout, and the particles affixed, which have been considered as representing various cases, are rather distinct words or postpositions. These postpositions undergo a variety of changes according to the final letter of the noun to which they are affixed, but in no case do they change the noun itself. They represent the English prepositions.

43.—The distinctions of number, subject, and object, of a sentence etc, may be designated by postpositions or may be left to the context.

For Ex. 그 사람을 의게 책 주어라.  
*lit. that man to book give.*

The *exact* meaning of this sentence can only be understood by a knowledge of the circumstances. It may mean, give a book, or books, to one man or two. The man, (사람), may be man or woman, boy or girl. This indefiniteness of expression, which is a characteristic of most eastern languages, is more apparent in Korean than in Japanese. It would have been perfectly correct to have omitted the 의게 from the sentence given above. In the case of the subject and object of a sentence we find the same difficulty. As has been said before, the general rule is to omit the postposition unless the sentence taken with its context and circumstances would be ambiguous without them.

The use of the postposition giving definiteness to the sentence, often has the effect of the English definite article; and, where ambiguity would arise without them, they may be used to express this. In the example given above, the accusative postposition is not expressed, but if we desired to be definite we would say.

그 사람을 의게 책을 주어라.

which would be "Give that man *the* book."

As also. 병티 왔소                      병티 가 왔소  
A soldier has come.              The soldier has come.

문하인 이 교군 을 불렀소.

The gateman has called *the* chair coolies.

44.—For a full account of the postpositions, and the various euphonic changes that they undergo, see Chapter VI. For convenience, however, we give in this place the postpositions representing some of the various case relations of the noun.

Nominative or subjective by. 이 or 가.

Genitive by ..... 의.

Dative by..... 의게 or 안테.

Accusative by ..... 을.

Instrumental by..... 으로.

Ablative by ..... 에, 에서, or 부터.

These postpositions are added to the noun and give the various ideas given by the above arrangement of cases, but undergo a variety of changes according to the final letter of the noun.

45.—Gender where necessary may be expressed by employing particles denoting male and female, or by the use of distinct words.

Thus we have in the case of human beings :—

A man, 사나회, 남주, 남인.

A woman, 계집, 녀인, 녀편네.

A child, 으히 ; a boy, 사나회 ; a girl, 계집 으히.

In the case of relations, different words are used.

아 바 지, Father ;                      어 마 니, Mother.

할 아 바 지, Grandfather ;              할 마 니, Grandmother.

The gender of animals also is distinguished by particular names or by the prefixing of 슈 male and 암 female.

닭, a fowl;	슈닭, a cock;	암닭, a hen.
소, a bull or cow;	슈소 } 황소 }	a bull; 암소, a cow.
꿩, a pheasant;	슈꿩 } 장끼 }	a male } pheasant; 암 꿩 } 사투리 } a female pheasant.
말, a horse;	상마 } 슈말 }	a stallion; 피마 } 암말 } a mare.

The particles 암 and 슈 are not employed alone and are never applied to human beings except as terms of extreme contempt. If then we desire to speak of the gender of an animal without repeating its name, we say for the male 슈놈 or 슈것, and for the female, 암놈 or 암것.

그 거시 슈닭이냐 암닭이냐.

(That thing male chicken is? female chicken is?)

“Is that a rooster or a hen?”

In this sentence 암 and 슈 are used adjectively, but in the following sentence we see the use of 암것 and 슈것.

그 흑기 슈 거시냐 암 거시냐.

(That rabbit male thing is? female thing is?)

“Is that rabbit a male or a female.”

Here the word rabbit, is not repeated, so 암것 and 슈것 are used.

46.—The same ambiguity that has been referred to in the matter of case, etc., also exists with reference to number. The Korean noun in fact has no number. Context or circumstances decide this also.

병인 다섯 오늘 아침 왔소.  
(*patient five to-day morning came.*)

“Five patients came this morning.”

날 두려 골으라고 말 셋을 가져왔소.  
(*me—to choose-order horse three (accu) brought.*)

“They brought three horses for me to choose from.”

그 목련화 나무에 오백 송아리 잎을 터히오.  
(*that magnolia tree on five hundred blossom must be.*)

“There must be five hundred blossoms on that magnolia tree.”

Note.—*Must* is not always rendered in this way. For its various renderings see Part II Chap. I. § 3 Sec. 10.

47.—At times however, either for the sake of emphasis or to avoid ambiguity, it is desirable to express a plural idea ; and this may be done by the use of the particle **들** affixed to the nouns, to which in turn may be affixed any one of the postpositions.

동생, Brother.	동생들, Brothers.
눈, Eye.	눈들, Eyes.
말, Horse.	말들, Horses.
꽃, Flower.	꽃들, Flowers.
양, Sheep.	양들, Sheep.
슴슴, Deer.	슴슴들, Deer.

This particle **들** may also be used without the noun, and is then generally affixed to an adverb in the sentence, and gives a plural idea.

As:—

어서 들 오시오.  
*quickly (plur) come.*  
Please come quickly.

잘 들 하여라.

*well (plur) do.*

Do it well.

The particle 들 used in this way, generally pluralizes the subject of the verb; and in both the above sentences it shows that the request in the first case, and the command in the second, was addressed to more than one.

48.—Students in Korea soon begin to notice the constant reduplication of nouns, verbs, syllables etc. In verbs it has the effect of signifying continued action, and is found frequently in onomatopoeic words, to designate sounds and the like, and in nouns it gives the idea of universality, or variety,

As:—

집집, Every house.

색색, All colors or sorts.

곳곳, All places or everywhere.

나라나라, All countries.

49.—These then are the various ways of expressing case, gender, and number, which may be employed if desired, and are at times used by Koreans even when ambiguity would not exist without them. It cannot however be too carefully borne in mind that as a rule Koreans do not express these distinctions.

50.—In a few cases there are distinctive words which have a plural sense. They are, for the most part, compound words of Chinese origin, and to them again, if special emphasis is desired the plural ending 들 may be added.

As:—

부모 or 부모들 (rare), Parents.

식구 or 식구들, Members of a family.

형제, Brethren.

### COMPOUND NOUNS.

51.—There are of course a large number of compound nouns, and these by the use of Chinese may be formed at will. They may consist either of nouns alone, nouns and adjectives, nouns and verbs, or of verbs alone. A knowledge of the Chinese characters and their sounds in Korean, will enable the foreigner, not only to recognize these and understand their meaning at once, but also to form them for himself. We would then urge the student not only to learn these compounds whenever he meets them, but to analyze them, ascertain their derivation, learn the Chinese character and its Korean sound and thus be able when next he meets the same characters, though perhaps in different combinations, to recognize them at a glance. This study of words and their derivations will also be a great help in giving definiteness and precision to his style.

안경, "Spectacles" from 안 "eye" and 경 "a glass."

안질, "Ophthalmia" from 안 "eye" and 질 "disease."

천리경, "Telescope" from 천 "thousand," 리, "li," and 경 a "glass."

현미경. "Microscope" from 현, "exhibiting," 미, "smallness" and 경 a "glass."

화학, "Chemistry" from 화 "change" and 학, "study."

No attempt can here be made to give all, or even the most important of the words belonging to this class. The

few that have been given above are sufficient to enable the student to understand this method of forming compound words, so that he can go forward and analyze these words for himself. A little care in this line will be a great help to him in his study of this class of words, and if from the beginning he makes a systematic study of all such words, in but a short time he will be able to understand without difficulty most, if not all the Sinico-Korean terms so much used in polite discourse. .

52.—There are also a few words which are joined to verbs and sometimes to other nouns, making compound nouns having the sense, of "*the work of*" "*doer*" etc. Among these are 군, 장이, 질, etc.

The first two of these refer to the *maker* or *doer* of something, both have nearly the same meaning but are restricted in their use.

장이, the more restricted, has properly the sense of "*the worker in,*" "*the maker of*" and is affixed to the name of the *thing made*, or *the work done*.

군, the more generally used, is a termination equivalent to the Latin "*ator,*" or the English "*er,*" and may be added to almost any word with which work of any kind is connected. Neither of these terms are respectful and are only applied to artisans, coolies, or people whose actions have, in the eyes of the Koreans, brought them to that level.

일군, Workman, coolie.

교군군, A chair-man.

보행군, A walker.

작란군, A player, a trifle.

슈직군, A guard.

농군, A farm-hand.

미장이, A mason.

개와장이, A tiler.

붓장이, A pencil-maker.

통장이, A hooper.

숯장이, A charcoal-burner

주막장이, A hotel-keeper.



소리꾼, A (noiser) singer.      쇼목장이, A cabinet-maker.  
 나무꾼, A woodman.              갓장이, A hat-maker.  
 노름꾼, A gambler.              오입장이, A dissolute-fellow.

With reference to the termination **질**, it may be said that its use varies greatly with the locality.

It has properly the sense of "*the work of*," and is commonly joined to the name of the tool or instrument with which any work is done. By certain people, and in certain places however, its use has been very much enlarged and in the province of Kyeng Sang Do it may be heard affixed to almost any noun or verb.

The following examples illustrate its proper use :—

바느질, Needlework.  
 다림이질, Ironing.  
 채직질, Whipping.  
 로질, Rowing.  
 붓치질, Fanning.

#### VERBAL NOUNS.

53.—In Korea there are two regular ways of forming verbal nouns. They are formed by adding **ㅁ** and **기** to the verbal stem. With the verb **호오**, they will then be **호ㅁ** and **호기** and we designate them verbal noun in **호ㅁ**, and verbal noun in **호기**. While a large number of Koreans have come to consider these as synonyms, and to use them interchangeably, they are not the same, and good scholars never consider them so. The distinction made by the French missionaries in their admirable "Grammaire Coréenne" should always be maintained.

The noun in **호ㅁ**, is an abstract noun referring to the quality or attribute as *love*, *hate*, and *fear*.



The noun in **하기**, retains more of the verbal idea and is rather, the act of *loving, hating, fearing*, and would be used where we would employ either the infinitive of the verb, *to love, to hate, to fear*, or the present participle.

It is about equivalent to the Latin Supine, being a verb in force and a noun in form and inflection. It can both govern and in turn is governed. In use it is generally employed as we would employ the ablative Supine.

An examination of the following sentences will make this distinction plain.

Illustrating the use of Verbal noun in **함** :—

무서움이 겁쟁이 의게 당흔 거시오.

*Fear belongs to cowards.*

착함이 덕이 되오.

*Honesty is a virtue.*

분함이 괴로움 을 내오.

*Anger brings trouble.*

Illustrating the use of verbal nouns in **하기** :—

원슈 용서하기가 어렵소.

*It is hard to forgive an enemy.*

시방은 온 세상을 도라 돈니기 쉽소.

*Now, it is easy to go round the whole world.*

그런 사람 사랑하기 어렵지안소.

*Loving such a man as that, is not hard.*

Illustrating the use of both verbal nouns together :—

덕음에 사랑함이 잇는 사람 남을 사랑하기 쉽소.

*It is easy for a man who has love in his heart to love others.*

죽음이 압회 잇신즉 죽기를 면할수 업소.

*As death is before us, to avoid dying is impossible.*

## NAMES AND TITLES.

54.—A few words here about Korean given names and titles, may be a help to the student. The Korean surnames are but few and for the most part consist of but one syllable. A few, but five or six at the most, consist of two syllables. The total number of surnames in Korea, being under a hundred, can be learned with comparative ease. In writing their surnames they seldom use any but the Chinese character, and it is a necessity for almost any one who expects to have much dealing with Koreans, to learn these eighty or hundred characters. The ending 가 may be added to the surnames with the sense of *the family, tribe, household of*, as 민가 “The Min family” or “the Mins,” 리가 “The Yi family” “the Yis” etc. While it is perfectly proper, and no act of disrespect to use this ending in speaking of any family or person; in their presence or in addressing them, it is not polite.

Note:—This ending 가 is also used in speaking of servants. It would not be proper in sending for your gateman to say—

박서방 불너 오너라 or “Call Mr. Pak.”

but—

박가 불너 오너라. “Call Pak.”

It may be well here, however, to state that the ordinary Korean way of summoning a servant, is not to use the surname at all, but the given name or the office that they fill.

To these surnames may be prefixed or affixed names of towns or places. If the name of the town precedes the surname, it signifies that the place mentioned was the original home of the branch of the family spoken of. In a country where surnames are so limited, this becomes a necessity.

When the names of the place follows the surname it may have one or other of two significations; that most

common is, that the party referred to, is now, or was lately the magistrate of that place.

Among travelling pedlars however, this same method has been adopted to designate their domicile.

안 동 김 가 The "An Dong Kims," or the Kims of An Dong.

청 풍 김 가 The "Chyeng Pung Kims."

전 주 리 가 The "Chyeng Ju Yis."

연 안 리 가 The "Yern An Yis."

but—

조 죽 산 "Cho Chuk San" means the Cho who is now, or was lately, magistrate at Chuk San.

리 고 양 "Yi Ko Yang," the Yi who was, or is, magistrate at Ko Yang.

Among pedlars—

리 강 계 "Yi Kang Gay" means that Kang Gay is Mr. Yi's home.

한 의 주 "Han Eui Ju," that Eui Ju, is Mr. Han's home.

55.—In connection with the Korean given names there appears to the foreigner an almost unlimited amount of confusion. He hears a man with whose name he is acquainted called by a name entirely different, and is told that it is still his name, his given name. A boy whom he has known for years, marries; and coming to pay his respects, sends in a card bearing a name that he has never before seen. This too, the foreigner learns is his given name. This apparent confusion arises from the fact that each Korean has several given names, and that by which he was known as a boy, is entirely put aside on his attaining manhood.

We shall here speak of but three classes of names: the civil name, the name held during boyhood, and that given at marriage.

The civil name is properly only found among the nobility and upper classes. It is the name by which the individual is legally known from boyhood up, and continues with him throughout life. It always consists of two characters, one of which will have been settled generations before, and all the members of the same generation of any one family will have this same character and will be *called* brothers.

As:— 김 퇴 호, 김 두 호, 김 겹 호.

Here the presence of the same character 호, as the last half of all their names shows that they are of the same generation. Their sons will be—

김 영 의, 김 영 군, 김 영 환.

Here the second character 영, is the same throughout. In the next generation it will again be the third character that will be the same and it will be 식.

As:— 김 응 식, 김 텅 식, 김 궁 식.

And thus it alternates from the second to the third character of their names, the surname of course as in all Eastern languages coming first and the remaining character being left to the option of the parents.

In common use among friends, however, this civil name is seldom used. As a boy, he has a boyish name, given him by his parents at his birth, which remains with him until his marriage. On this occasion, his parents *again* give him another name: that by which he was known as a boy is no longer used, and his friends now call him by his ㅈ, or name given at marriage. At times,

also, friends give complimentary names and nicknames of which we need not speak here.

Here as in other things the times are making great changes. The old habits are passing away and the advantage as well as necessity of maintaining one's individuality is causing people more and more to use one name and that the civil.

56.—The titles by which Koreans are known and addressed : with the officials, follow the office held ; with those who are not officials, they are 서방 (Mr.) 석사 (Esq.) 성원 (Revered Sir) and many others. To these at times are added the honorific particle 님, and we have 서방님, or 성원님. More lately the terms 상 and 공 have been used and we hear 감상, 김공, etc. All these are affixed to the surname, and when used, the civil, or given name must be dropped. In addressing or speaking of old men or those whose rank gives them the right to wear the jade button, we use the word 령감 : and those whose rank gives them the right to wear the gold button, are spoken of as 대감. But when these words are used, it is as independent titles without the surname. The use of the surname with either of these words is habitual among certain classes ; but is not considered good Korean and should be avoided.

57.—One of the surprising facts which met the Westerner on his arrival in Korea, was that the girls and women of the land had no names. Parents give a pet name to little girls as well as to boys, at their birth ; but after they have reached the age of ten, this name is no longer known. From this time on, they were known as “ Mr. Kim's daughter ” or even “ Mr. Kim's girl baby ; ” and strange to say the latter term is the more honorific.

When there is more than one daughter in the family, they are distinguished by such words as: "big" (for the eldest), "second," "third," "fourth," etc.

After marriage, they are still, o' en known by their husband's name and title, with the word **딕** or **집** (house) affixed.

As :—

**감서방 딕** Mrs. Kim.

**리참판 딕** Mrs. Yi Champan or Lady Yi.

**한서방 집** Mrs. Han.

Of these two, **딕** is the more honorable.

They may also be designated by the name of the place from which they came when marrying, prefixed to such words as **마님** or **마루라님**, if the person is old; or to **아기씨** or **아씨**, if young.

As :—**고양 마님** or **고양 마루라님**, The old lady who came from Ko Yang.

**공쥬 아씨** or **공쥬 아기씨**, The young lady from Kong Ju.

It should always be remembered in connection with the names for women and girls that it is not customary in Korea for any except relatives or those extremely intimate to ask concerning the female members of another's family.

Christian civilization has however been changing all this. The baptismal names are more and more being used. The individuality of the woman as distinct from her husband is being asserted. All over the land it is more and more becoming the custom for the women to have their distinct names. In fact now the new laws of the Empire require it.

58.—Before closing this subject, a remark or two on the Korean employment of the word **부인** that has come into

such common and erroneous use by foreigners, should be given. This term 부인 was properly equivalent to the English title,—“Lady”: and if strictly used could only be applied to the wives of high officials. Even then it was not in common use, and the official himself would not use it in speaking of his own wife; unless perhaps in addressing a foreigner, who, he feared might not understand another word. It would however have been proper in speaking of the wife of a high official to use this term where in English we would use “Her Ladyship.” A change has been brought about of late years and it is now proper to refer to the wife of another as 부인 but never to use the term in speaking of one’s own wife. In speaking of one’s own wife the terms 안희, 안악, 안, etc., would be used; or in addressing an inferior, 아씨, 아기씨, 마님, 마루라님.

---



## CHAPTER IV.

---

### PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

---

59.—With reference to Korean pronouns, it is doubtful whether such in the true sense of the word really exist. It is so easy, with most of the words used for pronouns to trace out their original meaning, and to show that they are really nothing but nouns which have either become restricted in use to one or other of the three persons, or else are convenient words, either by the designation of one's self or others, for rendering honor or its opposite to the person spoken to or of; that we are tempted to believe that by diligent research we should find that all the pronouns were originally nouns. We are strengthened in this idea by the fact that the native grammarians arrange their words into but three classes, including all pronouns under the head of nouns. For the sake of convenience, however, it has been deemed best to treat of these words by themselves; and in the consideration of Korean pronouns and pronominal adjectives, we will divide them into Personal, Reflexive, Interrogative, or Indefinite, Demonstrative, and Distributive.



## PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

**60.--The First Person.** The word most commonly used to render the first person is 나, 내, or 내가 : many other words, however, are also used, as, 자기, 제가, 쇼인, 이 사람, 본인, as well as many others. 자기 is properly "one's self"; 제가, "this one," 쇼인 "the little man."

우리 or 우리가, is used to express the first person plural; and to this may be added the plural ending 들 which hardly makes a plural of a plural, but simply emphasizes the *we*.

우리 is not restricted in meaning, to the first person plural, but is a somewhat more polite way than 나, of expressing the first person singular.

For Ex :—우리 집, *lit.* "our house," means, "my house," "home."

우리 안희, "our wife," means, "my wife."

It would hardly be considered proper to say 내 안희.

**61.—The Second Person.** The equivalents of a pronoun of the second person, from the very nature of the case, are extremely numerous : the most common is 너, 네 or 네가. This word however has a low or disrespectful meaning, and while it is applied for the most part, to none but inferiors it is still the nearest to a true personal pronoun of the second person. When we come to use any other word, it at once assigns a rank or grade, which 너 does not, and hence it has been used for the second person in addressing the Deity, as in the form used in the Lord's Prayer by some. A study of the true meanings of any of its equivalents, some of which are given below, will at once make plain the impossibility of using any one of them,

and the necessity of either using **너** in this case, or of not translating the word *thou* at all, but of replacing it by some other word, such as **주** (*Lord*). Other words that may be used to represent the second person are **조네**, **공**, **당신**, **로형**, (*Elder brother*), **어루신네**, (*Aged father*).

The plural of the 2nd Person is **너희** to which, like **우리**, may be affixed the plural ending **들**, and with the same effect.

62.—As in the case of nouns, so also in the case of these pronouns, they may be followed by postpositions; but, like other nouns, the postposition need not be affixed unless the sense demands it.

Euphony has played more than its accustomed havoc with the postpositions when affixed to the pronouns **나**, **우리**, **너**, **너희**. Various contractions have taken place, so that it may be said that the personal pronoun and postposition have become one; and no matter what may have been the condition of affairs originally, the contractions as they exist to-day, present us with what may be termed a declension.

For the convenience then of the student, we give these pronouns with their postpositions affixed, and the contractions they have undergone though it must be remembered that in many cases the uncontracted form is preferable.

Stem.	<b>나</b>	.....	I.
Nom.	<b>내</b> or <b>내가</b>	.....	I.
Gen.	<b>나의</b>	contr. into.	<b>내</b> .....My.
Dat.	<b>나의게</b>	„ „	<b>내게</b> ...To me.
Accus.	<b>나를</b>	„ „	<b>날</b> .....Me.
Instrum.	<b>나으로</b>	„ „	<b>날노</b> ...By me.

---

Stem.	우리 .....	We.
Nom.	우리가 .....	We.
Gen.	우리의 contr. into. 우리...	Our.
Dat.	우리의게 ,, ,, 우리게..	To us.
Accus.	우리를 .....	Us.
Instrum.	우리로 .....	By us.

---

Stem.	너 .....	Thou or you.
Nom.	네 or 네가.....	Thou or you.
Gen.	너의 contr. into. 네.....	Thy or your.
Dat.	너의게 ,, ,, 네게.....	To thee, or to you.
Accus.	너를 .....	Thee or you.
Instrum.	너로 .....	By thee or by you.

---

Stem,	너희 .....	You.
Nom.	너희 or 너희가.....	You.
Gen.	너희의 contr. into. 너희...	Your.
Dat.	너희의게 ,, ,, 너희게...	To you.
Accus.	너희를 .....	You.
Instrum.	너희로 .....	By you.

---

63.—Third Person. There is in Korean, no third personal pronoun; and we are safe in saying that this language has no equivalents for *he, she, it, they*, etc.

The words and phrases that foreigners are apt to use in the place of these pronouns are in no sense their equivalents. We do not mean to say, that the phrases and sentences in which those equivalents are used are not good Korean; but we do mean to say that they are not true translations of the sentences which they are meant to represent.

For Ex :—Among the words most commonly used by foreigners, and by Korean students of English, to represent these terms, are the Korean demonstrative pronouns either with or without an additional word as **것**, or **사름**, and

**더 사름 왔 소.**

has been taken as the equivalent of

*He has come.*

The sentence given above is correct enough Korean, but it does not mean “he has come ;” and never can be properly used where we would employ those words, it means simply.

That man has come.

Again **더 것 가져 오 너 라,**

does not mean.

“Bring it ;” but “Bring that ;”

Where in English we use the personal pronouns of the third person, it is always when immediately speaking of the person, thing, or place represented by the pronoun ; and when in Korean we do this, the pronoun is *not translated*.

*He has come*

becomes then simply, **왔 소.**

Bring it

is simply, **가져 오 너 라.**

In places where special emphasis is needed, or where in contrast, one party or thing is spoken of with the personal pronoun, a circumlocution such as “the person spoken of,” or either a demonstrative, or reflexive pronoun may be used.

The few examples given below will help to illustrate this point :—

송서방이 어제 와서 돈 줄수 업다 하였소.

*Mr. Song came yesterday and said he could not let me have the money.*

내게 돈 주면 모르게 하시오.

*If you give me money don't let him know about it.*

아바지는 흉보고 어마니는 사랑하오.

*He ridicules his father but he loves his mother.*

유모 보거든 오라고 하시오 아기를 니저브려서 밧서  
브터 올었소.

*If you see the Amah tell her to come ; she has forgotten the baby, and he's been crying a long time.*

이사이 김서방을 보았소 아니오 제물포 가서 아직  
도라오져 아니 하였소.

*Have you seen Mr. Kim lately? No, he went to Chemulpo and has not come back yet.*

나는 이틀 안회 다 갑겟것 마는 그는 턱월 안회  
못 갑겟소.

*I will pay you all this month, but he won't pay till next month.*

아니오 우리 형님은 장수요 그는 선생이오.

*No, my brother is the merchant : he is the teacher.*

64.—These then are the various ways that Koreans have of expressing the first, second, and third persons ; but it must not be forgotten that their use is much more restricted by the native than by the foreigner. For the most part it is left entirely to the surrounding circumstances, or to the context, to decide what may be the subject or object in the sentence. Throughout this work, in many places where we have translated I, it might equally well have been *he* or *you*, or *vice versa*. Of

course with reference to the second person, one is so often desirous of being polite or of assigning to the person spoken to his proper station, that words are much more frequently used to represent the second person, than any other.

### REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

65.—There are a few words in Korean that are used with or without the personal pronouns given above and have a reflexive sense. They are :—

저, 제, 제가, and 자기.

These words have properly the sense of *self*, *one's self*, *himself*, etc.

There are several other words that also have this same reflexive idea : 친히 (properly), 스스로 (of itself), 손수 or 손조 (with his own hand), 자하로 (of itself), and 절노 (by nature). These latter cannot be called reflexive pronouns, those first given, only are such. But these which are really adverbs or nouns with the postposition 로 are given here as they have the same effect.

The word 서로 (*mutually*) may be termed a reflexive pronoun, and will be rendered into English by *each other* or *one another*.

The word 피쳐 may in a sense be termed a reflexive pronoun. It has the sense of “*either this or that*,” “*both*,” and is used largely when comparing two people or things etc. It can sometimes be translated by the English “*each other*.”

은전 이나 지전 이나 쓰기는 피쳐 궂소.	{ As far as use is concerned, the silver dollar and the paper dollar equal each other.
---------------------------	--

아라사 황제와 덕국 { As for the Emperors of Ger-  
 황제가 권은 피츠 } many and Russia, in rank,  
 ㅅ소. the one equals the other.

This same reflexive idea is given to certain verbs derived from the Chinese, by prefixing ㅈ as ㅈ매ㅎ오, (to sell one's self); ㅈ침ㅎ오, (to lance one's self); ㅈ득ㅎ오, (to obtain by one's self) and many others.

(For examples please see Reflexive Pronouns. Part II.)

### INTERROGATIVE OR INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

66.—All Korean interrogatives have also an indefinite sense: hence, what would be two classes in English, form but one in Korean.

They are:—

누, 누구, 누가, 뉘, 뉘가, Who, some one.

어느, Which, a certain, some.

엇던, Which, what kind of, a certain.

웬, What kind of, a certain.

무슴, What, some.

무엇, What, something.

Of these 누, in its various forms, and 무엇 having more of a pronominal than an adjectival use, may be joined to any of the various postpositions, and when this is done like the personal pronouns they undergo various contractions. For convenience, then, they are given below with the various postpositions and their contractions.

Stem. 누 or 뉘 ..... Who or some one.

Nom. 누가 or 뉘가 ..... Who or some one.

Gen. 누의 contr. into 뉘 ..... Whose or some one's.

Dat. 누의게 ,, ,, 뉘게 ... To whom or to some one.

Acc. 누를 or 누구를 ..... Whom or some one.

Instr. 누로 or 눌노 ..... By whom or by some one.



Stem.	무엇.....	What <i>or</i> something.
Nom.	무엇 <i>or</i> 무어시 .....	What <i>or</i> something.
Gen.	무어시.....	Of what <i>or</i> of something.
Dat.	무어시게.....	To what <i>or</i> to something.
Acc.	무어술 contr. into 무얼..	What <i>or</i> something.
Instr.	무어스로 ,, ,, 무얼노.	By what <i>or</i> by something.

67.—어느, 었던 and 무슴, being always used adjectively, cannot be united with the various postpositions. If it is desired to use these as pronouns it can only be done by joining them to such words as 사람, 이, 것, etc. The distinctions between these are not always observed by Koreans.

엇던 means rather, *what kind of*, or indefinitely *a certain*.

어느, Means rather, *which* of a number.

무슴, Has the idea of *what*.

As:—                었던 사람 이오.

*What kind of a man is he?*

어느 사람 이오.

*Which man is it?*

더 무슴 사람 이오

*What man is that?*

The answer to the first would tell whether the man was good or bad, rich or poor; the answer to the second simply decides which one of a number; while the answer to the third states whether he is a farmer, labourer, or what his business is.

In using these words indefinitely an adherence to these distinctions should be aimed at, though it is not always possible.



68.—These interrogatives, may be made still more indefinite by affixing to them the Korean equivalent of the English *either* or *whether*. As 누구나, 누구든지, (A contraction of 누구이든지), 누굴는지, (A contraction of 누구일는지), 누구라도.

These really have rather the sense of *any one whatever*, *whoever*, and the other pronouns may be treated in the same way, with a like result.

69.—It has been said above that the interrogative pronouns take the place of the indefinites; but the pronoun 아모 (*any*) has an indefinite sense only, and may be used both adjectively, and pronominally. When used pronominally it may be joined with any of the various postpositions. Like the other indefinites it may be made more indefinite as in ¶ 68.

70.—Some of the numerous distributive pronouns are as follows.

더러. (*some*) signifies a part or portion of anything.

더러...더러 or 더러는...더러는 are equivalent to the English "some one" or "some others."

눔, (*other, others, another*) applies to people generally, as distinguished from oneself.

다, 모두, 모든, 온, (*all*) may be used almost interchangeably. 다 and 모두 are employed substantively, and at times we can use them with one or other of the postpositions, 모든 can only be used adjectively, and cannot therefore be united with postpositions; 온, signifies all in the sense of the whole, with reference to extent or duration. It is used solely as an adjective, and can only be used as a pronoun by the addition of some such word as 통, becoming then 온통 (*the whole, the entirety*).

여러, 여럿, 여러히, (*several, a good number, many*).

The first form alone can be employed as an adjective ; and to the other two only, can the postpositions be affixed.

마다, ㄹ (every), 각 (each separate) and ㅅ (a piece) are all distributive indefinite pronouns and may at times be used interchangeably. They differ, however, in their use in some respects.

마다 and ㄹ are, respectively, the pure Korean and Sinico-Korean equivalents for the same idea. 마다 should then, properly, be only used in connection with pure Korean terms, and always follows the noun which it distributes. ㄹ On the other hand can only be used with Sinico-Korean terms, and precedes its noun.

Note.—While with most words this rule is rigidly observed, there are exceptions with these terms, and we do find 마다 at times acting as distributor for a Sinico-Korean term, and ㄹ, for a pure Korean; but this is not elegant.

ㄹ and 마다 have properly the sense of *every*, and refer to the separate individual parts constituting a whole, regarded *one by one*. ㄹ precedes while 마다 follows the word it limits.

각 on the other hand, refers rather to *each separate* individual ; and denotes *every one* composing a whole, considered separately from the rest.

ㅅ generally means *at a time, together* ; but used with the pronoun 하나, has the sense of *one at a time or each*. Quite often we find this used together with 각, 마다, or ㄹ.

It may also, at times, have the sense of *each* when standing alone.

셋씩 주어라 .....	{ Give three each. or Give three of each.
미명 열량 받았소.....	{ Every man received ten nyang.
사람 마다 먹을 거술 넉넉히 주어라.	{ Give every man enough to eat.
말 마다 사람 하나씩 탸소.	{ Each horse had a rider.
각 나라 풍속이 다르오.	{ Each country has its own customs.

For further examples see Part II. the chapter on Pronominal adjectives.

#### DEMONSTRATIVES.

71.—In Korean there are three commonly known, and constantly used, demonstrative pronominal adjectives : **이**, **더** and **그**. While at times they are employed substantively, they are for the most part used as adjectives : and when the pronominal form is needed, it is more common to affix such a word as **것** or **사람** etc., than to use the demonstrative alone. It is admissible, however, to employ any one of them substantively, and then there may be affixed, any of the various postpositions. This use is not at all common, and when referring to persons, is extremely disrespectful and contemptuous. In uniting with the various postpositions there are no contractions.

Used as adjectives, of course they cannot be joined to the postpositions, and they precede the noun they limit.

**이** is equivalent to *this*.

**더** is equivalent to *that*, and is used of things near at hand or in sight.

그 also is equivalent to *that*; but refers to things remote and not in sight.

72.—From these three demonstratives are formed various adverbs, verbs and adjectives, that are much used by Koreans and all of which retain these distinctions. We have from 이; 이리 (*thus*), often corrupted into 요리 which becomes a verb 이리하오 (*to do thus*) or 이렛소 (*to be so*). From this verb we get 이리훈 or 이런 an adjective meaning *such*, in the sense of *such as this*: and the adverb 이리케 (*thus in this way*). From 이 we also get 이리 (*here*), and 이리로 (*by this way or hither*.)

In like manner we get adverbs, verbs and adjectives from all of these demonstratives, and the following table of some of them may be of use.

이, This (Subst. and Adj.)	더 ..(near)...	그, (far)	{ That (Subst. and Adj.)
이것, This (Subst.)	더것.....	그것, That (Subst.)	
이러하오 } {To do it in this way.	더러하오 }	그러하오 }	{ To do it in that way.
이렛소 } {To be so.	더렛소 }	그렛소 }	{ To be that way, thus.
이러훈 } {This kind of.	더러훈 }	그러훈 }	{ That kind of.
이런 } {Such as this.	더런 }	그런 }	{ Such as that.
이리 } {In this way,	더리 }	그리 }	{ In that way,
이리케 } { thus.	더리케 }	그리케 }	{ thus.
이리, Here.	더리.....	그리, There.	
이리로 { By this way, hither.	더리로.....	그리로 { By that way, thither.	

Note.—From these three words again, have been derived three exclamatory demonstrative pronouns expressing disgust. They are, 요, 조, and 교. They are much used, but only as exclamations of disgust, and cannot be called elegant Korean. Ex. 요놈, This fellow.

73.—In Part II. it is stated that there are no relative pronouns in Korean, There are, however, two words that have, by some, been classified as demonstrative pronouns, and that in a sense hold this place. They are the words **ㅅ** and **ㅁ**. They are only used with relative participles, and may be said to express *that which, he who*, etc. The “which” or “who” being then considered the subject of the verb contained in the preceding participle. It must be remembered, however, that the employment of these words is largely restricted to books.

---

## CHAPTER V.

## NUMERALS.

74.—From the very nature of the case, the conditions of the Korean language present us with two sets of numerals. The one pure Korean, the other Sinico-Korean.

The pure Korean numbers carry us only as far as ninety-nine, and above this we are forced to rely entirely upon those derived from Chinese.

The pure Korean numbers may serve either as substantives or adjectives, and a few of them have two forms, which may be termed, respectively "*substantive form*," and "*adjective form*." With the number 하나 the substantive form can never be used adjectively, in all the others it may; but the special adjective form can never take the place of the substantive. To the substantive forms may be affixed the various postpositions, but this of course cannot be done with the adjective forms. Commonly the adjective forms are only used as high as six. Of course the rule given before, concerning the use of Sinico-Korean and pure Korean terms, holds here also: and properly the pure Korean numerals can only be used qualifying pure Korean nouns.

When the substantive form is used substantively it does not qualify the noun as an adjective ; but stands in apposition to, and follows it. This being the case, when this is done, we may often find a Sinico-Korean word standing in apposition to a pure Korean numeral substantive.

The adjective and substantive forms from one to six are given below.

## ADJECTIVES.

## SUBSTANTIVES.

—	—	
한 .....	하나 .....	One.
두 .....	둘 .....	Two.
세 .....	셋 .....	Three.
네 .....	넷 .....	Four.
닷 .....	다섯 .....	Five.
엣 .....	여섯 .....	Six.

75.—The numerals derived from the Chinese have but one form, and that adjectival. Until we get above ninety-nine they may only be properly used with Sinico-Korean words, and must always precede the words which they qualify. When a substantive form is desired, it can only be rendered by the use of some other Sinico-Korean word, or one of the numerous “Specific Classifiers” some of which will be given further on, which word will then stand in apposition to the noun. As in the case of the pure Korean numeral, so also here, when this is done we may have a Sinico-Korean numeral, qualifying a Sinico-Korean noun, which latter stands in apposition to a pure Korean noun. In paging, figuring and numbering, the Chinese characters themselves are used, and one seldom meets with the Korean numerals spelled out in the Ōn-mun. Even in Ōn-mun books, the paging will be in



Chinese characters, and quite often in letters written in the native character, where numbers are mentioned, the Chinese characters may be used.

76.—We give below a list of the Korean cardinal numbers, giving first the Chinese character, then the pure Korean, and lastly the Sinico-Korean.

## KOREAN. SINICO-KOREAN.

一	하 나.....	일 .....	One.
二	둘 .....	이 .....	Two.
三	셋 .....	삼 .....	Three.
四	넷 .....	스 .....	Four.
五	다섯 .....	오 .....	Five.
六	여섯 .....	륙 .....	Six.
七	일곱 .....	칠 .....	Seven.
八	여덟 .....	팔 .....	Eight.
九	아홉 .....	구 .....	Nine.
十	열 .....	십 .....	Ten.
十一	열하 나 .....	십 일 .....	Eleven.
十二	열둘 .....	십 이 .....	Twelve.
			Etc.
二十	스물 .....	이 십 .....	Twenty.
二十一	스물하 나 ...	이 십 일 ...	Twenty-one.
二十二	스물둘 .....	이 십 이 ...	Twenty-two.
三十	설흔 .....	삼 십 .....	Thirty.
四十	마흔 .....	스 십 .....	Forty.
五十	쉰 .....	오 십 .....	Fifty.
六十	예순 .....	륙 십 .....	Sixty.
七十	일흔 .....	칠 십 .....	Seventy.
八十	여든 .....	팔 십 .....	Eighty.
九十	아흔 .....	구 십 .....	Ninety.



百	.....	백 or 일 백	.....	One hundred.
二百	.....	이 백	.....	Two hundred.
三百	.....	삼 백	.....	Three hundred.
四百	.....	사 백	.....	Four hundred.
五百	.....	오 백	.....	Five hundred.
千	.....	천 or 일 천	.....	One thousand.
二千	.....	이 천	.....	Two thousand.
萬	.....	만 or 일 만	.....	Ten thousand.
二萬	.....	이 만	.....	{ Twenty thousand.
十萬	.....	십 만 or 億 억	.....	{ One hundred thousand.
百萬	.....	백 만 or 兆 조	...	One million.
千萬	.....	천 만 or 京 경	...	Ten million.

## SPECIFIC CLASSIFIERS.

77.—As has been said above, the Korean numeral has both an adjective and a substantive form. Its adjective form may be used in direct connection with the word which it limits, when it precedes it; but the Korean much prefers to place the numeral with some other word, which stands in apposition to the noun limited, after the noun. As in English, we speak of so many “head of cattle” so many “sheets of paper,” so also in Korea is this form used. It is, however, carried much further here; and we find a large class of words that are used for this purpose. They have been variously termed “numerals,” “auxiliary numerals,” “classifying numerals,” and “classifiers;” but it seems to us that the term “specific classifiers,” answers more nearly the demands of the case. The following list of those most commonly in use, will greatly aid the stu-

dent; and we would urge that he take pains to make himself intimately acquainted with all, and with their use, as a mistake in this line is extremely ridiculous in the eyes of the Koreans.

개, 箇, Numeral for almost all small things, or of things of which a number may be used.

갓, Piece, roll, bolt. Used for all piece goods.

길, Set as of books.

권, Volume, numeral for books. Also a measure of paper consisting of twenty sheets.

켜리, Pair, numeral of all things that are made in pairs.

마리, Numeral for all animals.

명. Numeral for men.

낫, (*A grain*). Used for almost all extremely small things.

립, Numeral for hats, mats, etc.

벌, Suit, suite, a complete set, an outfit. Numeral for sets.

부, The same as *켜리*, used for things made in pairs and also for books.

병, The same as *자로*. Numeral of things that one grasps in using.

필, Numeral for horses and oxen. Also used for *갓 q.v.*

편, Slice. Used of dried beef and fish, etc. Also, Page, chapter, book.

쌍, Brace, couple, pair. Of animals and things that go in couples but whose usefulness is not impaired when used singly.

섬 or 석, Bag, sack. Used of grains, etc.

떼, Numeral for flocks, broods, crowds, etc. A company, a crowd, a flock.

덩이, Measure of paper. 100 권. Numeral of all large round things, as,—pumpkins, loaves of bread.

동, Bundle. Numeral of things bound together.

자로 The same as 병. Numeral for all things that are grasped in using.

쌍, Numeral for one of pairs.

장, Sheet, leaf. Numeral for such, and for letters and notes. Used also for chapters of a book.

좌, Numeral for houses, tables, chairs or anything that sets firmly on a broad base.

쪽, Piece, numeral for parts of anything.

척, Numeral for boats, and ships.

78.—The following are a few examples of the use of the above words.

개. 비훈 개 사 오너라.. Buy a pear.

켜리. 집신 훈 켜리 사면 You had better buy a pair  
 켄소. of straw shoes.

마리. 개 두 마리가 서로 Two dogs are fighting  
 싸호호. together.

명. 일본 군수가 몇 명 How many Japanese sol-  
 이호. diers are there?

낫. 곡식을 훈 낫 도 흘니 Do not drop a single grain  
 지 마라. of corn.

쌍. 더 집에 비둘기 두 쌍 There are two pair of  
 이 잇소. pigeons on that house.

동. 나모 훈 동에 감시 얼 What is the price of a  
 마오. bundle of wood?

자로. 붓시 훈 자로 도 There is not a single pen  
 쓸 것 업소. that can be used.

장. 오늘은 책 몇 장 썼느냐. How many double pages of the book have you written to-day.

쑥. 참외 한 쑥 먹어라. Eat a piece of muskmelon.

### KOREAN MONEY.

79.—When foreigners first came to Korea the Koreans had only, what is known in the East as “cash” as a circulating medium. Around the capital the “five cash piece” and in the interior the old one cash piece were in use. The unit of currency, however was not the cash. Foreigners coming from China had taken this as the unit, and had thus made for themselves and others much confusion. The native unit was the **량** (nyang) or one hundred cash, this was divided into ten **푼** (pōon) or **립** (nip). This last stood simply for “one piece” (of money) and **한** might as a consequence, referring to the old cash, mean either simply “one cash.” or referring to the new cash mean one five cash piece. On account of this difficulty, it was quite customary, when speaking of prices of small things which cost only a few cash, when the word **푼** was used, if the “five cash piece” was meant to precede the price by the words **당오**.

**당오 한푼**, meant five cash.

**당오 두푼**, meant ten cash.

In the reading of old books this must be kept in mind as well as the fact that before the introduction of money, barter was commonly assisted by the use of gold and silver according to weight in **량** and **돈**.

80.—After the advent of foreigners, the yen and Mexican dollar came into constant use.

Now of course the monetary system of the whole Empire applies equally here. The old Korean terms are still sometimes used and confusion has arisen from a lack of uniformity. In certain sections the **량** is used to designate twenty sen, in Seoul it most commonly means two sen and in most of Korea ten sen. More and more however the terms **원** for yen and **전** for sen are coming into vogue all over the country.

#### ORDINAL NUMBERS.

81.—Just as there are two sets of cardinal, so there are two sets of ordinal numbers. They are formed from the pure Korean by affixing **재** to the substantive form. In the case of the first, generally the term **첫** replaces **하나**. They are formed from the Sinico-Korean by prefixing the term **데**. From one to one hundred then they are as follows:—

KOREAN.	SINICO-KOREAN.
—	—
첫재 .....	데일 .....First.
둘재 .....	데이 .....Second.
셋재 .....	데삼 .....Third.
넷재 .....	데스 .....Fourth.
다섯재 .....	데오 .....Fifth.
여섯재 .....	데륙 .....Sixth.
일곱재 .....	데칠 .....Seventh.
여덟재 .....	데팔 .....Eighth.
아홉재 .....	데구 .....Ninth.
열재 .....	데십 .....Tenth.
열한재 .....	데십일 .....Eleventh.

## KOREAN.

## SINICO-KOREAN.

열둘째 .....	데십이 .....	Twelfth.
스물째 .....	데이십 .....	Twentieth.
스물한째 .....	데이십일 .....	Twenty-first.
스물둘째 .....	데이십이 .....	Twenty second.
설한째 .....	데삼십 .....	Thirtieth.
마한째 .....	데스십 .....	Fortieth.
쉰째 .....	데오십 .....	Fiftieth.
예순째 .....	데륙십 .....	Sixtieth.
닐한째 .....	데칠십 .....	Seventieth.
여든째 .....	데팔십 .....	Eightieth.
아한째 .....	데구십 .....	Ninetieth.
백째 .....	데백 .....	One hundredth.

## TIMES AND SEASONS.

82.—The Koreans do not make a distinction between the terms month and moon, as since their calendar month is a lunar month, they are co-ordinate. They designate them, then, as the “first moon,” “second moon,” etc, using Sinico-Korean terms: and every third year adding a thirteenth month, which they call 윤달, or 윤월, which is variously interspersed, their calendar corresponding with the Chinese. The names of the months are:

정월 .....	The first moon.
이월 .....	The second moon.
삼월 .....	The third moon.
사월 .....	The fourth moon.
오월 .....	The fifth moon.
륙월 .....	The sixth moon.
칠월 .....	The seventh moon.

팔월 .....	The eighth moon.
구월 .....	The ninth moon.
십월 .....	The tenth moon.
십일월 or 동지월 .....	The eleventh moon.
십이월 or 섣월 .....	The twelfth moon.
윤월 or 윤월 .....	{ The extra month in the Korean leap-year.

Note.—As will be seen, pure Korean terms may be used for the eleventh, twelfth, or leap months.

The western calendar has however now been the legal calendar for some years and little by little it will displace the old.

83.—Their months vary in length from twenty-nine to thirty days, and are designated respectively from their size *적은 월* or *쇼월* (*little moon*) and *큰월* or *대월* (*big moon*).

In naming their days, either series of numerals may be used, but of course with the corresponding term for day. The pure Korean terms have undergone certain contractions and modifications, as can be seen from the table below. In speaking of the day of the month from the first to the tenth, the term *초*, is prefixed and we speak of the “first first” the “first second” the “first third,” etc. This arises from the fact that when they speak of those above ten or twenty, it is not necessary to prefix the ten or the twenty. Koreans suppose that most people will know whether they are in the first, second or third ten days. If then it is the seventh, seventeenth or twenty-seventh, and they are asked what day of the month it is, it is perfectly proper, and in fact customary for them simply to reply “The seventh.” If, even then, it is not certain what day of



the month it is, the inquirer would again ask "Which seventh?" and the reply would be, "The first seventh," "the seventeenth," "or the twenty seventh" as the case might be. This practice is not universal, but quite common and follows out the Korean custom of using as few words as possible. We have then the following as the days of the month.

## KOREAN

## SINICO-KOREAN.

초하로.....	초일일.....	The first.
초이틀 or 잇흘, 초이일.....	,,	second.
초사흘.....	초삼일.....	,, third.
초나흘.....	초사일.....	,, fourth.
초닷시.....	초오일.....	,, fifth.
초엿시.....	초륙일.....	,, sixth.
초닐헤.....	초칠일.....	,, seventh.
초여드리.....	초팔일.....	,, eighth.
초아흐리.....	초구일.....	,, ninth.
초열흘.....	초십일.....	,, tenth.
열하로.....	십일일.....	,, eleventh.
보름.....	십오일.....	,, fifteenth.
스무날.....	이십일.....	,, twentieth.
스무하로.....	이십일일.....	,, twenty-first.
스무이틀.....	이십이일.....	,, twenty-second.
금음.....	삼십일.....	,, last day of the month.

84.—If we drop off the 초, which precedes the first ten of the above days of the month; the names of the days may also be used to express duration of time: and 하로, or 일일, may mean either *one day* or *the first day*;



열흘, or 십일, may mean *ten days* or *the tenth day* ;  
 보름, or 십오일, *fifteen days* or *the fifteenth day*.

Often when used this way, they will affix such words as 간, 동안, meaning *space, duration*. 금음, meaning *the last day* of the month, cannot of course be used in this way.

85.—Until recently Koreans divided their day into twelve, instead of twenty four hours ; and, in speaking of the hour, they did not as we do, refer to the end of the hour, but to the whole time covered by it. Thus 오시, which is the Korean hour which comes in the middle of the day, and corresponds to our time from eleven A.M. to one P.M., means neither, eleven, twelve, nor one o'clock, but the whole time from eleven to one. To say then, that you will meet a person at 오시, or noon, is extremely indefinite. If one desires to be more definite the terms 초 "the beginning," 중 "the middle," and 말 or 쏫 "the end" may be used : 오시초, will then be *a little past eleven*, 오시중, *about twelve*, and 오시쏫, *a little before one*.

The times of the night were known throughout the country, by the five watches ; the beginning of which were signalized at each magistracy, either by drum beating or horn blowing. In the farming sections, where sundials and anything resembling a time-piece is unknown, such primitive terms as "sunrise" and "sunset," "when the sun is high in the east" or "low in the west," the "first" and "second cock-crowing," are used to mark the time.

The introduction of foreign time-pieces, however, has changed all this ; and the foreign hours are marked by the use of the adjectival numerals, either pure or Sinico-

Korean, with the word 시 (*time, or hour*). It should be noted that while the Sinico-Korean numerals may be used ; the pure Korean are more commonly heard. The minutes are represented by the word 분 together with generally the Sinico-Korean numerals ; but either may be used. In speaking of the time then, the hour preceded by its numeral comes first, and then the minute preceded by its numeral.

As:—

열시	or	십시	.....	Ten o'clock.
열두시	or	십이시	.....	Twelve o'clock.
다섯시		오분	.....	Five minutes past five.
여섯시		십오분	.....	A quarter past six.
일곱시		반	.....	Half past seven.
or		일곱시	스십오분	} ..... A quarter to eight.
		여덟시	십오분전	

The difference between “A.M.” and “P.M.” can only be marked by such words as, “before noon” and “afternoon,” “morning” and “evening.”

#### FRACTIONS AND MULTIPLES.

86.—Fractional numbers are not used by Korean to the same extent as by foreigners. We find such words as 반 and 절반 to express *half*, and 반반 or “half, half,” to express *a quarter*. Other fractions may be expressed by the use of 분 “a part,” which being Sinico-Korean generally requires corresponding numerals.

삼분	지일	{ “three part-of, one” or “of three parts, one” }	=One third.
사분	지일,	“Four part-of, one”	=One fourth.
오분	지삼,	“Five part-of, three”	=Three fifths.
십분	지륙,	“Ten part-of, six”	=Six tenths.

These same quantities may be expressed by the use of Pure-Korean numerals; but if such is done, the post-position must be used, and the result is clumsy and awkward. We would then have:—

세분 에 두분 “Three part-in two part” = two thirds.  
다섯분 에 네분 “Five part-in four part” = four fifths.  
두분 에 한분 “Two part-in one part” = one half.

87.—Various words such as, **갑, 동갑, 갑절, 곱, 곱절, 배**, etc., hold the place of multiples in Korean, and are affixed to the various numerals. **배**, being Sinico-Korean, must be used with the corresponding numerals; the others, for the most part, being restricted to pure Korean numerals; **동갑, 갑절** and **곱절**, may be used independently, without any numeral, and have then the sense of *double*.

The following examples will illustrate the use of these words:—

이 보다 삼배 가져 오너라.	Bring three times as much as this.
갑시 갑절 되엿소.	The price is twice as much.
이 거시 그것 보다 크기 동갑 이호.	This is twice as large as that.
어제 가져온 거슨 오늘 열곱 이호.	What you brought yester- day was ten times what you have to-day.

88.—Interest on money is, for the most part, reckoned per month; and the rate is expressed by so many cash per *nyang*, though the word *nyang* is universally left to be understood. The word **변** (*interest*) is affixed to the amount and, **한푼변**, means *one cash interest* or

“one cash per hundred” and equals *one per cent*. Interest at less than one per cent is seldom spoken of in Korea, and when it is, the term 리 (equivalent to one tenth of a *푼* or cash) is used. We have then the following:—

흔리변 or 일리변 .....	$\frac{1}{10}\%$ .
오리변 .....	$\frac{5}{10}\%$ or $\frac{1}{2}\%$ .
흔푼변 or 일푼변 .....	1%.
흔돈변 or 대돈변 .....	10%.

Discount on bills or prices is expressed by the use of 할리 (割利) prefixed of the numerals and means “*tenth discount*” and we have the following:—

일할리 equals	$\frac{1}{10}$	or 10% discount.
이하리	„ $\frac{2}{10}$ s	or 20% „
스할리	„ $\frac{4}{10}$ s	or 40% „
오할리	„ $\frac{5}{10}$ s	or 50% „
팔할리	„ $\frac{8}{10}$ s	or 80% „

89.—The Korean word 변, which has by some been termed a multiple, has the sense of the English word *time* or *times*; and is affixed to numerals of either kind. Then 세번 or 삼번 means three times; 네번 or 스넌, four times, etc. To these may be added the particle 재, which gives an ordinal sense; and 세번째 becomes “the third time;” 네번째, “the fourth time;” 다섯번째, the fifth time. While this 재 may at times be affixed to 변, when accompanied by Sinico-Korean numerals, it is not common and is considered inelegant.

## WEIGHTS AND MEASURES.

90.—To the student of Korean, a knowledge of all the weights and measures used in Korea is unnecessary;

but a few words concerning those most commonly used may be of service. The one main difficulty everywhere was, that there was no one authorized and regularly acknowledged standard.

In measures of small length, carpentering, etc., the 자 or what we might call *foot*, is the unit; but the 목척 or carpenter's 자, varies considerably from that used to measure cotton goods; and this again from that used in measuring silks, satins, etc. Whatever the 자 used, one tenth will be one 치 or *inch*, which is again divided into ten 분; the 치 and 분 varying of course with the 자. The 목척 exactly equals the English foot of twelve inches. The 자 used in measuring cloth goods, varies from eighteen to twenty-two inches, but the usual length is about twenty inches. In measuring cord, wire and the like, the 말 (*fathom* or *brace*), the distance from hand to hand with arms outstretched; in measuring depths, the 길 (*man's height*); and in measuring small lengths, quite frequently, the 썸 (*span*), the distance from thumb to middle finger, are used.

The measure of distance, or 리, has been said to be about one third of a mile, but the 리 itself varies so much in different localities, that no definite comparison can be made. It is short among the mountains and long on the plains; and it has been aptly remarked that the Korean 리 is hardly a measure of distance, but should rather be called a measure of the time taken to travel the distance; as, in ordinary Korean travelling with coolies and pack ponies, it averages an hour for every ten 리 whether they be long or short.

91.—The Korean weights were the same as the Chinese, and the 근 or catty, was about one and one third English

pounds. It is divided into sixteen 량 (nyang), or ounces, which are again divided into ten 돈, the 돈 into ten 푼, the 푼 into ten 리.

In the measuring of grain still greater confusion existed. The system used in the country districts differed entirely from that used in Seoul. The measures used in the country were as follows :—

Ten 수 = one 홑 or about one handful.

Ten 홑 = one 되.

Ten 되 = one 말.

Twenty 말 = one 섬 or 석 or one bag.

Note.—The 수 is only used in computing government taxes.

The measures used in Seoul differed largely from these.

It took three of the above 되 and a little more, to make one 화인되.

Ten 화인되, (commonly spoken of as ten 되) = one 말.

Four 말 = one 섬 or bag.

This latter 말, contained about one and a half pecks.

All this has however been now changed: standard weights and measures have been introduced throughout the whole land and correspond to those in use in Japan proper.

Land was measured either by the amount of grain taken to sow it, (and from the above we get the measures 섬 직 이, 마직 이, 되직 이) : or, as in some parts of the United States, by the number of days it will take to plough it.

92.—In closing this chapter on numerals, we would notice a peculiar use of the adjectival numeral 九. It is often placed before other numerals, or nouns signifying quantity, distance, amount, etc., to give an indefinite sense; and may then be translated by the English word

"*about*." 즈음, placed after the numeral, has also this same effect and may often be used in conjunction with 훈, following the numeral or quantity which 훈 precedes.

Ex. :—

그 집이 훈 른십 간되 오. That house contains about  
sixty kan.

나히 훈 오십 즈음 된 듯 His age is probably some-  
where about fifty.

Note.—In the Chapter on nouns, as well as elsewhere, attention was called to the fact, that the plural ending 들, like the postpositions, was only to be used when its absence would cause ambiguity. We would here remind the student, that when numerals are used, (according to the rule then given) unless special emphasis is desired, 들 should not be used. Let him then, when talking Korean, not speak of five houses but *five house*, etc.

---



## CHAPTER VI.

## THE POSTPOSITION.

93.—There is a large class of words, which are affixed to nouns, and show their relation to some other word or words in the sentence. Some of these have arbitrarily been taken and made to stand as case inflections or parts of the noun. For such an arbitrary selection, there can be no authority. If some are case inflections all should be taken as such. Such a method would, however, complicate matters greatly, and it is far more simple to consider all these, as separate words or postpositions. Most of them were originally nouns or parts of nouns; this, however, is not the place to enter upon a study of derivations and the original meanings of words, since we are neither making a language nor trying to force one that exists at present to conform to ancient and now obsolete rules, but taking a language as we find it to-day, and trying to systematize it and show how it is used. In this connection, it may be well to note that certain compound postpositions, and other words, have in the course of time undergone changes; and the form of the original simple postposition, from which these compounds were made, has been lost. Some have desired to change this and go back to the original and correct form. This, however, is not the part of a gram-



marian, who must take facts as he finds them, and show perhaps the order of the change, but can go no further.

We find three classes of postpositions which we will call Simple, Composite, and Verbal : Composite being made up of a noun and a simple postposition.

## SIMPLE POSTPOSITIONS.

94.—The simple postpositions are :—

이, 가, 석서	.....	Signs of the Nominative.
이	.....	<i>The man who.</i>
의	.....	<i>Of</i> ; sign of Genitive case.
의게, 안테, 득려,	} Dative case.	<i>To, from, at, unto</i> ; Signs of the
석		
에	.....	<i>In, into, to, at</i> ; called by some the sign of Locative case.
을	.....	Sign of Accusative case.
로 or 으로	.....	<i>By, with, by means of, for</i> ; Sign of Instrumental case.
아	.....	Sign of Vocative case.
에서, 브터	.....	<i>From, at, since</i> ; Sign of Ablative case.
은	.....	<i>As for, as far as, regarding</i> ; Sign of Oppositive case.
까지 *	.....	<i>To, up to, as far as.</i>
야	.....	<i>Only, but, merely.</i>

95.—Before we speak of all the various postpositions and their uses, it may be well to mention a few of the rules governing the euphonic changes that these particles undergo, in uniting with the nouns.

---

\* The Korean word *까지* is more than the English equivalent here given and means *up to and including* being always used thus inclusively if the word it modifies.

Nouns ending with ㅂ or ㅅ generally interpose an ㅅ before the postposition: A few nouns in ㅅ may interpose ㅊ, but when this is done, it will be generally found that there are two forms, and that either the form in ㅅ or ㅊ can equally well be used.

Note.—We are pretty safe in saying that this difference between 시 and 치, arises from what was originally a difference in the final letter of the word. No word can end in ㅈ; no word ending in ㅅ is pronounced as though it were an s; consequently the distinction between words ending in ㅅ and ㅈ, was lost. It re-appears, when a postposition, beginning with a vowel is affixed. For example 갓 (*hat*) pronounced now *kat*, was evidently originally pronounced with the sound of s. 밭 (*field*) on the other hand evidently ended originally in ㅈ, which being unable to stand at the end of a word became ㅅ. When the postposition is added, however, the old difference of sound re-appears, and we have 갓시 for *hat* with the nominative ending; and 밭치 for *field*.

The Korean does not like to have the vowel 으 (*eu*) in a syllable preceded by ㅅ, ㅊ, or ㅈ; consequently in all such places, this letter is replaced by ㅜ (“*lower a*”). In a few cases of nouns ending in vowels, and some, ending in ㅂ, the letter ㅇ is interposed and becomes the initial letter of the postposition. In many cases of nouns ending in vowels, contractions occur; but for the most part, these are not allowable in writing.

96.—이, 가, 석서. These three postpositions are all signs of the Nominative case, but (like all postpositions, as has been said before) are only used when the sense requires it.

이 may be joined to any noun; and, according to the rules given above, may become 시, 치, or 히. When preceded by a vowel the initial ㅇ may be dropped, and, without any initial consonant, it may be placed below its noun.

가 can only be used with nouns ending in vowels. With such, the postposition 가 is more commonly used than 이, though the latter may always be used.

석서 is an honorific, and is commonly used, for the Nominative case. At times, it is used to represent other cases; but such a practice is wrong and should be avoided.

어제 보낸 사람 이 다 왔소. All the men you sent yesterday have come.

갓시 대단이 비싸요. The hats are terribly dear.

조선에 호랑이가 많소. Tigers are plentiful in Korea.

님금 석서 오늘 거동하오. The King goes out today.

97.—The postposition 이 has also another use: it is added to Relative Participles in the sense of—the man who, he who. Used in this sense, it is probably derived from 인, the ㄴ having been elided; and when so used, it can be followed by any one of the other postpositions.

어제 온이. He who came yesterday.

98.—의. This postposition means of, and denotes the Possessive case. According to the rules given above this may become 회, or 시, or, when preceded by a vowel, a contraction may occur. While, for the most part, any such contractions would not be allowable in writing, in certain words, prominent among which are the personal and interrogative pronouns, they are both allowable and common.

내 책 왔소. My books have come.

오늘은 님금의 탄일이오. Today is the King's birthday.

그옷시 빛칠 슬회여 하오. I don't like the color of these clothes.

99.—의게, 안테, 데려, 석. These four all mean—to, from, at, unto, etc., and denote the Dative case. 의게 may become 회게, 식게, and at times, simply 게. This last, although quite common in speaking is, with a few exceptions, not allowable in writing. 의게 can be replaced by 안테 or 데려, which have exactly the same effect, or 석, which is honorific. While these words originally meant to, unto, at, they are also used with verbs of receiving, in the sense of *at the hand of*, or *from*.

이책 리셔방 의게주어라.	Give this book to Mr Yi.
박셔방 안테 내가 은전 십원 받았소.	I received ten dollars from Mr. Pak.
글값고 시분이 의게 책이 진호호.	Books are valuable to one who wants to read.
민판셔 의게 하인이 대단이 만소.	There are a great many servants at Min Pansa's.

With Passives and Intransitives, 의게 and 안테 often correspond to the English word *by*.

포교 안테 잡혔소.	They were arrested by the police.
도적놈의게 죽었소.	He was killed by robbers.

(Here the Koreans use the intransitive, *he died*).

그 사름 안테 속었소. I was cheated by that man.

100.—을 is the sign of the Accusative case. It may become according to the rules given above 흘 or 술, etc. After nouns ending in a vowel, it commonly becomes 를. In many places where we would suppose it necessary, it is omitted: and its presence in a sentence where it is not really needed, has the effect of the definite article.

그 사름이제 개를 죽었소. That man killed his dog.

의 원 이 약 을 주 었 소.      The doctor gave *the* medicine.

Sometimes this postposition may also be translated by the English, *for, about, of, to*.

그 사 람 을 다 슷 시 켜 기 I (or he) waited five hours  
드 렸 소.      for him.

책 은 그 사 람 을 주 어 라. As for the book, give it to  
that man.

로 형 이 어 제 말 하 던 거 술 We were talking about what  
말 하 였 소.      you told us yesterday.

꼭 시 방 공 을 말 하 였 소. We were speaking of you  
just now.

101.—에 The original sense of **에** is *in, into, to, at*, and it may consequently many times be used for **의 게**. It may be changed for euphony into **헤** or **시**.

The distinction between **에** and **의 게**, is, while not always rigidly adhered to, that **의 게** cannot be used of any but animate objects. Thus you would not say **책 의 게 두 어 라**; but **책 에 두 어 라** (*Put it in the book*); you would not say **집 의 게 가 거 라** but **집 에 가 거 라**; (*Go home*). Properly, **에** should only be used with inanimate objects.

내 가 락 지 강 에 빠 졌 소.      My ring fell into the river.  
공 의 동 너 에 미 국 사 람      Do any Americans live in  
사 난 이 가 있 습 느 니 잇 가.      your neighbourhood?  
책 에 있 소.      It is in the book.  
그 거 시 집 에 만 소.      There is plenty of that at  
home.

궤 에 너 히 라.      Put them into the box.  
이 오리 를 쥬 방 에 보 내      Send this duck to the  
여 라.      kitchen.

With intransitive and passive verbs, at times **에** corresponds to the English words *by* or *with*.

칼에 죽었소.

He was killed with a knife.

불에 탔소.

It was burnt by fire.

Note—The distinction made in the use, on the one hand of **에**, **의** **게** or **한테**; and on the other hand of **로**; with the Passive or Intransitive verb is not always adhered to.

Where the instrument is considered as the instrument in the hands of some one else, **로** may be used; but when it is considered as the agent accomplishing the result **에** or **의** **게** must be used.

On this account we cannot say—**포교로 잡혔소**; but as seen above we may say—**포교의게 잡혔소** (he was arrested by the police).

Of course the distinction between **에** and **의** **게** mentioned above is maintained here also.

102.—**로** This postposition has the sense of—*by, with, by means of, for*. It generally denotes that by which anything is accomplished—the instrument used.

When joined to a syllable ending with a consonant, it becomes **으로**. This, again, according to the rules given above, may become **호로**, **수로**, or **누로**. When preceded by the consonant **ㄱ**, there is no need for the interposition of the vowel: **로** becomes **노**, and the **ㄱ** and **ㄴ** coming together have the sound of *double l*.

칼로 버혀라.

Cut it with a knife.

노끈으로 묶여라.

Fasten it with a string.

이것 조선 말 노 무어시

What is this called in

라고 호호.

Korean?

산골길로 왔소.

We came by the mountain road.

공을 송서방으로 알았소. I took you for Mr. Song.

This postposition has also the sense of *to*, and *from*. From its meaning as the instrument, it comes to mean



the place *from which* one begins, or *at which* one ends a journey.

평양 으로 와서 공주로 I came from Pyeng Yang  
가 오. and am going to Kong  
Ju.

Note.—From this use of this postposition ambiguity may arise, and 송도로 갔소 may mean either that he ends his journey at Song Do, and has gone there; or that on his way to some other place, he has gone *via* Song Do.

103.—아 This postposition was probably originally derived from 와 but has now lost its original meaning, and is used as an exclamatory particle, representing what may be termed the “Vocative Case.” From the very nature of the case, it is not as commonly used as many of the other postpositions. It may at times become ㅏ, and generally does so when following a vowel, and of course like the other postpositions becomes 사 or 하, and at times, though very rarely 어.

104.—에 서. This postposition is properly a contraction of 에 and the verbal participle 잇서 from 잇소 (*to be*) ; and has the sense of—*being at*, or, *having been at*. From this, then, we get, in English, the sense of —*from*, *since*, *at* ; referring to the time or place *at which*, or *from which* anything takes place. Euphonically it may change to 헤 서 or 시 서, and quite often is contracted to simple 서. It has generally been regarded as the sign of the Ablative case.

미국 서 께 왔소. A box came from America.  
외 아문 에 서 맞났소. I met him at the Foreign  
Office.

여기 서 송도가 몇 리오. How far is it from here to  
Song Do.

105.—은 This postposition has generally been classified as the sign of the Oppositive case, because of its constant use in contrasts. It has the effect of emphasizing the word to which it is joined, and may be translated into English by the words—*as far, as far as, with regard to*. In many places where in English, the contrast of the words, or the emphasis desired to be given, is sufficiently plain without these words, in Korean this postposition will be used. For instance, with the indefinite pronominal adjective **더 러** (some), in English we consider the repetition of the word sufficient emphasis, and, while this is allowable in Korean, the two words, each with the postposition would be preferable.

Following a vowel, this becomes **는**, and according to the rules given at the beginning of this chapter, it may also become **혼**, or **손**, or **춘**.

내가 시방은 아조 낫소.

Now I am quite well.

(I have been sick).

이 룡금은 밍우 낫소.

These apples are much nicer.

공의 편지 는 쓰겟소.

With regard to your letter, it will do.

꽃춘 리월에 쓰겟소.

As far as the flowers are concerned, next month will do.

This same postposition may be added also to verbal participles, when it has a conditional effect; and may be used either of the present or future. Sometimes its effect is simply temporal.



눈이 밝아 서는 책 잘 보았소. When my eyesight was good, I could read books easily.  
(Lit. Eyes having been clear as far as, books well I read).

물에 빠져 서는 죽겠소. If you were to fall into the water, you would drown.  
(Lit. Water in, having fallen, as for will die).

이것 아니 먹어서는 죽겠소. If you don't take this, you will die.  
(Lit. This thing not having eaten, as for, will die).

This postposition also may be, and is quite frequently, added to other postpositions. It emphasizes thereby, not the postposition, but the word to which that postposition is joined.

106.—**부터**. The postposition **부터** has the sense of *from, since*, and refers to either time or place. In many cases, it takes the place of **에서**. It may be written **부터**.

Note.—This word will often be found written with a ㅏ instead of ㅓ but the best authorities write **부터**, and **부터** is seldom met with to-day.

오늘 부터 일 잘 하여라. From to-day on, do your work well.

그저께 부터 조금도 아니 먹었소. I have not eaten a morsel since the day before yesterday.

당신이 갈 때 부터愈来愈 더쳐 갔소. He has been getting worse from the time you left.

황주 부터 중화 사지 말짱 진흙 썩이오. From Hwangju to Chungwha there was nothing but mud.

107.—**까지** is the opposite of **부터** and means, *up to, as far as, to*. It is *inclusive*.



그 사람이 벌써 죽었 시니 약 가져와야 쓸티 업소.	Since that man has been dead for some time, the mere bringing of medi- cine is useless.
그런 거슨 대궐 에야 엇 겟소.	Such as that can only be found in the Palace.
비 라야 바다를 건너 겟소.	One must have a boat to cross the sea.
사람이 먹어야 살겟소.	Man must eat to live.
일 하여야 삭을 받게소.	You must work, to receive wages.
표회가 잇서야 글시를 쓰 겟소.	I must have paper to write on.
목슈가 와야 일을 혼가 지로 하겟소.	The carpenter must come, if we are to work together.
티월에 내가 합흥 가야 쓰겟소.	I must go to Ham Heung next month.

109.—나. This word is properly a conjunction, but in many cases it takes the place of a postposition. It may be written **이나** and corresponds to the English “or,” “either.” Repeated it is “*either...or.*” Used alone as a postposition joined to a noun, it has the sense of, *at least*. Joined to verbs it has a concessive force. In this place, however, we have but to deal with it as a postposition meaning, *at least, even*.

나 나 가겟소.	I at least will go.
이 거시나 쓰겟소.	Even this will do.

가. This word, also, can hardly be called a postposition as it is not added to nouns. It is joined to almost any verbal form, and asks a question. It is not used so

much in asking questions of another, as in soliloquies where one is in doubt or in hesitation.

내가 갈가.	Shall I go ?
가져 가리윗가.	Shall I take it away ?
오늘 비 올가.	Will it rain to-day ?
도흔가.	Is it good ?
약 먹으면 병 나할가.	If I take the medicine shall I get better ?
먹을가 말가.	Shall I eat it or not ?

100.—In many cases one or more postpositions may be combined, just as in English we use one or more prepositions.

In these cases, for the most part, the effect of all the postpositions is manifest.

The following sentences will illustrate this :—

그 사람의 지조 로는 못 하겟소.	I can't do it with such skill as that man shows.
이 책 에서는 못 본 말 이오.	That's something I have not seen in this book.
님금 석셔 는 밍우 착 하오.	As far as the king is con- cerned, he is a good man.
일본 으로서 왔소.	He came from Japan.
리셔방 의게로 보내여라.	Send it to Mr. Yi.
님금 석로 가기가 조심 스럼소.	It is well worth taking great care, in paying a visit to the king.

#### COMPOSITE POSTPOSITIONS.

111.—The composite postpositions are nouns to which are affixed simple postpositions, and which are now in turn affixed to other nouns in a sentence and hold the same place as simple postpositions. A few of them are

given below. It will be noticed that in some cases the simple postposition has slightly changed its form.

안회,	Inside of, inside.	아래에, or 아래,	{ Lower part of, below.
밖회,	{ Outside of, out- side.	이편에,	{ This side of, on this side,
우회,	{ On the top of, above.	더편에,	{ That side of, on that side.
밑회,	{ Below, under- neath.	대신에,	{ Instead of, in place of.
곁회,	{ At the side of, beside.	대신으로,	{
옆회,	{	속에,	Inside of, inside.
뒤회,	Behind.	곁회,	{ Outside of, out- side.
앞회,	{ Front of, in front.	후에,	After.
덕문에,	On account of.	전에,	Before.
사름으로,	{ Because of.	끝회,	At the end of.
연고로,		가회,	At the side of.

112.—In the use of these composite postpositions, originally the simple postposition 의 was placed after the noun before the composite postposition; but this is no longer done except in a few very rare instances, the composite postposition directly governing the noun.

집 앞회,	{ In front of the house.	그 사름,	{ “On account of that man.”
궤 속에,	Inside the box.	뜻 밖회,	
상 우회,	On the table.	너대신에,	Instead of you.
궤 밑회,	{ Beneath the box.	길이편에,	{ “On this side of the road.

113.—There are a number of verbal participles that are now used as postpositions. They can follow a noun, or at times are preceded by a simple postpositlon. When met with, they can generally be recognized in a moment, but a few are given below as examples.

위하야, “In behalf of,” “For the sake of.”

인하야, “Because of,” “On account of.”

넘어, “Having gone over,” beyond.

전너, “Having crossed,” across.

---

## CHAPTER VII.

## THE VERB.

114.—It has been said, and that rightly, that the verb presents the greatest difficulty which the student has to meet in the study of Korean. This difficulty arises not so much from the great variety of forms to express time and mood, through which the verb may be carried: as from the number of nouns, adverbs, conjunctions etc., which may be joined to it, slightly changing its meaning, or from the way in which any verb can play into almost any other. No fully adequate classification of these various words and forms has as yet been made. They have been joined to the verb, and most of them classed under the general head of terminations. Admitting, as all those in the verb form do, of being put in turn through a complete conjugation, the whole subject has presented to the student, an almost impassable barrier. If, however, we can take these various forms, separate them into their elements, and show rules by which they are joined, matters will be greatly simplified.

An attempt to do this has been made in the following pages, and while the writer realizes how inade-



quately this has been done, he trusts that the classification aimed at and begun, will enable the student not only to carry it to its completion, but to gain a firm grasp of the verb in all its forms.

**115.**—One thing to be remembered in connection with the Korean verb is its absolute impersonality, and its entire lack of number. This was hinted at, while speaking of the Korean personal pronoun. The same form is used for first, second, or third person, singular or plural, and, as has been said before, these distinctions are left to the context.

**116.**—There are a few forms, which from the very nature of the case, can only belong to one or other of the persons. In such cases, however, the person is expressed rather in the *sense* of the verb than in its form. For example, in the expression for direct command, one does not “command” oneself, nor can the “command” be said to be in the third person, it can only be in the second.

As:—

어서 가거라.  
(Go *quickly*).

Here of course this can only be in the second person ; and as in English, it may be addressed to one or more. If one is desirous of showing that the direction is addressed to more than one, it may be done by the insertion of the plural particle **들**, immediately after the adverb, and we have.

어서 들 가거라.  
(Go ‘(plur)’ *quickly*).

This last shows that the command is addressed to more than one.

117.—Again in what we have termed *Volitive mood*, *first person*, the first person exists in the very meaning of the word. It is a proposition, that the speaker, together with the person or persons addressed, shall act. We can then but call it, “first person plural,” making it equivalent to the English “Let us.”

As

남 산 을 나 갑 시 다.

(Let us go up Nam San).

118.—There are also a few forms which have been said to designate the first person, but these too, as was remarked above, get their *first person* rather from their sense, and may be termed forms of *assent*, or *compliance*.

Thus we have the termination 마, which is affixed to the stem of the verb giving it this sense.

Note.—Sometimes euphony requires that 으 shall be inserted between the stem and this ending.

Then, in reply to a request, in assenting, we have :—

그 러 먼 가 마.

(Then I will go).

or

만 들 마

(I will make it).

We have also a first personal termination 노 라, which may replace the termination of any one of the simple tenses, and can then only refer to the person speaking. This is commonly a book form.

그 것 하 노 라,

I am doing that.

„ „ 하 겠 노 라,

I will do that.

„ „ 하 였 노 라,

I did that.

With these exceptions, which in reality can scarcely be called such, we repeat ; “There is no such thing as person or number in Korean verbs.”

### DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERBS.

**119.**—We divide Korean verbs into two classes, *Active* and *Neuter*, giving to these terms not the sense in which they are used by most grammarians, but that given in the “Grammaire Coreenne.” All verbs that express *action*, whether the subject acts or is acted upon, whether the action does or does not terminate on some object, we call *active* verbs.

From the standpoint then of foreign grammarians, the Korean active verb may be either, active or passive, transitive or intransitive.

**120.**—Neuter verbs are those which predicate a quality of the subject, and have been termed by many, “Adjectival verbs.” As will be seen further on, there are but few true adjectives in Korean, and even these few were originally nouns. For the most part when a quality is predicated of a noun, a verb is used ; and if the adjectival form is desired, the relative participle must be employed.

**121.**—It may be said that Korean verbs, have three distinct voices, *Active*, *Causative* and *Passive*. From the very nature of the case, many verbs do not admit of all three voices, and in some we find but an Active and a Causative, in some simply an Active and a Passive, but in some again, all three. A large number of Korean active verbs have a passive sense as 속소 (to be cheated) and these when put in the causative voice give us

naturally the equivalent of the English transitive verb. Such verbs admit of no passive voice, and although according to rule, it might be formed, from the nature of the case it is useless. Some neuter verbs on the other hand, forming a causative give us the effect of the English transitive verb. A passive of these causatives may be formed, but the Korean prefers to return to his neuter form. For example the neuter verb

마 르 오, To be dry.

becomes        물 니 오, To make to be dry, or to dry.

The passive of this can be formed and we would then have

물 니 이 오, To be dried.

This last is perfectly correct according to rule, but it is not what the Korean would use. He would prefer to return to the neuter verb and say simply, "It is dry."

122.—The method of forming the passive and causative voices being so similar, among Koreans themselves there is much confusion in this matter. The causative voice may be formed by the addition of 이, 오, or 우 to the verbal stem. Causative forms usually are made from neuter or intransitive verbs, or even from those transitive verbs which are used at times intransitively. The addition to the stem of the verb is of course much modified by the final letter of the stem. After vowels we commonly find the form in 오 or 우, though the form in 이 is also quite frequent. After ㅁ or ㅂ; ㅍ is often inserted, giving us ㅍ instead of 이; after ㅃ, or a form in which there is a latent aspirate; ㅎ will be used. But these changes, as will be seen at a glance, are all euphonic, and to these rules

there are many exceptions. A few of these causative forms are given below.

녹소,	To melt ( <i>v.i.</i> ) .....	녹이오,	To make to melt, to melt ( <i>v.t.</i> ).
죽소,	To die .....	죽이오,	To kill.
우오, ( <i>r. 울</i> )	To cry.....	울니오,	To make to cry.
지오,	To carry .....	지우오,	To load.
먹소,	To eat .....	먹이오,	To feed.
밝소,	To be bright .....	밝히오,	To make bright, to lighten.
식소,	To be cold .....	식히오,	To cool.
높소,	To be high .....	높히오,	To elevate.
너르오,	To be broad .....	널니오,	To broaden.
보오,	To look .....	보이오,	To show.
깨오,	To awake.....	깨우오,	To waken.
더웁소,	To be hot....	데오, or 데우오,	To heat.

123.—All verbs do not admit of such a causative form, but a causative sense can always be given by the use of the future verbal participle with **하오**, which, however, often has the sense of *to force, to make, to oblige, to compel*, and is the stronger of the two.

가게 하오, To make him go.

오게 하오, To make him come.

곱게 하오, To make to be beautiful.

124.—The passive voice is formed by affixing **이** to the stem, and, as has been noted above, it may be affixed to the stem of either an active or causative verb. From the nature of the case the passive voice can only be formed from verbs having a transitive sense. For the most part, however, the Koreans prefer not to use these forms, and

as is noted in Part II on passive constructions, the English passive is generally rendered into Korean by a change of form. As was seen in ¶ 121, where there is an intransitive verb expressing the idea of the passive, it is preferred. The Korean verb “*to kill*” being the causative voice of their verb “*to die*,” in place of saying “he was killed,” which would be a passive of their causative voice, they would simply say, “he died ;” and in expressing the agent “he died by” or “he died at the hands of.” A few passive forms are in constant and frequent use. Which these are, the student must learn from practice ; but he will be always safe and much more in accordance with Korean usage, if he changes the form and employs an active construction. The following are sufficient to illustrate.

닫소,	To shut .....	닫치오,	To be shut.
여오 (여. 열)	To open .....	열니오,	To be opened.
잡소,	To seize .....	잡히오,	To be seized.
막소,	To stop .....	막히오,	To be stopped.

#### THE CONJUGATION.

125.—It has been said, and rightly, that the Korean verb has but one conjugation, and in the formation of the various moods and tenses, there are certain regular and well defined governing laws ; and these laws may in a sense be said to be the same throughout all the moods and tenses. What these laws are and how they are used, will be developed in the following paragraphs.

126.—Throughout what have been termed the various voices and forms of the verb, as, *active* and *passive*, *dubitative*, *desiderative* etc., we find these same rules holding good, and a thorough acquaintance with what

we have termed the "Basal Conjugation" and its various euphonic and other changes, will enable us to comprehend almost at a glance any other part. We shall enter, then, into a careful consideration of this conjugation.

### THE BASAL CONJUGATION.\*

127.—This conjugation is the basis of all other forms. All other voices or forms of what have been termed various conjugations, no matter what they may be, are not only derived from some one or other part of the Basal Conjugation; but, after they have been so derived, they may in turn, be carried through all its various forms.

Each part of the Basal Conjugation, except the participles, supine, and bases, may be divided into three parts. The *Stem*, the *Tense root* and the *Termination*.

Note.—The student should not confound this division with the division made with similar terms in the "Grammaire Coréenne." Their "sign of the time" did not include all that the "tense root" here does and in fact the "tense root" here given includes their "sign of the time" and part of their "termination." The "termination," as used here, differs entirely from theirs.

128.—The *stem* of the verb expresses simply what the action or state may be, and therefore generally remains the same throughout. It may be the stem of a simple verb, when it may also be called the *root*; it may be causative or passive, when it will have the causative or passive ending affixed. If the verb is in one of the more complicated forms, such as desiderative, intentional, etc., the verbal stem may include more than one word. It was just noted that the stem generally, remains the same. This was so put, because there is a class of verbs (and that

---

\* For the complete paradigm see p. 179 and 180.



not a small one) in which, in the present tense the stem undergoes a slight change, which holds also in the relative participles.

In 가오 (*to go*) the stem is 가.

„ 먹소 (*to eat*) „ „ „ 먹.

„ 여오 (*to be open*) the stem is 열.

„ 열니오 (*to be opened*) the stem is 열니.

And in 가져오라고하오 (*to order to bring*), it is 가져오라고하. In this last example, we have first 가져 the past verbal participle of the verb 가지오 (*to take*) ; 오 the stem of the verb 오오 (*to come*) ; 라 the contraction of the imperative ending, showing that it was an order ; 고 the conjunction uniting it to 하오 and used commonly in indirect discourse ; and 하오, with the sense here of *to say*. Dropping then the termination 오 we have the stem of the verb, *to order to bring*, and this may in turn be carried through the whole Basal Conjugation.

129.—The Tense Root, shows the time of the action, whether past, present, future, perfect or imperfect or even continued action. For the most part, when no tense root is expressed, the present is understood, but with Korean active verbs, we find 는 contracted into ㄴ after a stem ending in a vowel, acting as a present tense root. In the indicative, however, except in the form used to inferiors, no present tense root is used.

130.—To express past time, we have the tense root 었 or 었, and quite frequently 았. Whether the compound or simple vowel should be used is entirely a matter of euphony, and it seems as though the distinction between 아 and 어 depended also on the same cause. It has been suggested that, on account of this

difference in the past tense, we classify the Korean verb as having two conjugations, the one forming its past in 아, the other in 이. This may be advisable, but when the difference exists simply in the tensal root of the past, and in the past verbal participles, and as it can be accounted for on the score of euphony, it hardly seems necessary. The past tense in this matter follows the lead of the verbal participle, and it will be noticed, that nearly all verbs the ultima of whose stem has the sound of 아 or 오, take their past tense root in 았 while nearly all others take it in 었. It will also be seen that euphony goes still further, and where the ultima of the stem requires it, we shall find a consonant prefixed to the tense root. Stems ending in ㄸ, generally prefix ㄴ, those ending in ㅂ or containing a latent aspirate, prefix ㅎ, and at times we find a final vowel uniting with the tense root.

131.—The future tense root 겐 is the simplest of all, and except in the case of verbs whose stems contain a latent aspirate, when it becomes 겻, it is always the same.

There is also another future tense root ㄹ though this is somewhat defective in its use with the various terminations.

Note.—The true distinction between 겐 and ㄹ though not always adhered to, is that ㄹ signifies *purpose, intent*; while 겐 is simple future.

These signify simple future time and are used where we would use the future. The future is at times, though rarely employed to render the English present and such phrases as, 알겠소 and 모릅겠소 need have in truth, no future significance; but should be rendered into English by the present, *I know*, and *I do not know*. This use of the *future* for the *present*, is comparatively

rare, but on the other hand the expression of a vivid future, by the simple present is quite common.

The *past tense root* may be repeated giving us through euphony **엇엇** and the effect, "*have have done*" or *have already done* or a *Complete* or *Perfect Past*.

The future tense root is at times used together with the past tense root, **엇겔** giving us, as we might expect, a future past. When used in this way, the future follows the past tense root, which will be seen, is the reverse of the English method. The Korean says "I have will go," where we say "I will have gone."

132.—The particle **더** shows that the action signified by the verbal stem, was continuing or progressing, at the time shown by the tense root, and may be used alone, or with either the past or future tense root, or with both. When used alone, it signifies that the action was continuing or progressing, and can be used with either present or past time.

김서방 오늘 그 일 하더 Mr. Kim is doing that to-  
라. day,

김서방 어제 그 일 하더 Mr. Kim was doing that  
라 yesterday.

When used with either the future, perfect, or future-perfect tense root, this same progressive idea holds, and has the effect of taking the speaker and placing him in the time of the principal tense root. That is to say, if used with the past root, it causes the speaker to view the action not from the present as something done, but from the past, as something done in the past, giving us then, almost the exact equivalent, of the English pluperfect. With the future tense root, on the other hand, the speaker

is caused not to look at the action from the present, as something *to be done* in *the future*, but is projected forward into the future, and made to view the action as progressing then.

133.—We thus get, by the use of these various tense roots with the verbal stem, two classes of tenses which we have called “Simple” and “Compound,” The simple, are formed by the use of either no tense root, or the future, or past, or both ; giving us then as—

### Simple Tenses.

Present.

Past.

Perfect Past.

Future Past.

The compound tenses, we have so named because they contain the two ideas of present, past, or future, together with that of progression. We have then, as—

### Compound Tenses

The Progressive (*present or past*).

„ 1st Pluperfect.

„ 2nd Pluperfect.

„ Continued Future.

„ Probable Future Past.

134.—A few words on the use of these tenses :—

The **Present** represents action simply as in present time, whether continuing or not.

(A)

It is used to *express general truth* ;

장마가하마다여름에지오      The rainy season comes  
every summer

이슬이밤에누리오      Dew falls at night,

## (B)

or as *a vivid future* ;

우리가리일서울가오

We go to Seoul to-morrow.

목슈가그집을모레필역하나

Will the carpenter finish that house by the day after to-morrow ?

## (C)

or in *historic narration* as a preterit.

헤롯왕때에예수씨서유대

Now when Jesus was born

벧을네hem에나시니박스

in Bethlehem of Judea in

들이동방으로브러예루

the days of Herod the

살넴에니르러말하디

king, behold, there came

wise men from the east by

Jerusalem saying.

(Note the Korean use of presents throughout)

## (D)

or of *present action*.

농부가점심을먹는다

The farmer (or farmers) is eating his lunch.

오희가글을읽는다

The boys are reading.

Action going on in the actual present is often expressed by verbal participle with 이오

하인이발서뛰어나가요

The servants are already starting.

동리오희가닭을팔녀화요

A village boy is coming to sell chickens.

The Past. represents action as past, and may correspond to what is known in Latin grammars as "perfect indefinite" (simple past action) or "perfect definite" (action completed); and thus corresponds to both the "past tense" and "present perfect tense" of later English grammars.

어저석 서울 노 왓소.

*He came to Seoul yesterday.*

아침 먹엇소.

*He has eaten his breakfast.*

The Perfect Past tense, or as Dr. Gale calls it Past Perfect, was not noticed by Korean students until the appearance of Dr. Gale's "Grammatical Notes" and although in frequent use by Koreans has still been almost neglected by foreigners. It is formed by the use of the doubled past tense root and expresses a completed action. The Koreans call it a "*perfected past*." It is often equivalent to the English pluperfect.

우리가인천서씨날쎄에김  
쥬스에게던보아니호엿  
췌지.

When we left Inchun had  
we not sent a telegram to  
Kim Chusa?

자네가내부락을쎄날쎄에  
전연히이췌췌는걸세.

Why! you had absolutely  
forgotten my commission  
when you were starting.

그가서울갓췌소.

In the mean time he has been  
to Seoul.

그사람이발서요전비에쎄  
낫췌덕이다.

That man had already left  
on the last boat.

The Future tense expresses what will take place in future time and corresponds to the simple English future. It is used also in many places where we would use such auxiliaries as "may," "can." At times if desired, an adverb to give the idea of ability, permission etc., may be used with the future, but this is rare, and the simple future is sufficient. Like so many other distinctions, these are left largely to the context, and it will be noticed, that the potential forms, hereafter to be mentioned in ㅅ and



만, are in much more common use among foreigners than Koreans. (See P. 222.)

부탁하신대로시행하겠습니다. I will do as you have commissioned me.

나는영어공부겸더신문을 보겠습니다. I will read that newspaper and study English at the same time.

여섯히안에그일을능히마치리다. I can finish that in six years.

네말대로내하리라. I will do as you say.

The Future-past tense may at times coincide with what in English we call the *future-perfect*, and at times with the *potential-past-perfect*. Perhaps the term "past-future" would have better designated it. It represents that an action will or should or would have been done at some time in the past. This tense should not then be confounded with the English *future perfect*, and where the English future perfect refers to an action that *will* be completed, at or before a certain time in the *future*, this tense cannot be used.

At such times, the simple future, with some adverb signifying *entirely*, *completely*, etc., must be employed. The Korean future past will be rendered by such phrases as, "*He must have*," "*He will have*," "*He would have*," when such phrases are used with a present or past time, and refer to some action that is, or has been completed. We consequently often find this in the conclusion of a conditional clause.

어제 분명 왔겠소. "He certainly *must have* come yesterday."

이 때에 왔겠소. "He will have come by this time."



의원 아니 왔더라 말서 “If the doctor had not come,  
죽었겄소. he would have died long  
ago.

말서 업서젼겄소. “It must have been used up  
some time ago.”

135.—To a certain extent, it will be seen that the compound tenses overlap the simple, and in many cases, as far as the foreigner is concerned, one or other of the simple tenses could be made to replace a compound tense. To the Korean, however, there is always a distinction, and the one cannot properly replace the other, therefore it should be the constant effort of the student to find out, when the one or the other should be used, and to use them accordingly. The following rules for the uses of the compound tenses while not complete in themselves will aid him in this.

The **Progressive tense** represents the action as incomplete, and progressing; and may be either present or past. It is, however, more commonly used in the past tense, and is then exactly equivalent to the imperfect tense of the Greek. With neuter verbs, it is almost restricted to this past tense, but even with these, it may be used in the present.

With active verbs; it may then be rendered into English, by the present participle, with the present or past of the verb “*to be*.” With neuter verbs, it may be rendered, by the simple present, or it would be better expressed by the use of the words “*continue to*” or if the past sense is intended, by the *simple past*. It is used for the most part, of what one has seen or experienced or known and is seldom employed in any but the third person.

일본에 동백이만터이다.

*"There were many camelias in Japan."*

We might add to this sentence the words **지금** (*now*) and it would be—

*"There are now many camelias in Japan"* but it would signify that the speaker had just seen them.

일본은 농사 잘 하더라.

*"As for the Japanese they farm well."*

The speaker knows this for a fact.

아비는 게알너도 아들은 브지런 하더라.

*"Although the father is lazy, the son is energetic."*

The 1st Pluperfect tense represents the action or state, as completed or having existed, at or before, a certain past time, and is exactly equivalent to the English pluperfect, or past perfect tense.

어제 아침 세 편지 셋 썼더라.

*"He had written three letters by breakfast yesterday."*

공의 편지 온 때에 화륜선 떠났더라.

*"When your letter came the steamer had started."*

비 시작 할새 씨 다 심었더라.

*"He had planted all the seeds when it began to rain."*

The 2nd Pluperfect tense of the Korean is formed of the adding of the particle **더** to the doubled past tense root of the Perfect Past tense. In use it is, like the 2nd Pluperfect of the Greek hardly distinguishable from the First Pluperfect. It has been termed a *Continued Perfect Past*. It differs not a little from the English pluperfect. A few sentences will illustrate its use:—

상년 가을 에는 고양논	Last autumn the harvest
에서 추수가 잘 되얏섯	from the paddy fields of
더이다.	Koyang was excellent.

일전에 국서방집 학방에 The other day I went to  
 가보 니사 이 전 학 see the study room at  
 동들은 글들을 써 지엿 Mr. Kuk's house, cer-  
 섰더라. tainly the old scholars  
 had written well.

배가어제 갈서방집 혼인 I went to see a wedding at  
 구경을 갓 섰더니 손이 Mr. Kal's yesterday,  
 만히 왔섯더라. many guests were there.

The following illustration of the four past tenses may help to distinguish between them:

지금 사람이 얼마나 왔나냐. How many have now  
 come?

오늘장에 사람이 얼마나 How many came to to-  
 왔더냐. day's market?

어제는 장에 사람이 얼마나 How many had come to  
 왔섯나냐. yesterday's market.

어제는 장 에 사람이 How many had come to  
 얼마나 왔섯더냐. yesterday's market, (and  
 were still there).

The Continued Future as has been stated above, projects the speaker forward into the future, and causes him to view the action from that standpoint.

It refers then, to some action or state that will be in progress, or existing at some future time. It may be rendered into English by the use of the present participle with the future of the verb "to be," or by the colloquial phrase "going to."

엇더케 문드느지 보라 후면 모레 문들겔더라.  
*"If you want to see how he makes it, he will be making  
 it the day after to-morrow."*

티일 다 하겠더라.

*"He is going to finish it to-morrow."*

오늘은 아니 잡고 모레는 잡겠 더이다.

*"He did not kill to-day; he will be killing the day after to-morrow."*

What we have termed the **Probable Future Past**, we have thus named, because it has the sense of the future past, given above, but with simply the idea of strong probability. It would not be used of something that is known for a fact, and it represents possibility or contingency with respect to some past action which, it is implied, did not, or may not have occurred. It may be rendered into English by the present participle, with "*He must have been*" or "*He most probably was*" etc., etc.

늙어도 그림을 잘 그리니 젊어서는 유명훈  
화공 잊섯겠더이다.

*"Since in spite of his extreme age he draws so well, when young he was most probably a famous draughtsman."*

술 집에서 나왔으니 술 다시 먹었겠더라.

*"As he has just come out of a wine shop, he must have been drinking again."*

어제 밤에 비 왔겠더라.

*"It must have rained last night."*

136.—In the Basal Conjugation, we find that the form in **덕** is defective, and is not used with what is most commonly known as the ordinary polite termination. It is, however, found in both low and high forms. In addition to this, this form from its very nature, occurs less frequently in the direct indicative form, than when joined with one or other of the conjunctions; and it was this fact, together with the defect in the verb itself, that led the writers of the "*Grammaire Coréenne*" to classify the form in **덕니** as a

simple imperfect, or rather as the ending for all of what they termed "Secondary tenses."

The ending ㅏ is a conjunction, and it is this absence of discrimination between conjunction, and simple termination, that has made the study of the verb, so involved. This distinction must always be made, and when we find that the English word that we have taken to represent a certain conjunction will not hold with certain forms of the verb, we have no right to conclude, that the same form, used in the same way, but after a different mood or tense of the verb is a different conjunction, but simply that the investigations that we have made thus far, have been wrong. From neglect of this rule, and from omitting almost entirely a distinction between termination proper, and true conjunction, a great deal of confusion has arisen. The cause of the want of discrimination has been, that when a conjunction unites itself to a Korean verb, the termination proper is dropped, and in the literal sense of the word, the conjunction becomes the termination. If, however, we desire to arrive at anything like a true conception of the Korean verb, this distinction *must* be made, and held throughout. What, we here denominate "*termination*" or "*termination proper*," is *that part of a verb which ends a direct statement, in an independent sentence*, and in Korean, this varies with the relative positions of the speaker and the one addressed.

In dependent clauses, the dependence is shown in Korean by the use of one or other of the conjunctions, and when this is done, as was just noted, the termination is dropped.

In exclamatory sentences also, the interjection will often be affixed to the verb, and here again the termination is dropped.

137.—In considering the terminations then, we find four classes, two obtained from the indicative mood, and two from what we have called the *volitive* mood.

From the Indicative ...	{ Declarative.
	{ Interrogative.
From the Volitive.....	{ Propositive.
	{ Imperative.

The difference between the termination under each head, is the relative position of the speaker, and the person spoken to. There is also a further difference in Korean verbs, to signify the position of the subject of the act or state.

In the declarative and interrogative terminations, having to do simply with the person speaking, and the person addressed, this consideration has no effect; but in the volitive, where the person addressed and the person speaking, *must* in the one case, and *may* in the other, be at the same time, the subject of the verb, a change may and generally does occur. For a further understanding of Korean honorifics see Chap. XI, Part 1. .

The old dictionaries show that originally there was an honorific form of the verb **ㅅ오** in **ㅅ오오**, the **오** of the stem of this now obsolete verb still appears affecting both tense root and terminations of honorific forms.

#### DECLARATIVE TERMINATIONS.

138.—The declarative terminations as given below are given in the order of their relative use, beginning with the terms for addressing inferiors.

They are given throughout with the three verbs **ㅅ오** (*to do*), **먹소** (*to eat*), and **깊소** (*to be deep*), in the present tense.

Note.—The first two are active verbs, one with a stem ending in a vowel, the other in a consonant; the second is a neuter verb.

It will be noticed that in the form used for inferiors, the present tense root **ㅅ** of an active verb or a remnant of it, is generally seen. Of course this does not appear in the neuter verb, and when uniting with the other tense roots.



## DECLARATIVE TERMINATIONS.

## PRESENT TENSE.

	(He does).	(He eats).	(It is deep).	Termination.	
(1)	한다.....	먹는다.....	깊다.....	다.....	Used to servants, children, etc.
(2)	하네 or 함세..	먹네.....	깊혜.....	에.....	Used to intimate friends, aged servants, etc.
(3)	하오.....	먹소.....	깊소.....	오 or 소.....	"Half-talk," used among equals and those who are willing to dispense with more polite forms.
(4)	하지요.....	먹지요.....	깊지요.....	지요.....	Honorific terms in the order given.
(5)	하옵지요.....	먹수옵지요.....	깊수옵지요.....	옵지요.....	
(6)	하누이다.....	먹누이다.....	깊누이다.....	수이다.....	
(7)	하옵누이다*..	먹수옵누이다...	깊수옵누이다 ...	옵누이다...	Honorific term, used generally of positive beliefs.
(8)	하옵누인다...	먹수옵누인다...	깊수옵누인다 ...	수옵누인다...	
(9)	하도다†.....	먹도다.....	깊도다.....	도다.....	Exclamatory and poetic.

\* Note.—These are pronounced *ham-ni-da*, *mōk-sim-ni-da* and *kip-sim-ni-da*.

† Changes to *로다* with verb 이오 etc.

These termination for the most part can be used with all the simple tenses, though the future tense in ㄹ is defective, and as far as terminations are concerned, follows in the line of the compound tenses. In (1) and (2) the 는 or its remnant in ㄴ was seen. This of course disappears with the other tenses and it may also be noted that the terminations



(5) and (7) take the form in ㅏ when the verbal stem or tense root to which they are affixed ends in consonants.

Note.—It would be well, right in this place, to notice that the form in ㅓ is without doubt a remnant of the old honorific form in ㅜ and if we were to write in the ways of the ancients, should be written thus. Time, however has changed this, and to-day ㅓ is the form in common use and must then be taken as correct. The old form in ㅜ is still found in such forms as ㅜ오니 etc.

To illustrate the use of these terminations and their method of affixing themselves to tense roots, we give the following with the past tense.

## PAST TENSE.

	(He did).	(He ate).	(It was deep).	Termination.	
(1)	하엿다.....	먹엇다.....	깊엇다.....	다.....	{ To servants children, etc.
(2)	하엿네.....	먹엇네.....	깊엇네.....	에.....	
(3)	하엿소.....	먹엇소.....	깊엇소.....	소.....	{ To intimate friends, girl servants, etc.
(4)	하엿지오.....	먹엇지오.....	깊엇지오.....	지오.....	
(5)	하엿수읍지오.....	먹엇수읍지오.....	깊엇수읍지오.....	수읍지오.....	{ Polite form used among equals.
(6)	하엿누이다.....	먹엇누이다.....	깊엇누이다.....	누이다.....	
(7)	하엿수읍누이다...	먹엇수읍누이다...	깊엇수읍누이다...	수읍누이다...	{ Honorifics in the order given.
(8)	하엿수읍누인다...	먹엇수읍누인다...	깊엇수읍누인다...	수읍누인다...	

Honorific term, used generally of positive beliefs.

139.—The Terminations in the Future tense in 리 and the Compound tenses are defective. In the Compound tenses we have only the following forms:—

할더라 } ..... Used to inferiors.  
 할데 }

할더이다... } ..... Used to superiors.  
 할읍더이다 }

Note.—It will be noticed that in this last 데 becomes part of the termination.

In the Future in 리, we find but three forms:—

할리라 Used to inferiors  
 리 ,, to equals } ..... (I will do it).  
 할리이다 ,, ,, superiors }

The 라 used above, is the 라 that ends a statement, but is only used to inferiors and in book language. From this, we also get another form 느니라 which is a decided statement and is much used in books.

We find also the ending 노라 used in much the same way with any one of the tense roots, but restricted to the first person.

Like this also there is the form of assent or agreement in 마 which is joined to the root and has a future sense.

140.—The following illustrate the use of these terminations.

모군이 오늘 일 잘 한다. The coolies are working well  
 to-day.

말 비호랴고 이 책을 I am making this book to  
 짓네. study the language.

리 보랴고 장수 하오.	In order to make money, I am in business.
벼슬홀 생각으로 공부 잘 하엿지요.	Because I desired office I studied hard.
집값시 만흐니 집이 도켓 수습지요.	As the price was high the house will be a good one.
나라를 위하야 죽겠는 이다.	I will die for my country.
어제는 내가 일 만히 하엿다.	I did a good deal of work yesterday.
그 사람 도 말 잘 비화네.	That man too has learned to speak well.
아싸 귀차 가 썩났소.	The train left a little while ago.
발서 편지 하엿스 읍지요.	I wrote the letter some time ago.
흔들 전에 죽엇 는이다.	He died a month ago.
이 책을 네게 주노라.	I give this book to you.
티일은 내가 가마.	I will go to-morrow.

## INTERROGATIVE TERMINATIONS.

141.—The Interrogative Terminations are almost more numerous than the Declarative. They are given below in the same order and with the same three verbs as the Declarative.

# INTERROGATIVE TERMINATIONS.

## PRESENT TENSE.

	(Do you)	(Do you eat?)	(Is it deep).	Termination.	
(1)	하느냐.....	먹느냐.....	깊느냐.....	느냐 or 으냐.....	Used to servants and inferiors, the latter is familiar.
(2)	하느니.....	먹느니.....	깊느니.....	느니 or 으니.....	
(3)	하노뇨.....	먹노뇨.....	깊노뇨.....	노뇨 or 으노.....	
(4)	하나†.....	먹나.....	(Used only with active verbs).	나.....	These are called 반 말 or half talk and are used among friends or where one does not desire to be polite.
(5)	하지.....	먹지.....	깊지.....	지.....	
(6)	하노†.....	먹노.....	(Used only with active verbs).	노.....	
(7)	하오.....	먹소.....	깊소.....	오 or 소.....	Polite terms among equals. slightly honorific.
(8)	하지요.....	먹지요.....	깊지요.....	지요.....	
(9)	하느니잇가...*	먹느니잇가...*	깊느니잇가.....	느니잇가.....	Honorifics.
	하옵느니잇가	먹소옵느니잇가	깊소옵느니잇가	옵느니잇가 or ... 즈옵느니잇가 ...	

\* Note.—These last are pronounced *hamnika*, *Moksinnika* and *kipsinnika*.

† Note.—In Kyeng Sarg Do both these terms may be employed as terms of respect, and are used to both superiors and inferiors.





- (4) {  $\begin{matrix} \text{하옵세다} \dots \text{잡옵세다, 가옵세다, 읍세다} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{하옵시다} \dots \text{잡옵시다, 가옵시다, 읍시다} \end{matrix} \}$  Honorific.  
 (5)  $\text{하시옵세다잡시옵} \dots \text{가시옵세다} \dots\dots$   
 (6)  $\text{홀지어다} \dots \text{잡을지어다} \dots \text{갈지어다} \dots\dots$  Benediction.

Note.—In regard to these terminations, there is a dispute among Koreans; some claiming that (4) and (5) should always end in  $\text{시다}$ , the  $\text{시}$  being the same as in  $\text{하시오}$  and purely honorific. Others, however, claim it an honorific form of (2) and that  $\text{세다}$  should always be used. This last seems the most reasonable, but  $\text{시다}$  is very largely employed.

### IMPERATIVE TERMINATIONS.

145.—The Imperative terminations are used when ordering or requesting a person or persons to do something, and are from their nature restricted to the second person and may be singular or plural, that is to say, may command one or more than one.

They are much more numerous than the foregoing and are as follows:—

(*Do or do thou*). (*Seize or seize thou*). Terminations.

$\text{하여라} \dots\dots \text{잡아라} \dots\dots \text{어라 or 아라} \dots$  To inferiors.

$\text{하게} \dots\dots \text{잡게} \dots\dots \text{게} \dots\dots$  { “Half talk to friends, etc.

$\text{하소} \dots\dots \text{잡소} \dots\dots \text{소} \dots\dots$  { Polite among equals.

$\text{하오} \dots\dots \text{잡으오} \dots\dots \text{오 or 으오} \dots$  { More polite, about like “please do it.”

$\text{하시오} \dots\dots \text{잡으시오} \dots\dots \text{시오 or 으시오} \dots$  { More polite, about like “please do it.”  
 $\text{하옵시오} \dots\dots \text{잡으십시오} \dots\dots \text{옵시오} \dots\dots$  { Honorific;  
 $\text{or}$   
 $\text{으십시오} \dots\dots$  { used in entreaties.

$\text{하소서} \dots\dots \text{잡으소서} \dots\dots \text{쇼서} \dots\dots$  { Used in prayers.  
 $\text{or}$   
 $\text{하여지이다} \dots \text{잡어지이다} \dots \text{지이다} \dots$  {  
 $\text{or}$   
 $\text{하여지어다} \dots \text{잡어지어다} \dots \text{지어다} \dots$  }



## MOODS.

**146.**—In the Basal Conjugation we have but two moods, with Participles, Supine and Bases.

The two moods are the Indicative and the Volitive.

**147.**—The Indicative Mood asserts the action or state expressed by the verb, simply as a fact, or asks whether it is a fact. It is used in dependent as well as independent sentences, but when in dependent clauses the termination is generally replaced by some other word, as a conjunction. It may at times then be rendered by either the indicative, subjunctive or potential mood of the English.

**148.**—What we have here called the Volitive Mood is that mood which expresses the wish of the speaker. It may be either in the form of a proposition to do something, in which act the speaker shall participate, which is then of the first person plural, or it may be in the form of a command, exhortation or entreaty, when it will be of the second person and may be used for either the singular or plural.

Note.—This mood has been called by some the imperative, and the two classes given have been called respectively plural and singular. The *singular* may, however, also be used for the plural, and aside from this fact the first person volitive can never in any sense be called a *command*. Better than this, it would be to call these two distinct moods; but this is hardly necessary, and it seems much better to us, to class both as belonging to the volitive mood, the one in the first person plural, and the other in the second person.

## PARTICIPLES.

**149.**—Like the Greek, Korean presents us with what we have called two classes of participles, the first, which we call Verbal Participles, corresponding in use to

what, in Greek, is commonly known as the “Participle ;” and the second, which we call Relative Participles, corresponding almost exactly to the Greek “Verbal Adjective.” Most Korean adjectives, being derived from verbs, it has seemed best to us to hold to this division, which was made in the “Grammaire Coreénne,” and thus avoid the chance of confusion.

### VERBAL PARTICIPLES.

150.—What we here call Verbal Participle, we thus name, because it partakes more of the character of a verb than the Relative Participle as far as its use is concerned.

Without a direct affirmation, it expresses its meaning as an accompanying quality or condition of the subject or object of the principal verb. Of these verbal participles, we do not, like the Greek, have one for each tense, we have only two, a past and a future. That most commonly found is the past and is formed by adding **여** or **아**, or a euphonic modification of these to the verbal stem. The Future Verbal Participle is made by adding **게** to the verbal stem.

151.—In connection with the Verbal Participle in **아** and **여**, there has been much discussion. The attempt has been made by many to prove that the form in **아** is present and that in **여** past. It has arisen from the fact that with not a few verbs both forms are found, and that with these verbs the past indicative, generally forms itself in **았** and not in **엇**.

There are, however, great difficulties with this theory. In the first place, in those verbs where there are two forms they are to-day used interchangeably by the Koreans, and only when hard pressed for a distinction by a

foreigner will they acknowledge a difference, and state that it is temporal. This, however, is not the main difficulty, If this distinction of present and past holds ; we are then presented with the anomaly of a host of verbs, active, neuter and passive which, irrespective of their meaning, have no present verbal participle ; and, on the other hand, a multitude with no past verbal participle. We see also that those verbs which (according to this theory) have no past verbal participle, form their *past* indicative in 앳.

152.—In looking at these verbs, however, we find those of a certain form or spelling taking all their verbal participles in 아, and another class with a different form taking them in 어 and between these not a few which may take either. We are left, then, to but one conclusion, that the forms in 아 and 어 do not represent different tenses, but rather the two forms which the same tense, may assume for the sake of Korean euphony.

The general rule is, that all verbs the ultima of whose stems have the sound of 아 or 오, form their past verbal participle in 아 or 야 and all others in 어 or 여.

To this rule there may be a few exceptions.

153.—The Past Verbal Participle is treated by the Koreans in much the same way as a noun, and to it may be affixed postpositions and conjunctions, some of which very much modify its meaning. The postpositions, most commonly, affixed are 서 (a contraction of 에 서), 야 and 는.

Note.—The 서 here spoken of, is often written 써 and is supposed to be the verbal part. from 쓰오 (to use). There is no need for this, especially as we find such a tendency among Koreans to contract the postposition 에서.

These postpositions may or may not be affixed, but if

definiteness of expression is desired, they must be employed. When used, they slightly modify the meaning.

하여,	"Having done," or "doing."
하여서,	"After" or "by having done."
하여서는,	"As for after having done" = "If you do."
하여는,	{ "As for doing," or as for having done " (rarely used).
하여야,	"Only having done" "only by doing."
하여서야,	{ "Only after having done," "only when you have done."

154.—The following sentences will illustrate the use of these postpositions.

농수 하여 사는 사람 이오.	He is a man that lives by farming.
이것 하여 무엇 할것소. (Lit. This having done, what will do)?	What are you doing this for?
장수 하여서 부자 되혔소.	Having been a merchant, he has become rich.
조선에 가서 장수 할 것소. (Lit. Korea-to having gone, com- merce will make).	I will go to Korea and en- gage in commerce.
아니 먹어 서는 죽겠소. (Lit. This not having eaten as for, will die).	If you do not eat this, you will die.
그리케 팔아 서는 밋지 것소. (Lit. That way having sold as for, will lose).	If you sell in that way, you will lose.
그 약 먹어서는 낫지 안겟다. (Lit. That medicine taking as for, will not get better).	If you take that medicine, you will not get better.

오늘 일 다 하여야 작 주겠다. You must finish your work,  
if I am to pay you to-day.

(Lit. To-day work all having done  
only, will I pay you).

은행소에 가야 돈을 얻 겠소. You must go to the bank  
to get the money.

(Lit. The Bank-to having gone  
only, money will get).

일본 와서야 보았소. I had to come to Japan to  
see it.

(Lit. Japan after having come-  
only, saw).

조선 가서야 알았소. I had to go to Korea to make  
his acquaintance.

(Lit. Korea after having gone only,  
know).

155.—Before we turn to the consideration of the Relative Participles a few words on the uses of these Verbal Participles must be given.

We find of course no agreement between it and its subject and it may be used with either the subject or object of the principal verb.

Its main uses are as follows :—

Referring to the subject.

1st. Simply to connect an accompanying, with a main action. When so used the participle and verb may be rendered by two verbs with a conjunction, or sometimes by one English verb containing the two ideas.

Note.—For the difference between a participle so used with a verb, and two verbs united by a conjunction see Part II. Chapter X. Sec. I.

남산 으로 가서 꽃을 얻어 오너라. Go to Nam San and get  
some flowers.

(Lit. Nam San-to having gone,  
flower having got come.)

내가 조선 으로 가 말 I went to Korea and learn-  
 비웠소. ed the language.

내가 조선 약을 가져 I brought some Korean  
 왔소. medicine.

(Lit. Korean medicine having  
 taken, came).

156.—2nd. To combine this *accompanying* action, with the main action, as the cause, manner or means.

Note.—When so used, it is exactly equivalent to the Ablative Gerund of Latin, and it is rather strange that heretofore this fact should have been overlooked and the Korean Supine, which has none of the force of a gerund, should have been called a gerund.

Cause :—

어제 비 와서 물이 만소. There is a great deal of  
 water, because it rained  
 yesterday.

무거워 못 쓰겠소. It will not do, because it is  
 too heavy.

무엇 하여 죽 었소. Why was he killed ?  
 (Lit. What having done died ?)

Means :—

내가 약을 먹어서 낫소. I took medicine and am  
 better.

도적질 하여 사오. They live by plundering.  
 비러 먹어 사오. He lives by begging.

Manner :—

다라나서 피했소. They escaped by flight.  
 담대 하여 호랑이 잇는 He boldly went to the place  
 데로 갔소. where the tiger was.

157.—Referring to the object. This Participle is used also in connection with the object of the principal verb, or

with a person or thing, mentioned in the sentence. It then conveys some idea of *time, cause condition*; but the relation intended and as a consequence, the true rendering of the participle in English, can only be learned from the nature of the sentence or the connection in which it stands.

When this is done, the object of the principal verb, or the person or thing mentioned to which the participle has reference, is considered as the subject of the verb contained in the participle; and, if a postposition is used, it will be the sign of the nominative. It becomes, then, a dependent clause and in this way, we may at times have a number of nouns with the nominative sign, one after the other.

내가 친구가 병드러서 가 보았소. I went to see my friend,  
when (or because) he  
was sick.

꽃치 벗치 만하여서 잘 피오. Flowers bloom well, when  
there is much sunshine.

늙은이 눈이 어두어서 The old man can not read  
책을 잘못 보오. well, because his eyes are  
poor.

내가 늙이 양식이 업서서 I pity those who are starv-  
굶는 거슬 불상이 ing for lack of food.  
넉이오.

N.B.—Note the three nominatives in this sentence.

158.—This Verbal Participle is also largely used in the making of compound verbs. When such compounds are made, their meaning can always be obtained by translating them as simple verbs.

As:—

가져오오, (“*having taken, to come*”) to bring.



- 가져가오, ("having taken, to go") to take away.  
 먹어보오, ("having eaten, to see") to taste.  
 무리보오. ("having asked, to see") to enquire.  
 여러놓소, ("having opened, to put") to leave open.  
 \*올나가오, ("having mounted, to go") to mount (in going).  
 †올녀두오, ("having elevated, to put") to put up.

Note.—It will be seen throughout that in many places, the Korean verbal participle past can be rendered in English by the present. This however, does not affect its being a past tense and in all these places, it will be seen that with equal exactness, and generally with more, the past would give the sense, although the English idiom requires the present.

159.—The Future Verbal Participle is formed by adding **게** to the verbal stem and is not by any means as often met with as the past.

The most common of its uses are :—

- 1st. With some particle such as **시리** (*so as to*), when it has the effect of giving us the form of the verb that will be rendered into English by the words "so that it will," "so that it can."

As :—

- 김서방이 오게 시리 **ㅎ** Make it so that Mr. Kim  
 여라. can come.  
 이 교의를 잘 **썩덕 썩덕** Make this chair so that it  
**ㅎ게 시리 ㅎ여라.** will rock well.

- 2nd. Used alone and preceding another verb it generally signifies that for which, the action of the principal verb is done, and may be rendered into English by *that, so that in order that, to*.

\* From **오르오**, to mount, to climb.

† From **올니오**, to elevate, to raise.

이꽃을 그 으히 가지게 주오.	Give the flowers to the boy <i>that</i> he may take them away.
방이 더웁게 석탄 만히 너허라.	Put on plenty of coal, <i>that</i> the room may be warm.
서울 가게 교군 엇어라.	Get some chair coolies <i>that</i> we may go to Seoul.
밥 먹게 오너라.	Come to eat.

3rd. The third and by far the the most common use which is derived from the preceding, is with the verb **하오**; giving us, the force of a causative to be rendered into English by "to make to," "to cause to," etc., or it may be used with **하오** much as a sort of imperative.

As :—

그 으히 가게 하오.	Make that boy go.
이 꽃치 보기 요흐니 사게 하오.	As these flowers are so pretty, let him buy them.
영어를 알면 턴하에 돈 녀도 말을 통할거시니 잘 베토게 하오.	Since, if you know English, it will be a means of com- munication even though you travel over the whole world, study hard.
공부를 지금 아니 하면 후회 날 거시니 힘써 하게 하오.	Since, if you do not study now, you will regret it hereafter, you had better take pains to study well.
시간이 느졌스니 밥을 어서 먹고 가게 하오.	As it is already late hurry and give him his supper and let him go.

- 여기는 사람이 많으니      As there are a great many  
 저리로 오게 하오.      here make him come  
    that way.
- 비가 곱으니 밥을 사서      As I am hungry, buy some  
 먹게 하여라      rice and make it so that  
    I can eat.
- 여기가 인천 덩거장이니      As this is the Inchun  
 누리게 하여라.      station make him get off  
    here.
- 서울로 도로 갈터이니      As I must go back to Seoul  
 모레 쉼나게 준비하      get ready to start the day  
 여라.      after to morrow.

## RELATIVE PARTICIPLES.

160.—What we have have called the Relative Participle is rather a verbal adjective derived from the verb. As, however, almost all Korean adjectives are *verbal adjectives* derived from what may be termed “adjectival verbs” to avoid confusion we have held to this term as has been already stated.

In use the Relative Participle always stands as an adjective qualifying some noun and may generally be rendered into English by a relative clause.

As a consequence, it cannot be united to the various postpositions, unless it is first made a noun by the use of such words, as 사람 (*man*), 것 (*thing*) or one of the pronouns, or, as is often, done by the use of the postposition 이 signifying “*the man*.”

161.—The four Relative Participles most commonly used, may be termed ; Present, Past, Future, and Future Past.

The use of the terms *Present* and *Past* is, as will be seen, a little unfortunate and the terms *Active* and *Passive* have been suggested. The same difficulty existing with these latter as with the former, we prefer to retain the former.

162.—What we have termed the Present Participle is formed by adding **는** to the verbal stem.

It will be noticed that the Present Participle follows the lead of the present tense and where in the present tense the stem is slightly modified, this modified form is used in the present participle. This modification for the most part occurs in verbs whose stems end in **ㄷ** simple. When this is the case the **ㄷ** is dropped in forming the present, both indicative and participle. In verbs whose stems contain a latent **ㅎ**, this is not done even though it end in **ㄷ**. Then the stem is used, though of course the latent **ㅎ** cannot appear in **는**.

Note.—It has been said, and with much reason, that this **는** should rather be called an “active particle” than a “present tense root” for it is only used with *active verbs*; and with *neuter verbs* is never found. However, it always has a *present* sense and can at times be used with almost a passive idea so we prefer to call it simply the *present participle*.

When used, this participle has the effect of designating the person or thing who is now acting, or (though rarely) being acted upon. It may, then, be rendered into English by the relative pronoun with *is* and a present participle, or with the simple present of the verb, or by a new dependent clause.

외국에 가면 아는 사람이 적소.      If I go to a foreign country,  
there will be few whom  
I know.

비호지 아니 할면 아는 거시 업겟소.	If one does not study, one knows nothing.
지금 하는 사름 쉬이 cut치 겟소.	The man who is working now will soon stop.

163.—What we have termed the Past Participle, is formed by adding 은, (which may undergo a variety of euphonic changes), to the verbal stem. There is little regularity about the special form that this participle shall take ; any rules based on the form of the verb will have a number of exceptions.

The following will, however, help :—

1st. All verbs whose stems, end in a vowel, form their Past Relative Participle by simply adding ㅁ. Here we see the 은 contracts, and to uphold the character of the verb, its vowel or combination of vowels is retained.

Thus :—

가오 (to go) .....	간 (gone).
오오 (to come) .....	온 (come).
보오 (to see) .....	본 (seen).
하오 (to do) .....	한 (done).

2nd. Verbs whose stem ends in ㅍ, ㅂ, or ㅌ, form their Past Relative Participle by adding 은 to the verbal stem ; in some cases at the same time doubling the final letter of the stem.

Thus :—

죽소 (to die).....	죽은 (dead).
먹소 (to eat).....	먹은 (eaten).
낚소 (to fish).....	낚근 (fished).
숨소 (to hide).....	숨은 (hidden).



5th. Verbs whose stems end in ㅂ form their Past Relative Participle after the form of the verbal participle, those whose past verbal participle is in ㅍ or ㅑ form the past relative participle in ㅁ or ㅂ : all the others in ㅁ interposing the changed or added consonant of the verbal participle.

없소, (to be lacking)	„ 없서,	„ 없슨,	(lacking).
업소, (to carry on the back)	„ 업어,	„ 업은.	(carried).
잡소, (to seize)	„ 잡아,	„ 잡은,	(seized).
곱소, (to be beautiful)	„ 곱하,	„ 곱흔,	(beautiful).
갓갑소, (to be near)	„ 갓가워,	„ 갓가온 or ㅁ,	(near).
가볍얹소, (to be light)	„ 가볍야워,	„ 가볍야온 or ㅁ,	(light).
아름답소, (to be charming)	„ 아름답와,	„ 아름답은,	(charming).
아니뽕소, (to be nauseating)	„ 아니뽕와,	„ 아니뽕은,	(nauseating).

There are several exceptions to each of these rules, and the only safe way for the student is, when he learns a new verb, to learn it with its principal parts.

164.—In use, the Past Relative Participle coincides with the present relative participle, except that the past tense is used in rendering it into English. At times, also, it may have a passive sense.

Note.—When this passive sense holds, it is really, because the Koreans do not like to use the passive voice, but in rendering it into English a passive should be used.

네가 받은 편지 어디 두었느냐.	Where have you put the letter you received?
이칼이 네가엿은 거시냐.	Is this the knife that you got?
버슨 옷 빨내 호오.	Wash the clothes we have taken off.
씻은 그릇 가져 오너라.	Bring the dishes that have been washed.



니 존 말 생각 못하느냐.	Can not you think of the word you forgot?
저 존 옷 손 물너라.	Dry the wet clothes.
공자를 조춘 사람이 만소.	The followers of Confucious are many.
오늘 못춘 일은 삭 주어라.	Pay him for what he has finished to-day.
어제 드룬 말이 거짓 말이오.	What you heard yesterday is false.
아싸 무룬 말을 또 못하느냐.	Do you again ask the question you just asked?
님의 맞혼 돈은 쓰지 마라.	Do not use money that you hold in trust for another.
궤에 너흔 책을 가져 오오.	Bring the book that was put in the box.

165.—The Past Relative Participle of a neuter verb, simply proclaims the existence of the state or condition, and may be rendered by the present or an adjective.

더웁소 (to be hot).....	더운	(hot or being hot).
깊소 (to be deep) ...	깊흔	(deep or being deep).
무겁소 (to be heavy)...	무거운	(heavy or being heavy).
밝소 (to be bright)...	밝은	(bright or being bright).
늙소 (to be old).....	늙은	(old or being old).

166.—The Future Relative Participle may be formed from the past by changing ㄴ into ㄹ.

It has the force of *about to*, and may be generally rendered by a relative clause with a future verb. It may be used to express, permission, ability or simple futurity.

일 잘 할 모군을 불너라. Call coolies who will work well.

서울 갈 사람을 내가 기대리오.	I am waiting for some one who will go to Seoul.
미국서 올 궤가 아직 아니 왔소.	The box that is coming from America has not yet come.
병들면 음식 먹을 생각이 아조 업소.	When any one is sick, they have no desire to eat.
도흔 책이면 볼 믿음 만소.	If it is a good book, it will be very popular.
갑시 대단이 비싸 살 믿음 업다.	As the price is so high, I do not want to buy it.
지금 갈 거시오.	You may go now.

167.—The Future Past Relative Participle is formed by adding 실 to the tense root of the indicative past.

It is not nearly as much in use as the three already mentioned ; but with 것, 줄, 수 etc. will be rendered by a future or subjunctive perfect. These renderings may be seen and explained in the following:—

편지가 왔실 줄 알았더니 아니 왔소.	I had thought the letter would have come, but it has not.
어제 늦게 켜났으니 거기 까지 아직 밋쳤실수 업섯겟다.	As he started late yester- day, he will not have been able to have reached there yet.
도적 놈이 갓실 거시니 우리 자자.	As the thieves must have gone, let us sleep.

168.—A quite common, and much used Relative Participle, is formed from the progressive tense by adding ㄴ to the tense root.

It gives us then a true Imperfect Relative Participle that generally has a past sense.

어제 왔던 장수가 또 The merchant who came  
왔소. yesterday has come again.

아침에 먹던 실과 또 사 Buy some more of the  
오너라. fruit we were eating this  
morning.

여러히 보고 싶던 친구가 The friend whom I had been  
오늘 왔소. wanting to see for many  
years came this morning.

아까 왔던 사람이 누 Who was that who came a  
구요. little while ago?

169.—In addition to these, relative participles may be formed almost at will by adding **는** to the simple, and **ㄴ** to the compound tenses of the indicative mood.

This form of the participle is at times found qualifying a noun; but is more often used with particles employed conjunctively or adverbially; such as—**지** or **가** meaning “*whether*” or **가** and **고**, used in soliloquies, signifying *doubt* etc.

그 사람이 갔는지 알수 I can not tell whether he  
업소. has gone.

김서방이 왔는가 가 Go and see whether Mr.  
보아라. Kim has come.

그 오후가 약을 먹었 Go and see whether that  
는가 가 보고 오너라. boy has taken his medi-  
cine, and let me know.

#### SUPINE.

170.—There is a form of the Basal Conjugation that in use is exactly equivalent to the Former Supine or *Supine*

*in um* of the Latin, and we have therefore called it the “Supine.”

It is generally formed by adding **리** or **라** to the verbal stem. This form generally follows in the lead of the past verbal participle, taking its stem.

When the stem ends in a consonant, a vowel, either **으** or **오**, will be used as a connective.

Note.—Verbal stems ending in **ㄹ** generally take their supine in **나** or **너**. As: **알나** from **아오** (to know). Where, however, there is a **ㄹ** in the past verbal participle, which is either a changed or added consonant, and which does not appear where the stem precedes a consonant, this same **ㄹ** appears in the supine; but the connecting consonant must be there, and the Supine is found in **으러**. Thus:—**들소** (to hear) has **드러** for its past verbal participle, but its future is **들겜소** and hence we find **드러러** (the **으** following **ㄹ** becomes **으**) for the supine.

The supine is used for the most part with verbs of motion, although we do at times find it with other verbs, to signify the purpose of the act.

**릭일 일하러 오너라.**

Come to-morrow to work.

**책 가질너 왔소.**

He has come to get the book.

**공부 하러 왔소.**

He has come to study.

#### VERBAL NOUNS.

171.—The Korean verb presents us with two verbal nouns, and by some these have been said to be interchangeable. Such is not the case, however, and the distinction made in ¶ 53, should always be observed.

The one is formed by adding **ㅁ** to the stem. A very simple rule for the formation of this noun, is to replace the **ㄴ** of the past relative participle by **ㅁ**.

Thus :—

VERB.		PAST REL. PART.	VERBAL NOUN.
믿소,	(to trust)	믿은,	gives us 믿음, (faith).
잊소,	(to forget)	니즌,	„ „ 니즘, (forgetfulness)
아름답소,	(to be beautiful)	아름다운,	„ „ 아름답음, (beauty).

For sentences illustrating its use see ¶ 53.

172.—The other verbal noun is formed by the use of 기. In use it is exactly equivalent to the “Latter Supine” or “Supine in u” of Latin.

The most common form in which it is met, is the stem with 기.

Each simple tense may however have its own noun in 기; which is then formed by simply replacing its termination by 기.

Thus we may have :—

하기, 하였기, 하겠기, & 하였겠기.

173.—This verbal noun, is often used with the various postpositions to express varying ideas such as cause manner, etc.

Most of these will in a moment be apparent from a literal translation, but a few words about the most frequent forms will be in place.

It is very largely used with 는, in phrases and sentences where in English we would simply change the tone. In these sentences, the verbal noun in 기 of the principal verb in the sentence will be used, and immediately precede the verb. It has the effect of showing *lack of interest, doubt as to the result*, etc. of the action expressed by the verbs. Its true sense can always be gained, by rendering the verbal noun by the English noun in *ing*, and preceding it by the words, *as for*.

- 그 집이 요키는 요흐나      That house is good but it is  
조끔 적소.      a little small.  
(Lit. The house being-good-as-for  
good although, little small is.)
- 이 거시 비싸기는 비싸것      This is dear; but it is  
마는 보기에 요소.      pretty.
- 그 시계가 보기는 요홀      As far as the looks of that  
지라도 감시 비싸오.      watch are concerned it is  
good, but it is high priced.

174.—We find it also used many times with the post-position 에 having then a causal effect.

- 그 사람이 의원을 만났      That man's life was saved  
기에 살았소.      through his meeting the  
doctor.
- 도적놈이 왔기에 큰소리      I made a great noise because  
하엿소.      thieves came.
- 그 하인이 일 잘하엿기에      Because that servant has  
상급으로 비단 훈필      done his work well I have  
주엇소.      given him a bolt of satin.
- 약 먹기에 돈이 만히      In the taking of medicine I  
업서져소.      have spent a good deal of  
money.
- 그 총이 요킬네 노로를      I killed a good many deer  
만히 잡았소.      because the gun was good.

Note.—This last, while considered by many a corruption of 기에, is in all probability a contraction of the noun in 기 and some part of the verb 이오 (to be). It is in such general use now that some even call it a causal conjunction.

175.—When used with 로 it can often be rendered by the English infinitive.

미국을 티일 석나기로 작당 하엿소.	I have decided to start for America to-morrow.
약 먹기로 의원의게 말 하엿소.	I spoke to the doctor about taking some medicine.
집 짓기로 형님 의게 귀별 하엿소.	I have sent word to my brother to build the house.
편지 쓰기로 다른 일 못 하겟소.	I will be unable to attend to any thing else on account of letter writing.

## BASES.

176.—It remains now but to give the two bases on which verbs of intention, and negatives are formed, and we have the whole of the Basal Conjugation.

The first of these, is what we have termed the “Desiderative Base.” It is formed by adding 려 or 띠 to the verbal stem as it is seen in the past verbal participle; and where this stem ends in a consonant 으 or ㅁ is interposed as a connective.

It is commonly united with 하오 by 고, as a connective; but this 고 may be dispensed with and then contractions will follow.

It gives us thus a verb signifying—*desire* or *intention* of carrying out the action expressed by the verb. When the verb is thus formed it may be carried through the whole Basal Conjugation.

가랴고하오	To intend to go.
주랴고하오	To intend to give.
직히랴고하오	To intend to guard.

It may at times be used alone in asking questions, having the sense of “Do you want to,” “Do you desire



to." This use, however, is not common, and is pre-eminently colloquial.

꺾치 가랴.

Do you want to go along?

어제 가져온 책 읽으랴.

Do you want to read the book I brought yesterday?

시방 어두웠으니 그만 두랴.

As it is dark, do you desire to stop now?

오늘 할라고 할았더니  
손님이 와서 못했소.

I had intended doing it to-day but friends came and I could not.

티일 가라고 할았더니  
일이 잇서 모레나  
가겠소.

I had intended going to-morrow but affairs have turned up and I may go the day after.

어제 오라고 했지만  
비가 와서 못왔소.

I had intended coming yesterday but it rained and I could not.

학교에 들어가라고 서울  
올나 왔는데 집에 일이 잇  
서 도로 노력 가야겠소.

I came up to Seoul intending to enter school but business at home calls me back.

아싸 비가 오라더니 서풍  
이 부러서 멀니 다라  
났소.

It intended to rain but the west wind blew the clouds away.

177.—A negative idea in Korean, may be expressed either by the use of a simple negative preceding the verb as in English, or a negative verb may be formed. When this is done, what has well been termed a Negative Base is used. This base is formed by affixing ㅂ지 to the verbal stem. Strange to say, in many verbs we may have two forms of this base, one formed from the stem as found in

the present indicative, and one from that of the future indicative.

This same form of the verb is always used when a negative verb is employed.

For its use and examples see ¶. 206 ff.

**178.**—It will be seen that four principal parts have been given, the Present Indicative, Past Verbal Participle, Future Verbal Participle, and Past Relative Participle. With a knowledge of these any other parts can be formed. In the verb **हृ** the stem is the same throughout, but in many verbs the stem as seen in the first three may differ.

In the forming of the other parts this difference holds and, outside of the supine, desiderative base, verbal noun in **□**, and perfect tenses, the general rule may hold that, when the part or parts added to the stem begin with a consonant other than **व**, the stem as seen in the future verbal participle will be used; when with a vowel or **व**, the stem as seen in the present indicative is followed.

Note.—When the stem ends in a vowel and is followed by a vowel a contraction may take place; when the stem ends in a consonant and is followed by a vowel, sometimes, euphony may require the main consonant to be doubled or another to be inserted.

We find then :—

Following the Present Indicative .....	{ The Present Participle and those parts of the Volitive Mood whose terminations begin with a vowel.
Following the Past Verbal Participle.....	{ The Past, Fut-Past, Pluperfect and Prob-Fut-Past tenses of the Indicative. The Future Past Participle, the Supine and the Desiderative Base.
Following the Fut. Verbal Participle ...	{ The Future, Progressive and Continued Fut. of the Indicative, those parts of the Volitive Mood whose terminations begin with a consonant: the verbal noun in <b>¶</b> ; and the Negative Base.
Following the Past Relative Participle.	{ The Future Relative Part, and the Verbal Noun in <b>□</b> .

179.—We have, then, following :—

# THE BASAL CONJUGATION.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRESENT INDICATIVE.	PAST VERBAL PART.	FUTURE VERBAL PART.	PAST RELATIVE PART.
하오	하여 or 하야	하게	할

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

### SIMPLE TENSES.

Present.....	하오.....	Do.
Past .....	하엿소.....	Did.
Perfect Past .....	하엿섯소.....	Has done.
Future .....	하겿소.....	Will do.
Fut. Past .....	하엿겿소.....	Will have done.

### COMPOUND TENSES.

Progressive .....	하더이다.....	Am or was doing.
1st Pluperfect .....	하엿더이다...	Had done.
2nd Pluperfect.....	하엿섯더이다	Had done already.
Continued Future..	하겿더이다...	Will be doing.
Probable Fut. Past.	하엿겿더이다	Must have done.

## VOLITIVE MOOD.

### 1ST PERSONS PLURAL.

### 2ND PERSON.

To inferiors,	하자.....	} $\begin{matrix} \text{으} \\ \text{는} \\ \text{let} \end{matrix}$	To inferiors,	하여라...	} $\begin{matrix} \text{Do} \\ \text{thou.} \end{matrix}$
„ equals,	하세.....		„ equals,	하게.....	
„ superiors,	하옵세다		„ superiors,	하옵시오	

## PARTICIPLES.

### VERBAL

### RELATIVE.

Past,	{ 하여 or 하야 }	having done.	Present, 하느,	Doing.
			Past, 할,	Done.
			Future, 할,	About to do.
Future, 하게,			Imperfect, 하던,	Were doing.

Verbal Nouns .....	{	힘, Action.
	{	하기, The doing.
Bases.....	{	Neg. .... 하지, To do.
	{	Desid. .... 할라, Desire to do.
Supine .....		하러, To do.

Note.—In accordance with the true Korean idea, we have given no person in the indicative mood, and we would remind the student, that any one of the parts there given, may be used with equal correctness for first, second or third persons, singular or plural. We would also call his attention to the fact, that termination 3 in the declarative table, and 6 in the interrogative coincide, both in form and in use. The forms given in the simple tenses may then be used either affirmatively or interrogatively.

180.—A knowledge of the principal parts of any verb will enable us to carry it through this conjugation. Some of the most common verbs that are a little irregular in forming their principal parts are given at the end of this chapter, and the student is advised to commit them.

By way of illustration the following verbs are conjugated, and as a matter of practise it would be well to take other verbs and in like manner construct paradigms.

The verb. **아오.** To know.

### 1. Principal Parts.

**아오, 알 아, 알게, 안.**

### 2. Moods, Tenses, etc.

	INDICATIVE.	VERBAL PARTS.	RELATIVE PARTS.
Pres .....	아오...	—	아는.
Past .....	알았소	알 아	안.
Perfect Past ...	알았섯소	—	
Fut .....	알겠소	알게	알.

Fut. Perf .....	알앗겟소 .....	— .....	알앗살.
Prog .....	알더이다 .....	— .....	알던.
1st Pluper ...	알앗더이다 .....	— .....	—
2nd Pluper ...	알앗췌더이다 .....	— .....	—
Cont. Fut ...	알겟더이다 .....	— .....	—
Prob. F. P. ...	알앗겟더이다 .....	— .....	—

		INF.	EQUALS.	SUP.
Volitive { 1st Pers. Plural.		알자,	알세,	아옵세다.
Mood. { 2nd Pers.		알아라,	알게,	아옵시오.

VERBAL NOUNS.	SUPINE.	BASES.
암.		Neg. .... 알지.
알기.	알나	Desid. .... 알냐.

The Verb. 막소 To hinder.

## I.—ACTIVE VOICE.

### 1. Principal Parts.

막소,      막아,      막게,      막은.

### 2. Moods, Tenses, etc.

	INDICATIVE	VERBAL PARTS.	RELATIVE PARTS.
Pres .....	막소 .....	— .....	막는.
Past .....	막앗소 .....	막아 .....	막은.
Fut .....	막겟소 .....	막게 .....	막을.
Fut. Perf ...	막앗겟소 .....	— .....	막앗살.
Prong. ....	막더이다 .....	— .....	막던.
1st. Plup ....	막앗더이다 .....	— .....	—
2nd Plup ....	막앗췌더이다 ...	— .....	—
Cont. Fut ...	막겟더이다 .....	— .....	—
Prob. F. P. ...	막앗겟더이다 ...	— .....	—

		IMP.	EQUALS.	SUP.
Volitive { 1st Pers Plural.		막자,	막세,	막옵세다.
Mood. { 2nd Pers. ....		막아라,	막게,	막옵시오.

VERBAL NOUNS.	SUPINE.	BASES.
막음. 막기.	막으러.	Neg..... 막지. Desid ..... 막으랴.

## II.—PASSIVE VOICE. 막히오.

## 1. Principal Parts.

막히오,      막히어,      막히게,      막힐.

## 2. Moods, Tenses, etc.

	INDICATIVE.	VERBAL PARTS.	RELATIVE PARTS.
Pres .....	막히오 .....	—	..... 막히느.
Past .....	막히었소 .....	막히어 ...	막힐.
Perfect Past	막히었셨소 .....	—	..... —
Fut .....	막히겟소 .....	막히게 ...	막힐.
F. Perf ...	막히었겟소 .....	—	..... 막히었실.
Prog .....	막히더이다 .....	—	..... 막히던.
1st. Plup ...	막히었더이다 .....	—	..... —
2nd Plup ...	막히었셨더이다 .....	—	..... —
Cont. F. ...	막히겟더이다 .....	—	..... —
Prob. F. P.	막히었겟더이다 .....	—	..... —

	INF.	EQUALS.	SUP.
Volitive { 1st Pers. Plur.	막히자,	막히세,	막히옵세다.
Mood. { 2nd Pers. ....	막히어라,	먹히게,	막히옵시오.

VERBAL NOUNS.	SUPINE.	BASES.
막힘. 막히기.	막히러.	Neg. .... 막히지. Desid. ... 막히려.

## VERBS WITH CONJUNCTIONS.

181.—While the matter of conjunctions should properly be left to the chapter on conjunctions; they vary so much in their uniting with the verb, that a few words about them and their use is needed here. In use we find that some unite with the verb in the indicative, some join

themselves to verbal participles, some to relative participles and some directly to the stem.

182.—The following list of some of the conjunctions that are most commonly used, divided into these classes should be learned.

1st. Those uniting with the tenses of the Indicative Mood :—

면, 거든.....	<i>If, when ; conditional.</i>
니 .....	<i>Whereas ; causal and concessive.</i>
낮가, 니까, 니가니, 니간드로 etc. ....	<i>In as much as, seeing that, since,          as ; marks the reason.</i>
매 .....	
즉속 } preceded by ㄴ ... 즉속 }	
전대 .....	
길너 .....	<i>Because ; marks the cause.</i>
나 .....	<i>Although, whether ; in part con-          ccessive.</i>
되 .....	
거니와 .....	<i>Although, though ; concessive and          in part disjunctive.</i>
들 preceded by ㄴ ..... 마는 .....	
거나 or 거니 .....	<i>But, however ; disjunctive.</i>
거나 or 거니 .....	<i>Whether, as though, appears as.</i>
거늘 .....	<i>When after, since ; temporal and          causal.</i>
며 .....	
고면, 고만, 고면 .....	<i>And.</i>
고면, 고만, 고면 .....	<i>At the time that, while. Used in          surprise, astonishment, blaming.</i>

Note.—With this last, 는 sometimes is used as a connective.

2nd. Uniting with verbal participles :—

도 ..... *Though, although ; concessive.*

3rd. Uniting with relative participles.

지 ..... *Whether.*



가 .....	} <i>Whether</i> , used also in soliloquies expressive of doubt.
지라도 .....	} <i>Even though, although, though</i> ; concessive.
딴 .....	} <i>When, while, whereas, though at the same time.</i>
고 .....	} Used in soliloquies expressive of doubt, or surprise.
진대, 진댄 .....	} In case that, if it should be, under those circumstance.

4th. Uniting with the stem.

고 ..... *And*.

면서 ..... } *While*. Signifies simultaneous action.

There are some adverbs, interjections etc. that, uniting with the indicative tenses in the same way as conjunctions should be mentioned here.

As:—

코나..... *Why!* Interjection expressive of surprises.

그리하..... *Why!* Interjection expressive of surprises.

Note.—This is used *with* the verbal termination.

다가..... *While* ; indicates an interruption.

노..... { An exclamation of surprise or wonder  
used in soliloquies.

Note.—This particle is in much more common use in the Province of Kyeng Sang Do. It is there used to either superiors or inferiors in asking questions.

**183.**—As will be noticed, those uniting with the indicative are most numerous. When the conjunction is affixed, as has already been remarked, the termination is dropped. This being done the conjunction unites itself directly with the verb, but euphony may make

some changes. With the exception of **마는** conjunctions beginning with **ㄴ**, **ㄹ** and **ㄷ**, cannot unite themselves directly to stems or verbal forms ending in a consonant. A connective is needed and **으** or **이** is quite largely used for this purpose.

With the present indicative, there being no tense root, the conjunction unites directly with the verbal stem and the rule may hold that with all stems ending in a consonant other than **ㄱ**, **ㅅ**, or **ㅂ**, **으** will be used. Of course when there is a latent **ㅎ**, it will appear before the **으**. With those ending in **ㅅ** or **ㅂ**, often the final letter may be doubled or another consonant may enter in. The only rule that we can give in this matter is, that all verbs whose stems end in **ㅅ** and **ㅂ** take the form of the stem found in the Past Relative Participle and may be formed by dropping the final **ㄴ** of the Past Relative Participle and adding the conjunction.

Verbs whose stems end in **ㄱ** are joined to conjunctions beginning with **ㄹ** directly, without any connective; and when joined to those beginning with **ㄴ**, the **ㄱ** is dropped.

As those ending in a vowel :—

오오 (to come),	오면 (if come),	오나 (although come).
자오 (to sleep),	자면 (if sleep),	자나 (although sleep).
주오 (to give),	주면 (if give),	주나 (although give).
쓰오 (to use),	쓰면 (if use),	쓰나 (although use).

Those ending in consonants other than **ㅅ**, **ㅂ** or **ㄱ** :—

먹소 (to eat),	먹으면 (if eat),	먹으나 (although eat).
죽소 (to die),	죽으면 (if die).	죽으나 (although die).
숨소 (to hide),	숨으면 (if hide),	숨으나 (although hide).
만소 (to be plentiful).	만하면 (if plentiful),	만호나 (although plentiful).

Those ending in 人 and 日 :—

받소 (to receive),	R.P.	받은	then	받으면	(If receive etc.
맞소 (to suit)	„	맞췌	„	맞췌면	(If suit) „
업소 (to be lacking)	„	업슨	„	업스면	*(If lacking) „
묻소 (to ask)	„	무른	„	무르면	(If ask) „
들소 (to hear)	„	드른	„	드르면	(If hear) „

Those ending in 己 :—

아오 (to know)	Stem	알 :	알면	(If know),	하나	(although know).
부오 (to blow)	„	불 :	불면	(If blow),	부나	(although blow).
노오 (to fly)	„	날 :	날면	(If fly),	나나	(although fly).
기오 (to be long)	„	길 :	길면	(If long),	기나	(although long).

With tenses other than the present, ending in a consonant, the connective is always 시.

As :—

주었소, (he gave).	주었시면, (if he gave).	주었시나, (although he gave).
맞췌소, (it suited).	맞췌시면, (if it suited).	맞췌시나, (although it suited).
가겠소, (he will go).	가겠시면, (if he will go).	가겠시나, (although he will go).
얻겠소, (he will get).	얻겠시면, (if he will get).	얻겠시나, (although he will get).

184.—All other conjunctions, etc. unite themselves directly with the form of the verb without the aid of any connective.

As :—

가거든.....	If he go.
들거든.....	If he hear.
가겠거늘.....	Since he will go.
들거나.....	Whether he hear.

185.—In this place it will be well to give a few words on the

\* 업시면 Is also largely used.

## MEANINGS AND USES.

of some of these conjunctions.

면, 거든, 진 더, 진 더.

면 and 거든. Both these conjunctions have a conditional force.

The first is simply conditional, and is rendered into English by *if*. It may be united with any one of the tenses simple or compound. When united to the simple tenses, we have simple supposition, but when, to the compound, it generally has the idea of supposition contrary to fact.

It is always used when the apodosis expresses a natural or consequential sequence.

It is in regard to the second of these that we find the greatest difficulty. While most rightly acknowledge that 거든 has largely a temporal sense and may be almost always translated as "*when*" or "*as soon as*," this is not found to meet all cases. It is generally found that 면 can replace 거든 without objections but there are many places where 거든 can never take the place of 면. It has been said that 거든 can be used where the apodosis expresses a conditional command (a statement found to be true) but in such places there are many who find a shade of distinction between 면 and 거든. This rule has been widened to 거든 being used where the action in the apodosis is subject to the will of the actor and not a natural sequence of the conditions as expressed above, but it is soon discovered that this rule is not always true and that the exceptions are almost as numerous as the examples. A study of the following examples will it is believed help us to understand the uses of these conditional particles but the rule as given

above that 거든 cannot be used where the apodosis expresses a natural or consequential sequence always holds.

말을 사면 수인교는 쓸디 업소. If you buy a horse, there is no need for a chair.

티일 김셔방이 돈 가져 오면 그 집을 사겔소. If Mr. Kim brings the money to-morrow ; I will buy that house.

알논 줄 알앗더면 내가 보러 갓겔소. If I had known that he was sick I would have gone to see him.

그 약을 먹엇더면 하니 죽엇겔소. If he had taken that medicine, he would not have died.

내가 알앗더면 못 가게 하엿겔소. If I had known, I would have prevented his going.

지금 가더면 나도 가 겔소. If you were going now, I too would go.

오늘 병이 낫거든 티일 가겔다, I will go to-morrow if I should get better to-day.

편지 오거든 잘 밧아 두어라. If a letter should come take care of it.

면

장연이 도라 하여도 일커가 치우면 나는 도와 아니하오 Although Chang Yeun is said to be a good place (to live), I don't like it {when if the cold weather comes.

그가 글시블 잘써도 He can write very well, but {when if he is dictated to, he can't write at all.

일기가 치우면 뜻겨운 {When it is cold, we have  
 옷을 넘어야 할것소. {if  
 to put on thicker clothes.

만히 먹으면 비가 불너서 {When one eats too much,  
 일을 만히 못 할오. {If  
 he can not do much work  
 on account of the full  
 stomach.

인천 가면 외국 사람 {When you go to Chemul-  
 만히 보겠소. {If  
 po, you will meet a good  
 many foreigners.

면, 거 든.

비가 드리오 {거 든 동 I will accompany you  
 {면 {as soon as the ship comes  
 할것소. {if  
 in.

비가리 {거 든 지령 편지 {When it clears up, I will  
 {면 {If  
 가져 가 겠소. take the letters to Chai  
 Ryung.

비가 오 {거 든 창문 닫쳐 {When it rains shut the  
 {면 {If  
 라. windows.

다리 아프 {거 든 휴막에서 {When your are tired of  
 {면 {If  
 쉬여 갑세다. walking let us rest a while  
 at the inn.

편지가 아니 오 {거 든 {When the letter does not  
 {면 {If  
 었더케 할리사. come, what am I to do?

씨가 질 {거 든 나무 신을 {When it is muddy, put on  
 {면 {If  
 신으시오. your wooden shoes.

비싸 {거든 사지 마시오 {When it is dear, don't buy  
면 If it.  
it.

말이 약하 {거든 타지 {When your horse is not  
면 If strong, don't ride her.  
마시오.

진 디 or the same with the postposition **는**, **진 디** is really a composite conjunction. It means, *in case that, if it should be that* and this thought is simply emphasized by the adding of the Appositive Postposition.

공부 **홀진디** 부지런히 If you are going to study  
하여라. be diligent about it.

조선<sup>을</sup> **갈진디** 금강산<sup>을</sup> If you should go to Korea,  
구경하여라. visit the "Diamond  
Mountains."

하인을 보낼진디 자세히 If you should send the  
말을 닐너보내라. servant, give him careful  
instructions.

너 **아니홀진디** 남이나 If you do not do it yourself  
하게 두어라. get somebody else to do  
it.

186.—**니**. This conjunction has been the source of much discussion because, at times, it was found giving a simple causal effect; and then, again, without any apparent reason, implying opposition to something that follows, something unexpected.

On examination we find that with the simple tenses the first sense always appears but with the compound the second sense may be found.

(a) **니** is then exactly equivalent to the English word *whereas*, which may have this dual idea and is used in



the same connections. With simple tenses, **니** is equivalent to, *considering that, it being the case that, as, since*: with the compound, however, "*when in fact,*" "*while—on the contrary*;" introducing something unexpected or at times introducing a result and marking the cause.

(b) A combination of this **니** with **고** (reason) in connection with the relative participle gives us a very common idiomatic expression used to introduce the reason or cause as.

(a)

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 리일 공부 하겠시니 일즉<br>오시오.                           | Come early to-morrow, as<br>we will study.  |
| 장사를 잘 하였시니 부자<br>되었소.                           | Since he has been a success-<br>ful merchant, he is now<br>rich.  |
| 서울을 오늘 가겠더니<br>비가 와서 못 갔소.                      | I was going to Seoul to-day<br>but it rained and I did<br>not.  |
| 집을 잘 지었더니 화재를<br>맞았소.                           | I built a good house but it<br>took fire.   |
| 일본을 가라고 제물포<br>까지 갔더니 비가 썩<br>나서 못 가고 도로<br>왔소. | Intending to go to Japan I<br>went as far as Chemulpo,<br>but, the boat had gone<br>and I could not, so came<br>back. |
| 공부 잘 하더니 유명학<br>선비가 되었소.                        | Because he studied hard<br>he became a renowned<br>scholar.   |

도적질 하더니 순검 의게 He was arrested by the  
 잡혔소. police because he stole.

## (b)

리서방이 왜 장수를 하련 If you want to know why  
 고 하니 부자가 되기를 Mr. Yi has gone into  
 목덕함이오. business it is because he  
 aims to be a rich man.

엇지하야 김서방이 오는 The reason why Mr. Kim  
 월요일에 떠나려고하니 intends to start next  
 급한일이 있는 사들 Monday morning, is be-  
 이오. cause he has some urgent  
 business.

그사람이 왜 유명하고하니 If you want to know why  
 나라에 도훈 사업을 he is renowned, it is be-  
 만히 한 사들이오. cause he has served his  
 country well many times.

하인을 급히 왜 보내 The reason why he sent his  
 는고하니 그의 친구가 servant so hurriedly, was  
 병든 사들 이오. because his friend was  
 taken sick.

NOTE:—It is when the conjunction is used with the compound tenses that we begin to find our difficulties for when added to the tense roots of any of the compound tenses except the *Progressive*, it may be used of all three persons, while most grammars assert that with the *Progressive* tenses it can not be used in the first person.

This latter rule is not quite correct for where there is no causal or concessive sense involved and no definite time expressed, it may be used also of the first person. In other words, of *habitual action*, it may be used of the first person.

If on the other hand, *time*, *cause*, or *concession* is expressed, it can only be used for the second or third person.

## Examples :

내가 이왕에는 거름을 잘  
것더니 지금은 잘 못  
것소. I used to be quite a walker,  
but now I am not.

내가 이왕에는 교인이  
아니더니 지금은 진실  
한 교인이 되었소. I used to be a non-believer  
of Christ, but now I am  
a good Christian.

지난학기에 공부하니 허더  
니 시험에 탈대했었다. You failed in your examina-  
tion because you had  
been idle last term.

그사람이 어제는 톱질하  
더니 오늘은 아무것도  
아니한다. He sawed wood yesterday  
but he is not doing any-  
thing today.

그리스도교를 위하야 우  
리백성 의게 일을 만히  
하더니 지금은 저희가  
그덕을 고마와하호. You worked hard among  
our people for the sake of  
Christianity and now the  
people appreciate your  
service.

아침에 구름끼더니 지금  
비가 오호. It was very cloudy this  
morning and now it rains.

187.—**닛가** with its various modifications, **때**, **즉** or **즉슨** preceded by **ㄴ**, and **전덕**, all mark the reason, or that on account of which something is done.

The strongest of these is **즉** which is about the equivalent of the English word *because*.

그 하인이 일을 잘 하  
닛가 여러 히 집에  
두었소. Because that servant works  
well he has been in this  
house many years.

아싸 만히 먹었시닛가  
지금 더 못 먹겠소. As I eat heartily a little  
while ago, I cannot eat  
more now.

길이 멀매 로비가 만하야 As the journey is a long one,  
쓰겟소. the traveling expenses will  
be heavy.

짐이 무거오매 힘 잇는 As the load is heavy, call  
삭군을 불너라. a strong coolie.

갑시 비싼즉 살수 업소. I can not buy it, because  
the price is high.

지금은 돈이 만흔 즉 빚 As I have plenty of money  
갚하야 쓰겟다. now, I must pay my  
debts.

건디 has a little more of a temporal sense, and may  
often almost be translated by a conditional clause.

다시 생각 하건디 그 Since I have thought over  
일이 아니 되겟소. the matter again, that  
affair will not succeed.

이 비단을 그 비단에 After comparing this satin  
비하건디 이 비단은 대 with that, this is very  
단이 비싸오. dear.

조선 말을 비화 보건디 Now that I have tried the  
대단이 어려울 듯하오. study of Korean, I think  
it will be extremely dif-  
ficult.

청건디 and 원건디 are used to introduce a petition or  
request or to express earnest desire.

청 건디 대 왕은 기리보 May your Majesty be long  
중 하시옵소서. preserved.

청건디 이와 갓치 하시 I pray you do it this way.  
옵소서.

원 건디 폐하는 그말 My earnest desire is that  
을 드르시옵소서. your Majesty will listen  
to those words.

원컨디 저와 궂치 하시 I earnestly hope that you  
기를 보라노이다. will do it with me.

188.—길너. This is a contraction of the ending of the verbal noun in 기, with the postposition 에 and a form derived from the verb 이오 (to be). It signifies *because*, and shows that the action expressed by the verb that it governs, was the real cause of the action contained in the principal verb of a sentence. It is stronger than any of the conjunctions given in ¶, 186, and 187, as it marks a *result*, following from a cause.

그 놈이 공연이 내게 욕하 Because that fellow insulted  
길너 욕에 가도앗소. me without reason, I had  
him locked up.

도적이 무섭 길너 총을 Because I am afraid of  
가지고 든니오.\* robbers I carry fire arms.

아싸 비가 오길너 유삼 I put on my water proof,  
을 넘었소. because it was raining a  
little while ago.

189.—나 is equivalent to *though*, or *although*, and has a concessive force. It is used with verbs of *knowing*, *telling*, etc., where we would use the English word *whether*. Repeated after co-ordinate clauses it is equivalent to either—or, See 269

말은 잘하나 일은 잘못 He talks well enough, but  
하오. he cannot work well.

값은 적으나 보기는 묘소. Though the price is small,  
it looks well.

자나 마나 믿음 대로하오. Sleep or not, suit yourself.

\* Literally Because thieves are to be feared I carry fire arms.

이 일은 죽으나 사나 할 거시오. You ought to do this whether you die or live.

.

190.—거니와, 디 (sometimes written 되), and 들 preceded by ㄴ, may all be rendered by, *though, although, as though, as if, however*, etc. They generally have a concessive force, but we quite often find them employed where in English we would use a disjunctive.

이 성션을 먹거니와 일홈 은 모라겟소.	Although I eat this fish, I do not know its name.
총은 노릇거니와 노로는 못 잡앗소.	Though I fired off my gun, I did not get the deer.
고양이는 만흐디 쥐는 아니 잡소.	Though there are plenty of cats, they do not catch the rats.
키는 크디 발은 적소.	Though he is tall, his feet are small.
못쓰게 하는 일은 만히 흔들 무엇 하겟느냐.	Even though a man does a host of useless things, of what account is it?
죽은 후에 약을 가져온들 쓸디 잇느냐.	Even though you bring medicine, after a man is dead, is it any use?

191.—마는. This word, unlike most Korean conjunctions, refers more to what follows, than to what precedes it. It may consequently appear at times, at the beginning of a sentence, and at times we do find it also, standing alone at the end of a sentence. All such sentences are, however, incomplete. It may be rendered into English

by *but*, *however*, etc. In its union with the verb, the termination may be retained, or it may be replaced by **것**.

Note.—In connection with this word, we should not forget that it is not much used by Koreans. They as a rule, prefer to use one of the concessive particles, and generally transpose the sentence and do so. At times they express the same idea by the use of the verbal noun in **기**, with the postposition **는**. See ¶ 173. It seems almost as though the Korean prefers to use any other phrase than this, and careful attention, will reveal the fact that **마는** is much more commonly used by foreigners, or Koreans with whom they are associated, than by Koreans generally.

A few illustrations of its use are given :—

요기는 요타 마는 갑시 It is good, but it is dear.  
만타.

비는 온다 마는 가는 거시 It is raining, but we had  
도켓다. better go.

똥을 잡으러 가오 마는 I am going out to get a  
잡을는지 모라겟소. pheasant, but I do not  
know whether I shall  
succeed.

192.—거나, 거니. This conjunction is generally repeated and may be rendered into English by *whether—or*.

The **거니** form is used quite frequently alone with **하오** expressing appearance and may be translated by *think*.

가거나 말거나 모름대로 Go or not, do as you wish.  
하오.

먹거나 굶거나 생각대로 Eat or starve, do as you  
하오. think best.

크거니 적거니 사오. Whether it is large or small,  
buy it.

공부하거니하였시나 작란 It seemed as though he  
하였고나. would study but he  
frittered away his time.

오거니 생각하엿소. I thought he was coming.



193.—거늘 signifying *when, after, since, as*, has both a temporal and causal effect. It is found for the most part in books, but may at times, though very rarely be used in conversation.\*

The verb 이오 gives us the form 이어늘.

친구가 죽겠다 하거늘 When they say a friend is  
엇지 아니 갈수가 잇스 dying how can one but  
리오. go?

다른 사람의 말이 그 책 When some one else says  
을 네가 가져 갔다 하 that you took the book;  
거늘 엇지 네가 아니 how can you say you did  
가져 갔다 하겠느냐. not?

194.—며. This conjunction is simply connective and signifies *and*. Unlike its equivalent 고 which commonly unites directly with the stem, 며 generally unites with the tenses and then replaces the terminations.

While the distinction is not strictly adhered to 며 generally connects acts that are carried on simultaneously, 고 those that are successive.

밥을 먹으며 공부 할수 Can I eat and study (at the  
잇느냐. same time)?

작란하며 공부를 엇더케 How can you both play and  
하오. study?

언제 갔스며 언제 왔느냐. When did you go and when  
did you come?

어느 시에 떠나갓시며 Tell exactly, what time you  
어느 시에 도라올 거슬 will go and at what time  
주세히 말하오. you ought to be coming  
back.

\* Some say that 거늘 and 고먼 (195) are the same.

195.—**고면, 고만, 고면.** These are but three different forms which the same conjunction may assume. They may be rendered into English by—*at the time that, when, while, though at the same time, when in fact*, and are used in expressing surprise, astonishment, and in reproach.

As a rule, they unite directly with the verb, after its termination has been dropped, but **는** may be used as a connective.

지금 비가 오는 고면 아니 온다고 할나. Even now while the rain is coming down, do you say it does not rain?

네 집에 불 났고면 아니 가나. When your house is on fire, are you not going?

붓시 도쿄면 언잔라고 호호. Though the pencils are good, at the same time, he says they are bad.

김서방이 잊고면 업다고 호엿소. Though Mr. Kim was in he said, he was out.

196.—**도.** This conjunction signifies, *though, although*, and has a concessive force, but is commonly only found united with the past verbal participle.

지금 가도 그 사람 볼수 는 업소. Even though you go now you can not see that man.

갑손 비싸도 내가 사겟소. Though the price is high, I will buy.

교군군은 왔셔도 아마 못 가겟다. Even though the chair coolies have come, perhaps he will not go.

그 집을 내가 사고 시바도 돈이 부족하겟소. Although I would like to buy that house, I can not afford it.

197.—지, 가 and 고. 지 and 가 are both used with relative participles and signify *whether, whether—or*, with verbs of knowing and not knowing, etc. In uniting with the participles, except the future participle in ㄴ, they can unite directly and no connective is needed. With this, however, ㄴ is needed as a connective. We find these conjunctions largely in use with those relative participles that are derived from the various simple and compound tenses by affixing ㄴ and ㄹ. Both these conjunctions are also largely used, (가 more frequently) in soliloquies, expressive of doubt and hesitation and at such times they are joined directly to the Future Relative Participle without the connective ㄴ.

Sometimes joined direct to the stem 나 becomes ㅅ.

With reference to the word 고, it may be said that it also has this latter sense, and is used in the same way.

오늘 오는지 모라겟소. I do not know whether he  
will come to-day.

다 하였는지 무리 보아라. Ascertain whether he has  
finished.

집에 계신가 알고 오너라. Go and find out whether he  
is at home.

어제 왔는가 알수 업소. I can not tell whether he  
came yesterday.

티일 갈는지 모라겟소. I do not know whether I  
shall go to-morrow.

엇더케 하면 좋을가. How had I better do it?

일본 가서 사면 엇더할고. How would it be to go to  
Japan and buy it?

198.—지라도. This conjunction is found only with the regular future, and future past relative participles. It has the sense of *though, although, even though* etc., and is

the strongest of the Korean concessives. With the future participle, it has a present and hence with the future past, a past sense.

다시 오라고 할지라도 Even though you tell him  
아니 오겠소. to come again, he will  
not.

약 먹을지라도 죽겠소. Even though you take the  
medicine, you will die.

어제 갔실지라도 못 Although I went yesterday,  
만났소. I did not meet him.

199.—**ㄷ** is equivalent to *when, while, whereas, though at the same time*, and is joined to relative participles.

비가 오는데 왜 가오. Why are you going when it  
is raining ?

그 집을 잘 지었는데 왜 Whereas they built that  
헐나고 하오. house well, why do they  
want to pull it down ?

티일은 손님이 만히 오 When there are a host of  
겻는데 아모것 티접할 friends coming to-mor-  
거술 사지 아니 하겠 row, have you not bought  
느냐. a thing with which to  
entertain them ?

200.—**고**. Like **며**, this conjunction is, as a rule, simply connective, and may be rendered into English by *and*—*See p. 194.*

To this the oppositive postposition **는** is often added giving us the effect almost of a conditional.

Note.—This same connective may be affixed to any one of the tenses in the forms ending in **아**, and used with **하오**; it then gives us the regular form for indirect discourse.

불 끄고 자거라.

Put out the light and go to sleep.

어제 가고 오늘 또 갔소.

He went yesterday and again to-day.

꽃도 피었고 일기도 도  
호니 형기 할러 가옵  
시다.

As both the flowers are out,  
and the weather is fine,  
let us take a walk.

티일은 공수도 오겠고  
외부대신 도 오겠시니  
도흔 실과 사 오너라.

As the Minister and the Pre-  
sident of the Foreign Office  
are both coming to-mor-  
row; buy some good fruit.

그리하고 는 안되는 일이  
업느니라.

If you do it that way it  
cannot but succeed.

너갓치 빚을지고는 살수  
업느니라.

Nobody can live and be as  
much in debt as you are.

나있고는 네가쉬지 못하  
다.

You cannot rest while I am  
here.

더러울 충신이 잊고는 나  
라가 망하지 아니하  
느니라.

If there were such patriots  
as that the country could  
not lose.

201.—**고나** and **그리아** are both interjections expressive of surprise, and are used with the indicative tenses. With **고나** the termination is dropped; with **그리아**, it is retained. It may be rendered into English by *why!* preceding the clause.

**고나** is often contracted with **곤** and we have the constantly used ending **하곤** often pronounced as though it were **하군** and not uncommonly wrongly so written.

'비가 어제도 오더니 오늘  
도 오는 고나.

Why! It was raining yes-  
terday and it is raining  
again to-day.

어제 왔던 인희가 오늘  
또 왔고나. Why! The boy who came  
yesterday, has come again  
to-day.

오늘 남풍이 종일 분즉  
티일 또 비가 오겠 곤. Why! It will rain again  
to-morrow, for the South  
wind has been blowing  
all day.

겨울에 쫓치 봄과 꽃하니  
이상하오 그리아. Why! It is wonderful that  
the flowers in winter are  
like those of spring.

김서방이 어제 죽었소  
그리아. Why! Mr. Kim died yes-  
terday.

바람이 대단 혼즉 큰  
화제가 되겠소 그리아. Since the wind is blowing  
so hard, it will indeed, be  
a great conflagration.

202.—다가. Signifies *while, at the time that when*, and  
implies an interruption. It is a conjunctive adverb, and  
may unite with any of the simple tenses of the indicative.

It may at times be rendered by *but*.

서울 오다가 김서방을 맞  
났소. I met Mr. Kim when I was  
was coming to Seoul.

이 병을 일본 가다가  
엇었소. I got this disease when I  
was going to Japan.

미국 가랴다가 아니 갔소. I intended to go to America,  
but did not.

오늘 공사를 보랴다가 못  
보았소. I intended to see the Minis-  
ter to-day, but did not.

203.—면서. This conjunctive adverb also signifies  
*while*, but it has the sense of simultaneous action, and  
indicates that the actions expressed by the dependent, and

the principal verbs were carried on at the same time. The Koreans however recognize that the action of the dependent verb may occur at any point during the course of action expressed by the principle verb.

- 책 보면서 담뭍 먹소. He smokes, while he reads his book.
- 가면서 의론 하옵시다. Let us consult about it, while we are going.
- 밥 먹으면서 편지 보겠소. I will read the letter, while eating.
- 선생이 집으로 가라  
떠나면서 학도들을  
내게 맡겼소. The teacher committed the care of the scholars to me, when he was starting for home.
- 이 집 주인이 서울 가  
면서 열쇠를 내게  
맡겼소. The owner of this house, committed the key to my keeping, when he went to Seoul.
- 비 오면서 바람이 부소. It blows while it rains.
- 머리가 압호면서 비가  
압호호. At the same time that my head aches, my stomach, aches.

면서 with adverbs of time such as **곧**, (*at once*) etc., has also the sense of, *as soon as*. For illustrations of this see Part II. Chap. VII., § II. Sec. 23, 3.

#### THE DESIDERATIVE VERB.

204.—The regular desiderative verb is formed by the use of the desiderative base and **하오**, generally connected by the connective **고**. The **고** may, however, be dispensed with, and then still further contractions may take place.



When such desideratives are formed, they can be carried through the whole basal conjugation. They are equivalent to the English words *to desire to*, *to intend to*, *to want to*.

As :—

먹으랴고	ㅎ오	.....	To intend to eat.
가랴고	ㅎ오	.....	To intend to go.
자랴고	ㅎ오	.....	To intend to sleep.

205.—Another from of the desiderative may be obtained by the use of *고저* or *고자* affixed to the verbal stem, with *ㅎ오*.

In use these two are often interchangeable, and both signify, *desire, intention*.

The true distinction between these, is, that while the form in *려* or *랴* signifies rather *desire, wish*, that in *저* or *자* has more the idea of *purpose, intent*.

지금 서울 잇서서 감서	As I am at Seoul now, I
방을 보고저 ㅎ오.	purpose seeing Mr. Kim.
미국 잇실때 화륜선을	While I was in America, I
사고저 ㅎ엇소.	intended buying a steam-
	boat.

조선 풍수와 의론 ㅎ고저	I intend consulting with the
ㅎ오.	Korean Minister.

Further illustration of both these desiderative forms will be found in Part II. Chap. I, § III. Sec. 13.

#### NEGATIVES.

206.—There are in Korean two negatives, *안* or *아니*, and *못*. Both are simple negatives and may be rendered into English by *not*. *안*, however, always brings in the

idea of the will of the subject; 못 on the other hand, generally conveys the idea of inability, and is used in negations that were brought about generally, without an act of the will of the subject of the verb. This distinction between 안 and 못 should not only always be recognized when listening to Koreans, but *must always* be observed in speaking. By a lack of discrimination in this matter, the most ludicrous mistakes often occur. These words may be used adverbially when they precede the verb they negate.

On account of the distinction mentioned above, 못 may often be rendered by the English *can not*.

지금 안 자요.	He is not sleeping now.
어제 안 갔소.	He did not go yesterday.
저녁은 안 먹겠소.	I will not take any supper.
오늘 못 시작요.	I can not start to day.
아싸 못 보았소.	I did see you before.
후에는 못 오겠소.	I can not come afterwards.

207.—These same words may be united with 호오, when they form negative verbs, and still maintain the distinction mentioned above.

When these negative verbs are used, they are preceded by the negative base of the verb they negate. Thus they give us a negative form of the principal verb. From the verb 밝소, we have the negative base 밝지 which joined to the negative verb 아니호오, gives us 밝지 아니 호오. Put the 아니 and the 호오 may contract into 안소; the 지 and the 안 into 잔 and we have then 밝잔소 as the negative of the verb 밝소 (*to be bright*).

In like manner from any verb, a negative verb may be formed, which in turn, may be carried through the whole

basal conjugation. In forming a negative from the negative base, with 못 **하오**, from the nature of the case, contractions cannot occur.

## NEGATIVES.

효소,	To be good,	효치	아니하오	or	효찬소.
먹소,	To eat,	먹지	아니하오	„	먹잔소.
주오,	To give,	주지	아니하오	„	주잔소.
걷니오,	To walk,	걷니지	아니하오	„	걷니잔소.
성가스 럽스,	To be bother- some,	{	성가스럽지 하오	{	{
죽소,	To die,	죽지	아니하오	„	죽잔소.

208.—The negative verb **마오** (*to avoid*) is much more used in Korean than its corresponding word in English. For the most part, it is found in commands, entreaties, exhortations *not* to do something. Like the other negative verbs, it is preceded by the negative base of the verb expressing the action to be avoided.

술 먹지 마오.	Do not take wine.
작란 하지 마오.	Do not play.
남 의게 해로운 일을 마오.	Avoid injury to others.

209.—Certain verbs have corresponding negative forms, such as, *to want*, and, *to refuse*; *to know* and *to be ignorant of*; and, where these exist, they are of course used in preference to the negative form that might be derived in the manner described above.

For example :—

도화 하오.	To like.	슬회여하오	To dislike.
아오 .....	To know.	모라오.....	To be ignorant of.
크오 .....	To be big.	적소.....	To be small.
높소 .....	To be high.	낮소.....	To be low.

있소 .....	To exist.	업소.....	To be lacking.
먹소 .....	To eat.	굶소.....	To fast.

## AUXILIARY VERBS.

210.—There are a number of verbs in Korean, which joining themselves to other verbs or parts of verbs, give not so much a double sense to the new verb thus formed, but a new sense, derived from the union of the two. These verbs have been termed *auxiliary* verbs, and while the term, thus used, does not signify the same as when used in most grammars, we see no reason to make a change.

Many of the verbs thus used as auxiliaries retain their original meaning throughout, and as a rule, a careful study of the auxiliary, and the form of the verb with which it is used will give an accurate understanding of the joint meaning of the two as used together.

In their use, we find that they are joined sometimes, to the verbal participles, sometimes, directly to one or other of the simple tenses, sometimes another particle is interposed, and sometimes they are joined to the relative participle. One and the same verb, may act as auxiliary in all these ways. The greater number, however, are joined to the verbal participles.

211.—The following is a list of the most common, divided into classes, according to their method of uniting with the verb :—

1st. Those united to the verbal participle :—

있소 .....	To be.	되오 .....	To become.
오오 .....	To come.	두오 .....	To leave.
가오 .....	To go.	지오 .....	To grow.
보오 .....	To see.	주오 .....	To give.
죽후오 preceded by 口,	To be worthy.	하오 .....	To do.

2nd. Joined to verbal tenses :—

보오, *connected by 나*. (to see).

3rd. Joined to relative participles :—

보오, *connected by 가*, (to see).

십소, *connected by 가*, (to want).

4th. Joined to the stem :—

잇소, *connected by 고*, (to be).

십소, *connected by 고*, (to want).

스럼소, (to be worthy of).

녁이오, (to regard as).

These are but a few of the auxiliaries in common use ; and, as has already been said, an exact rendering of them, with the connecting particles and the verb they join, will always give the meaning to be conveyed. A few words, however, about some of them will illustrate this and aid the student.

212.—오오, 가오, and 지오. The first two verbs are affixed to verbal participles, and mark the movement, *here* or *there*, as the case may be. 가오 is also affixed to neuter verbs, signifying that the state expressed by the neuter verb is gradually and constantly increasing ; and 지오 has this same sense. These verbs then, correspond to what in Latin are known as “*Inceptives*.”

내리오 To lower, 내려오오 To come down, 내려가오 To go down.

오르오 To raise, 올라오오 To come up, 올라가오 To go up.

밝소 To be bright. 밝아가오 To grow bright.

검소 To be black. 검어지오 To grow black.

늙소 To be old, 늙어가오 To grow old.

213.—보오 (*to see*) may be found used as an auxiliary, united either with a verbal participle, or with a relative participle, or with a simple tense.

1st. United with a verbal participle; no connective is needed, and the verb **보오** generally then has the sense of, *to try*. But, at times, it and the verb for which it acts as an auxiliary, may be rendered into English by one word.

**먹어보오**, "Eating try" *to taste*.

**무려보오**, "Asking see" *to inquire*.

**버혀보오**, "Cutting try" *to try to cut*.

214.—2nd. United with the relative participles, or with a simple tense, with **가** and **나** respectively as connectives, it signifies *probability, likelihood*. This sense comes naturally from a literal translation, and **간가보오**, *lit.* "Gone looks," means "It looks as though he has gone," or "He has probably gone" Again **비오 겿나보오**, *lit.* "Rain will come though it looks," means "It looks as though rain will come," or "It will probably rain."

- |                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| <b>오늘은 썬나는 가 보오.</b>               | He probably starts to-day.   |
| <b>서울서 왔는 가 보오.</b>                | He has probably come from Seoul.   |
| <b>티일은 먹겿는 가 보오.</b>               | He will probably eat it to-morrow.   |
| <b>너름에 비가 만히 오니<br/>풍년 되겿나 보오.</b> | As there is a good deal of rain this summer, it will probably be a year of plenty. |
| <b>석탄이 적으니 불이 썬지<br/>겿나 보오.</b>    | As there is but a little coal the fire will probably go out.                       |
| <b>안경 쓰면 그 책을 보겿<br/>나 보오.</b>     | If you put on your glasses you can probably read that book.                        |

215.—작 **하오** preceded by **口**, is united with the verbal participle, past or future, and signifies, *to be worthy of*—.

This was the original and true meaning of the word, but we find it to-day, used also in the sense of *possibility*, and even *probability*.

Note.—The auxiliary, here used giving what we might call a future sense to the verb with which it is used, may be employed interchangeably with the future or past participle, though the past is the more frequent.

그 음식 문든 것은 미우	That food that has been
먹암작 <b>하오</b> .	prepared is tempting.
윤서방의 동산에 잇는	The flowers in Mr. Yun's
꽃은 참 보암작 <b>하오</b> .	garden are worth seeing.

216.—스릅소. This auxiliary also has the meaning of “*to be worthy of*”; and is joined with the verbal noun, or any abstract noun. It may also be joined to the preceding auxiliary, replacing **하오**. When so used the meaning is unchanged.

호서방이 사랑 스텝소.	Mr. Oh is a lovable man.
그 병정은 미우 소용 스텝소.	That soldier is quite active.
열두시 동안이면 그만치	He ought to go that far if
멀니 감작 스텝소.	he has twelve hours.
오늘은 비가 오작 스텝소.	It looks as though it will
	rain to day.
뛰엄작 스텝소.	He looks as though he could
	jump.



217.—**십소** This word may be used either with the verbal stem, or with the relative participle.

1st. Used with the verbal stem, **고** is interposed as a connective, and **고십소** may then be rendered into English by "*I want to*" "*I desire to.*"

가고 십소. To want to go.

자고 십소. To want to sleep.

먹고 십소. To want to eat.

2nd. Used with the Relative Participle, **가** or **듯** or **듯**, must be interposed as a connective.

So used **십소** indicates strong probability, and shows that while the subject of the verb, does not know for a certainty, yet he has strong reason to believe, that the action or state contained in the verb to which **십소** acts as an auxiliary, is a fact.

몸이 대단히 압하 못살 I am in great pain and  
듯 십소. probably can not live.

로형이 오지 못할가 You will most probably not  
십소. come.

집이 잘 못 될듯 십소. I do not think the house  
will be a good one.

리일은 갈듯 십소. I shall probably go to-  
morrow.

218.—**주오** (*to give*) used as an auxiliary, gives the sense of *doing for another*, either as a favor, or in rendering aid. It may often be rendered into English by *let*, *have*, *make*, *get*.

공부 잘 하게 하여 주오. Make it so that I can study  
well.

병을 꺾쳐 주오. Cure the disease for me.

이 책을 바고아 주오. Change this book for me.

붓 하나 사 주오. Buy a pencil for me.

219.—되오 (*to become*). This auxiliary is seldom used except with the future verbal participle. Used with active verbs it signifies that *circumstances are in a position for the carrying out of the action contained in the verb with which it is used.*

음식이 먹게 되오. The food is ready for eating.

병이 죽게 되오. The disease is unto death.

그 사람이 가게 되오. That man is so that he can go.

220.—Further modifications of the verb, expressing *probability, possibility, pretension, duty*, etc., are formed by the use of the relative participles qualifying nouns such as *듯* (*reason*), *것* (*thing*), *일* (*work*), *테* (*manner*), together with *하오*, *있소* or *이오*. These have come into so general a use, that they have been regarded almost as new verbs. They can, like any other verbs, be carried through the whole conjugation, after the basal form given above. A thorough understanding, however, of the use of each word is sufficient, though in all these we must not forget the distinctive meanings of *하오*, *있소*, and *이오*.

These three verbs are more used than any others in the changing and modifying of other verbs and in the making of new verbs from nouns, etc.

*하오* has the sense of *to do, to make* and is joined to a number of nouns and adjectives which of course then become corresponding verbs. It may at times have the sense of the English *to have*. Its negative will be *아니하오*, or *안소*, or *못하오*.

*있소* which has been commonly considered the equivalent of the English *to be*, has truly the idea of *to exist* ;

and may often be rendered by the English *to have, to dwell, to live, to be in*, etc. It is, then, only equivalent to the “*to be*” of English where it predicates the existence or presence of its subject. Its negative is **업소** *to be lacking, to be not present, to be non-existent*.

**이오**, on the other hand, predicates something other than “existence” or “presence” of its subject, and is not used independently. It always has another noun or pronoun with it as a predicate and may be rendered by some form of *to be*, though it can never stand as the equivalent of *to have, to dwell, to live, or to be in*. Its negative is **아니오**. It is often contracted into **요** and **호**.

Examples of the distinctive use of these two will be found in Part II. Chapter I. § I. 1 and 2.

These distinctions must never be lost sight of ; it would not only be extremely inelegant to use one where the other ought to be employed, but in the eyes of the Korean, very ludicrous. In not a few cases also a wrong impression would be given.

221.—The following list of the nouns most commonly so used will explain this.

수 (means)	with	잇소.....	} All signify <i>ability</i> . Rendered into English by <i>can, could</i> , etc.
만 (ability)	„	호호.....	
법 (law)	„	잇소.....	
수 (means)	with	업소.....	} Signify <i>inability</i> . Ren- dered into English by <i>cannot, could not</i> , etc.
만 (ability)	„	못호호.....	
법 (law)	„	업소.....	
것 (thing)	} with	이오	} Signify <i>duty</i> . Rendered into English <i>should ought</i> etc.
터 (place)			
일 (work)			

것 (thing)	}	with	아니오...	{	Signify simply that the obligation does not exist.*
터 (place)					
일 (work)					
것 (thing)	}	with	업소.....	{	Signifies simply there is no reason to.
일 (work)					
번 (time)		with	후오.....	{	Signifies to be on the point of to just miss.
테 (semblance)		with	후오.....	{	Signifies pretense and may be rendered into English by, to pretend, to feign.
모양 (manner)		with	이오.....	{	Signifies appearance, and may be rendered by, it seems, it appears.
듯	}	with	후오 or 십소.....	{	Signify probability.
듯					
뿐	}	with	이오 .....	{	These two in use, are exclusive, and may be rendered into English, by, it is only.
씩					
것 (thing)	}	with accus. postpos.	and 아오.	{	Signify certain knowledge.
줄 (affair)					
것 (thing)	}	with instru. postpos.	and 아오.....	{	Signify something not known for a fact, but simply an opinion.
줄 (affair)					

222.—A few words on the most important of these, with illustrations of their uses are necessary.

수, 만, and 법 are for the most part, used with the future rel. part. of the verb, to signify *ability*, or *inability*, and a past is generally rendered by the past tense of 후오, or 업소.

Note.—The 만 often has the effect of the English terminative, *able* after a verb or noun, meaning *suitable for*, *fit*, *worthy of* etc.

\* Note.—These cannot then be rendered into English by *ought not* and *should not*, which can only be rendered by the negation of the verb which these auxiliaries accompany. For instance—갈것아니오 does not mean “*I should not go*,” but that “*I am under no obligation to go*.” On the other hand, 아니 갈거시오 “*I ought not to go*.”

돈이 적은즉 물 살수 업소.	As I am short of money I can not buy a horse.
표지가 업스니 편지 쓸수 업소.	As I have no paper, I can not write a letter.
그 글자가 큰즉 볼수잇소.	As those characters are large I can see them.
이붓손 쓸만 호호.	I can use this pen.
그 책이 볼만 호호.	That is a readable book.
어제 썬났시니 만날수 업섯소.	As he left yesterday I was not able to meet him.
아싸 노래는 드롤만 호엿소.	That song of a little while ago, was worth hearing.
비 아니면 바다를 건널 법이 업소.	If one does not have a boat, he can not cross the sea.
약이 잇섯더면 그병을 끗칠 법이 잇섯소.	If I had had some medicine I could have cured that disease.

223.—것, 리, and 일, when used to signify *duty*, are generally preceded by the future participle in ㄹ and can be rendered by “*ought to*,” or “*should*.” The past sense is, strange to say, generally expressed by the use of the past of 잇소. These same auxiliary nouns, preceded by the future past participle, give us the English “*ought to have*,” of strong conviction.”

그책 내가 볼 거시오.	I ought to read that book.
티월에 내가 송도로 갈 거시오.	I ought to go Song Do next month.
그 하인은 진실 흘리히오.	That servant ought to be honest.
편지는 로형이 쓸일이오.	You ought to write the letter.

비가 어제 계물포 왔실 거시오.	The boat must have reach- ed Chemulpo yesterday.
열두 시 지났으니 그 사람이 갓실 터히오.	As it is past twelve that man must have gone.
어제 부주런이 하엿더라면 다 되엿실 일이오.	If you had been energetic it would have been finishd ed yesterday.

224.—**번**, This word with **하오** preceded by a future participle, signifies to be on the *point of*, to *just miss*, to *almost accomplish* the act of the principal verb.

도적 만나 죽을번 하엿소.	I met with thieves and came near losing my life.
가다가 돌에서 넘어 질번 하엿소.	As I was going I almost fell over a stone.

225.—**모양** (*appearance*) may be used with any one of the relative participles and may be rendered into English by "*it appears*," or "*it seems as though*," with a present, past, or future verb, as the case may be.

This is sometimes shortened to simple **양** gives us such forms as **홀양으로**, or **하량으로**; **홀양이면** or **하량이면**.

지금 클뵈는 모양 이오.	He seems to be reading now.
아싸 간 모양 이오.	He seems to have gone some little while ago. •
티일 비가 또 올 모양 이오.	It seems as though it will rain again to morrow.
그런 험흔 산을 가려홀 양이면 총을 가지고 가거라.	If you should intend to go to such a wild mountain take a gun with you.

청국을 유람 할량이면 If you should travel in China  
 소개 편지를 몇장 얻 it would be very well to  
 는것이 미우 도소. get several letters of in-  
 troduction.

미국을 가량으로 빙표를 I am going to get a pass-  
 엇겟소. port as I intend to go to  
 America.

그사람이 빗 bat드량으로 He is quarrelling about get-  
 시비 호오. ting money owed to him.

듯 and 듯 with 호오 may be used with any one of the relative participles, giving us the sense of *probability*. They may be rendered into English, by adverb *probably*, with a present, future, past, or future-past tense, as the case may be.

지금 자는 듯 호오. He is probably sleeping  
 now.

발서 갔실 듯 호오. He will probably have gone  
 already.

장초 올 듯 호오. He will probably come  
 soon.

226.—The relative participle is also used with certain other words which have an adverbial force, such as **때**, **적**, (*time*) ; **사이**, or **시** (*space*) ; etc , to signify *When, while*, and the like.

편지 쓸 때 손님이 와소. While I was writing a  
 visitor came.

서울 잇섯실 때 그 사람과 While I was living in Seoul  
 친호엿소. I was quite friendly with  
 that man.



- 미국 갈 때 혼가지로 When you go to America  
가겠소. I will go with you.
- 책 볼 적에 쉼드리 마오. Do not make a noise while  
I am reading.
- 부산 갔실 적에 붓술 When I went to Fusan I  
사왔소. bought the pencils.
- 공부 할 적에 쓸 도회오. It is paper to be used  
when studying.
- 밥 먹을 수이 침방에 도 While we were eating, a  
적이 드리왔소. thief came into the bed  
room.

227.—**수록** and **도록**. These two particles as words are often wrongly interchanged. Their distinctive use should always be observed.

**수록** is used with the Future Relative Participle and has the sense of *the more—the more*. It may sometimes be followed by **더욱** adding emphasis.

**도록** on the other hand has simply the sense of *up to the point of, up to the completion of, until*, signifying the full attainment of the action of the principle verb. From the Korean standpoint there is but little of a temporal sense in **도록** though we commonly translate it by *until*. It often gives the sense of purpose.

- 바람이 불 수록 불이 니러 The more the wind blows  
나오. the greater the fire.
- 요흔 노래는 드를 수록 The more good songs I  
들고 싶소. hear the more I want to  
hear.
- 한문은 비홀 수록 어려워 The more you study the  
가오. Chinese character the  
more difficult it is.

도흔 수업은 할수록 명예 가 높하지는 것이오.	The more you work at a good profession the higher will be your reputation.
그병인이 낫도록 의수 는 여긔 잇슬 터히오.	The doctor must stay here till that patient is better.
내가 알도록 설명하여 주 시오.	Explain it to me until I understand it.
내가 오도록 너는 여긔 잇서라.	Wait here till I come.
더못된 사람은 남을 망하 도록 혼수하여서 치개 하였소.	The villain by directing others to their own undo- ing caused them to be whipped.
불이 죽지 안토록 석 탄을 너어라.	Put coal on so that the fire may not go out.

## THE VERB IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

228.—The verb, *to say, to speak*, is formed from 말 (*speech*) and **하오** (*to make*) but in telling what another has said, both of these words are not commonly used. The 말 is generally dropped, and **하오** alone employed; but joined to the verb, signifying the word spoken, by the conjunction **고**. This form however, is only used with tenses of the indicative, ending in **아** when the termination is still retained and **고하오**, simply affixed. In the affirmative, forms, the distinction between the inferior, and superior is almost lost sight of, this distinction being plainly shown by the termination of the **하오** signifying *to say*. Quite often the **고** is elided and then contractions almost unlimited, may follow.

집은    밋하    짓는다고 하오.	He says that he has con- tracted to build the house.
이 약을 먹은 후에 효험이 있섯다고 하엿소.	He said that after taking this medicine the effect was good.
쉬이    오겟다고    하옵더 이다.	He said he would come soon.
가겟다고    하엿것    마는 아니 갓소.	He said he would go but he did not.

229.—By the use of this rule for indirect discourse, an imperative verb has been formed. The low form of the termination of the volitive mood, second person, has been contracted into **라** and **라고하오** gives us the imperative verb “to command to,” to order to.” Here also the **고** may be dropped giving us **라하오** which may be contracted into **래오**.

이 붓치는 김서방을 주라 고 하오.	Order him to give this fan to Mr. Kim.
평양 갈 새에 집 잘 보라 고 하엿소.	He ordered his house to be well watched while he was gone to Pyeng Yang.
화덕에 석탄을 너호 래오.	Tell him to put some coal in the stove.
이 상 못 쓰것시니 다시 꼇치래오.	As this table will not do tell him to make it over again.

#### CONTRACTED AND ELLIPTICAL FORMS.

230.—Having seen from the very beginning, the Korean's desire to shorten every thing as much as possible and to use as few words as absence of ambiguity will allow ; we are prepared to find that, with a verb that can

undergo such changes, and employ such auxiliaries (for in fact almost everything in the whole language can be made to serve the verb), there will be various and numerous contractions and ellipses that have lost almost all resemblance to that from which they have been contracted.

We are also prepared to find that there are idioms phrases and *bon mots* not to be comprehended at first sight. A careful study of all these should be made.

While no attempt can be made here to give all these contractions, etc. a few words concerning some of the most common will enable the student to see their method of formation, and hereafter to analyze them for himself.

**231.**—In the following list a few of these are described and their use explained.

The Koreans are very prone to the use of contrasts, and owing to this fact, we find a number of elliptical phrases and contractions arising from the use of the verb **마오** (*to avoid*) in connection with other verbs, active or neuter.

Various conjunctions are employed and decide the special meaning to be given. Other contractions, etc., are made from the use of other words and conjunctions; and, for the sake of reference to the examples and illustrations given below, we have marked them (a), (b), (c), etc.

(a) Forms arising from the use of the conjunction **ㅈ** (*whether*), and **마오** (*to avoid*).

Various forms with these two words are derived by the use of the present, past, or future relative participles. They all give us an idea of doubt as to result. With a present participle, it generally signifies that the action expressed by the principal verb, while continuing, and at the time progressing, is progressing, in such a way, that the

desired result will not be obtained, or will be obtained to so slight an extent as to be useless.

With a past participle, it conveys the idea, that while the action is completed, the result is such, that it might equally well, have been left undone. With a future participle, it implies, not so much a doubt as to the result, as to what it will be. With **하오**, the forms will be :—

하느지 마는지.

흔지 만지.

할지 말지.

They may or may not be followed by **하오**, with no change. That which is here left to be understood is some form or part of the verb **못하오**, *to be the same*.

232.—(b.) The conjunctions **니** or **고**, used with **마오**.

Either of these conjunctions affixed to the verbal stem, of the principal verb of the sentence, and immediately followed by the verbal stem of **마오** with the same conjunction, gives the idea of *positive certainty, beyond the shadow of a doubt*, as to the carrying out of the action, or the existence of the state, expressed by the principal verb. The idea seems to be that the state or act being certain, needs no comment and is beyond question.

We have then the forms :—

하 니 마 니\* } “I will certainly do it.”  
하 고 말 고 } “Of course I will do it ;”

(There need be no question about it).

\* Note.—The conjunction **니** beginning with **ㄴ**, when affixed to the verbal stem **마오** which ends in **ㄹ**, according to the rule already given causes the **ㄹ** to be dropped, and **말니** become **마니**.

높 고 말 고 “It is undoubtedly high.”  
(There is no question about its height).

233.—(c.) The interrogative particle 가 with 마오.

The particle 가, affixed to the principal verb, and immediately followed by the same form of 마오 with 가, is largely used in soliloquies, and, as will be seen at a glance, implies indecision on the part of the speaker, as to whether the action or state of the principal verb is worth while. It is joined to the Relative Participle and with the Present and Past asserts that the action being carried on or completed is useless; with the Future that the subject of the verb is undecided as to whether to carry it out or not. It may or may not precede a form of the verb 하오. When it does not precede 하오 it is almost entirely restricted to soliloquies.

하	는	가	마	는	가
하	는	가	만	가	
하	는	가	말	가	

234.—(d.) The particle 동 used with 마오.

Various forms of the verb are derived from the use of this particle, with a present, past, or future relative participle. At times these forms are used interchangeably with those derived from the conjunction 지 (whether), given above ¶ 231. The distinction between the two is, that where 지 expresses doubt, 동 expresses an entire lack of concern or interest, in the result. It may or may not precede an accompanying verb, or a form of 하오.

When 하오 is used, some part of the verb ㄹ하오 (to be the same), is understood. With a past participle, it gives the idea of the entire failure of the object. With 하오, the forms are:—

하	는	동	마	는	동.
하	동	만	동.		
하	동	말	동.		

235.—(e.) Forms resulting from combinations of 나 with 마오.

This form with 하오 is, **하나 말나 하오**, and 나 has been regarded by some, as a separate particle or conjunction, used with the future relative participle. It implies lack of interest or relish of the subject of the principal verb, in the action. He *does a little and stops a little*. It is rather a contraction of the desiderative forms of the principal verb, and 마오, with the adverbial conjunction 다가 which it will be remembered gives the idea of interruption. The full form with 하오 then is:—

**하라 하다가 말나 하다가**, and gives the idea that, at first he did as though he intended to work, and then as though he intended not to work.

The contraction arises, first, by dropping the 하다, and **하라다가** becomes from euphony **하나**.

Note.—The ㄴ, following the ㄹ, is but the Korean methods of doubling ㄹ.

236.—(f.) The form in **고지코**.

A much used form of the verb, is derived by affixing **고지코** to the verbal stem. It gives us then the idea of something much desired or longed for, and may be translated by, “would that—,” “oh! that—.”

237.—(g.) Exclamation in 나.

An exclamation expressive of fear or danger, and calling out to the one addressed to take care, is derived from the use of the future participle with 나. It may be or may



not be followed by some such verb as, to take care. The *idea*, however, of calling upon the party addressed to be careful is always present.

As:—

너머질나, “ You will fall ! ”

The same form may be used with the verb **보오**. (*to see*) implying strong probability.

233.—(*h*). The desiderative form in **랴**, is we find often changed in the same manner as was seen above under (*e*.), and **하랴** may become **흘나**, and **하랴고** **흘나고**. Such a form as this, must then be rendered in the same way as the simple desiderative. From this form with the verb **이오** (*to be*), is derived the phrase in **나고요**, which for convenience we may then consider formed from the future participle. It may be translated, by, “ Do you think that ”—“ Do you for a moment suppose that—,” and signifies a positive negation.

239.—(*i*). The form in **너니**.

The phrase derived from the use of the future participle with this, gives the equivalent of the English potential past perfect, with a disjunctive or concessive force. It may, be translated by “ would have, but— ” “ should have, but— ” etc.

The full phrase would be.

할 일 일 너 니.

which is the future relative participle qualifying **일** (*work*), which is the subject of the irregular form of the progressive tense of the verb **이오** (*to be*), to which has been affixed the conjunction **니**.

240.—(j.) The last of these contractions of which we shall speak, are derived from the desiderative base. They are **하렴**, **하려무나**, and **하렴 다고나**. They are all used in commands where the person commanding is enraged at the neglect of a former order or well known duty. **하렴** is a contraction of the colloquial **하려** (*do you intend to*) and **무엇** (*what*), with some such phrase as “are you doing?” etc, understood. It may be translated by “Do you intend to—” “Why don’t you?” etc., **하려무나** is a less complete contraction of the same form.

**하렴 다고나** is contraction of.

**하려 무엇 한다 고나.**

or “*Do you intend to? Why what are you doing.?*”

This last is much stronger than either of the other two, and extremely colloquial. It may be rendered into English by some such phrase as “Why on earth don’t you?” “Why under the sun don’t you?” All these three phrases are expressive of irritation, annoyance, anger.

241.—The following sentences will illustrate these forms, and while the above are not by any means all that might be given, it is hoped that they are sufficient to give the student an insight into them and enable him to make further investigations for himself.

(a)

목수가 돈이 적다고 일을	The carpenter complains
하느지 마느지 하코	that the compensation is
가오.	small, and is doing his
	work so that it will be
	useless.

정신 업는 이의게 말을  
훈족 알아 듯는지 마는  
지 하옵더이다.

As he told it to a man who  
had no brains he doubts  
whether he understood.

오늘은 손님이 만히 와서  
공부를 조금 하엿시니  
훈지 만지 하오.

As we have studied so little  
to-day on account of so  
many callers, we might as  
well not have studied at  
all.

비가 적게 왔시니 운지  
만지 하오.

As so little rain came, it is  
of no account.

장수를 훈족 농수는 할지  
말지 하오.

As I have been a merchant,  
it is doubtful whether I  
can farm.

## (b)

리가 만흐면 하니 마니  
하겟소.

If there is plenty of profit,  
I will certainly do it.

열량 줄 책을 스무량을  
주엿시니 잘 못 사니  
마니.

As you have given twenty  
nyang for a ten nyang  
book, you certainly have  
not bought well.

으히가 어른의게 욱  
하엿시니 잘 못하교  
말고 말 할것 업소.

As it was a boy who insult-  
ed a man he certainly did  
wrong ; and nothing more  
need be said about it.

잊흘을 굴멋시니 먹는  
거시 도쿄 말고.

As I have been fasting for  
two days, it is certainly  
good to eat (again).

## (c)

이강은 너무 작아서  
선유를 하는가 마는가  
하오.

This river is too small we  
can have no pleasure boat-  
ing here.

그런 큰소리 가운데는 작  
은 소리는 허눈가 마는  
가하오. In the midst of such a noise  
a low voice is useless.

이러한 일은 허가  
만가하곤. Why! such work as this is  
useless.

내말은 허가 만가하곤. Why! What I said is use-  
less.

공부를 허즉 책 번역을  
허가 말가 생각 하오. As I am studying I am  
thinking whether to trans-  
late the book or not

조선에 잇스면 할 일이  
만코 미국 가면 볼일  
적은즉 갈가 말가 하오. As there is plenty of work  
in Korea, and not much  
to do in America, I do not  
know whether to go or not.

이 하인이 일은 잘 하여도  
말은 잘 아니 드룬즉  
보낼가 말가? Though this servant works  
well, as he does not at-  
tend to what is said, shall  
I discharge him or not?

(d)

을 허는 집 곳치는 일을  
허동 말동 하오. I do not care whether I  
repair the house this year  
or not.

오늘 비가 만히 온즉 김서  
방이 올동 말동 하오. As it is raining hard I  
doubt whether Mr. Kim  
will come to-day.

이번 장수에는 리 허  
푼 업시니 허동 만동  
하오. As I have not made a  
penny by this transac-  
tion, I might just as well  
not have done it.

오늘 아침은 조금 먹엇  
시니 먹은동 만동 하오. As I ate only a little this  
morning it is as though I  
had eaten nothing.

돈이 적어 장수를 크게 I do not care whether I  
 못 훈족 하는동 마는동  
 하오. engage in business or not,  
 as I have but a little  
 money and cannot do so  
 on a large scale.

어제 밤에 일이 만하 반시 As on account of the press  
 동안을 잤더니 잔동 of work I only slept for  
 만동 하오. half an hour last night, I  
 might as well not have  
 slept at all.

(e)

이사이 몸이 압하 일을 Lately on account of pain I  
 할나 말나 하오. work a little and stop a little.  
 음식이 비위에 합지 아니 As the food does not suit I  
 훈족 먹을나 말나 하오. eat without relish.

(f)

그 일을 어서 하교 지교. Would that we could do  
 that work quickly.  
 병이 급하니 의원을 급히 As the disease is pressing,  
 보교지교. would that I could see  
 the doctor soon.

(g)

일을 잘 못 할나 조심하 You will not do it well ;  
 여라. take care.  
 가시 목에 걸닐나. A bone will stick in your  
 throat ! Be careful.  
 목수가 리일은 일 할가 The carpenter will proba-  
 보오. bly work to-morrow.  
 약을 만히 먹어도 병이 Even though I have taken  
 더하니 죽을가보오. lots of medicine, as the  
 disease is worse I will  
 probably die.

## (h)

- 그 거손 잇다가 흘나고 I intended to do that later.  
 생각 하엿소.  
 이 거손 너 줄나고 사왔다. I bought this to give to you.  
 어제 아니 흘다고 하엿 When he said he would  
 시니 오늘은 흘 나고요. not do it yesterday, do you  
 think he will do it to-day.  
 물에 드리 가면 죽을나 Do you think I want to go  
 고요. into the water and drown?

## (i)

- 이 일을 잘 흘너니 돈이 I would have done this well,  
 부족하야 잘 못하엿소. but there was not enough  
 money and I could not.  
 내 죽을너니 명의를 밋나 I should have died had  
 살앗소. I not met a renowned  
 doctor who healed me.

## (j)

- 그스이 작란 만히 하엿 As you have played a good  
 시니 지금은 공부 좀 while now, do you not  
 하렴. intend to study a little?  
 서울 가겠시니 교군군을 As I am going to Seoul,  
 부르렴. why have you not called  
 coolies?  
 그러케 아니 되거든 If it will not do that way,  
 이러케 하려무나. do it this way.  
 물이 먹기 슬커든 차를 If you will not drink water,  
 먹으려무나. why do you not take tea?  
 니저브리거든 잤고 생각 If you have forgotten why  
 하려무나. on earth do you not try  
 and think of it?  
 일 하기 슬커든 가려 If you will not work why un-  
 무나. der the sun do you not go?

242.—The principal parts of some of the verbs most commonly used are given below.

	Present Indicative.	Past Verbal Part.	Future Verbal Part.	Past Rel. Part.
To sit .....	안소.....	안자.....	안게.....	안존
To put up .....	언소.....	언저.....	언게.....	언존
To be lacking ...	업소.....	업서.....	업게.....	업손
To be.....	잇소.....	잇서.....	잇게.....	잇손
To fit .....	맞소.....	마자.....	맞게.....	마존
To complete .....	못소.....	못차.....	못게.....	못춘
To forget .....	닛소.....	니저.....	닛게.....	니존
To take off.....	벗소.....	버서.....	벗게.....	버손
To wash .....	씻소.....	씻서.....	씻게.....	씻손
To be frequent ..	잣소.....	자자.....	잣게.....	자존
To be wet .....	젖소.....	저저.....	젖게.....	젖존
To follow after ..	좃소.....	좃차.....	좃게.....	좃춘
To drive.....	쫓소.....	쫓차.....	쫓게.....	쫓춘
To look for .....	찾소.....	차자.....	찾게.....	차존
To find .....				
To be disgusting.	아니쌘소	아니쌘와	아니쌘게	아니쌘온
To be beautiful ..	아름답소	아름다와	아름답게	아름다운
To itch .....	가렵소...	가려워...	가렵게..	가려운
To be light.....	가볍소...	가벼워...	가볍게...	가벼운
To be droll .....	가쇼롭소	가쇼로워	가쇼롭게	가쇼로운
To be minute.....	싸다롭소	싸다로워	싸다롭게	싸다로운
To be ticklish....	간지럽소	간지러워	간지럽게	간지러운
To be near ... ..	갓갑소...	갓가워...	갓갑게...	갓가운
To be vexaticus...	피롭소...	피로워...	피롭게...	피로운
To be heavy .....	무겁소...	무거워...	무겁게...	무거운
To be dirty .....	더럽소...	더러워...	더럽게...	더러운
To be repugnant.	증그럽소	증그러워	증그럽게	증그러운



	Present Indicative.	Past Verbal Part.	Future Verbal Part.	Past ReI. Part.
To mend .....	깁소.....	기워.....	깁게.....	기운
To lie down .....	눅소.....	누워.....	눅게.....	누운
To deplore.....	섭소.....	설워.....	섭게.....	설운
To be hot .....	더웁소...	더워.....	더웁게...	더운
To be cold .....	칩소.....	치워.....	칩게.....	치운
To know .....	아오.....	알아.....	알게.....	안
To freeze .....	어오.....	얼어.....	얼게.....	언
To open .....	여오.....	열어.....	열게.....	연
To draw .....	잇그오...	잇그러...	잇글게...	잇근
To be lonely .....	외씨오...	외씨러...	외쌀게...	외싼
To be dry .....	감으오...	감으러...	감을게...	감은
To hang .....	거오.....	거러.....	걸게.....	건
To promenade ...	건이오...	건이러...	건일게...	건인
To go afoot .....	것소.....	거러.....	것게.....	거른
To be long.....	기오.....	기러.....	길게.....	진
To raise .....	길드오...	길드러...	길들게...	길든
To avoid .....	마오.....	말아.....	말게.....	만
To make .....	몬드오...	몬드러...	몬들게...	몬든
To be far .....	머오.....	머러.....	멀게.....	먼
To stay .....	머므오...	머므러...	머들게...	머문
To suck .....	쌌오.....	빨아.....	빨게.....	썬
To pray .....	비오.....	비러.....	빌게.....	빈
To undo.....	푸오.....	푸러.....	풀게.....	푼
To load .....	싯소.....	시러.....	싯게.....	시른
To make a noise...	썩드오...	썩드러...	썩들게...	썩든
To lift.....	드오.....	드러.....	들게.....	든
To hear .....	듯소.....	드러.....	듯게.....	드른
To be round .....	둥그오...	둥그러...	둥글게...	둥근

## CHAPTER VIII.

## THE ADJECTIVE.

243.—Adjectives have been divided into two general classes, Limiting, and Qualifying. Limiting adjectives under the head of Numerals, and Pronominal Adjectives have already been treated. Qualifying adjectives then, alone remain to be considered here. As has already been said, there are very few Korean words that can be termed true adjectives. Those that exist to-day were originally nouns, and by far the greater part, have been derived from the Chinese. Such adjectives always precede the words they qualify, and of course the rule for the use of Sinico-Korean and pure Korean words holds here also. A Sinico-Korean Adjective must qualify a Sinico-Korean noun, and a pure Korean adjective its corresponding noun.

대, Great.	대풍, A great wind.
쇼, Little.	쇼인, A little man,
백, White.	백마, A white horse.
황, Yellow.	황금, Yellow Gold.
상, Low.	상놈, A low fellow.

244.—By far the greater number of so called Korean adjectives are neuter verbs, and the past, or perfect relative participle is commonly used as the adjectival form.

Used predicatively the verbal form will be employed ; used attributively the participial. These neuter verbs can be carried through the whole basal conjugation. When the participial form is used, it precedes the noun qualified ; when the verbal, the noun qualified, of course, precedes the adjective. The following list of predicative and attributive forms will illustrate this.

VERB.	ADJECTIVE.
높소..... To be high.	높흔..... High.
낮소..... To be low.	낮흔..... Low.
춥소..... To be cold	치운..... Cold.
더웁소..... To be hot.	더운..... Hot.
올소..... To be right.	올흔..... Right.
그르오..... To be wrong.	그른..... Wrong.
갓갑소..... To be near.	갓가온..... Near.
먼오..... To be far.	먼..... Far.
강호오..... To be hard.	강흔..... Hard.
유호오..... To be soft.	유흔..... Soft.
익소..... To be ripe.	익은..... Ripe.
서오..... To be unripe.	션..... Unripe.
어둡소..... To be dark.	어두온..... Dark.
밝소..... To be light.	밝은..... Light.
넓소..... To be broad.	너른..... Broad.
좁소..... To be narrow.	좁은..... Narrow.

245.—The Korean adjective being thus really a verb, admits of a great variety of forms of expression and a number of distinctions unattainable in English. A thorough knowledge of the verb and its forms with their uses will enable any one at a glance to comprehend all these.

246.—In ¶ 211 ff., on auxiliary verbs, several forms which enter into the composition of adjectives of different significations were mentioned. Among those then mentioned were:—

**스럽소** joined to nouns, and signifying, *to be worthy of, to have the nature of*.

**족하오**, *to be worthy of, to be well worth*, etc., and joined to past verbal participles by the interposition of **ㅁ**.

**만하오**. *To be able*, which joined to the future participle in **ㄴ**, of active verbs gives us the English adjectives in *able*.

**지오**, *To grow*, or **가오**, *to go*, joined to past verbal participles, gives us inceptive adjectival verbs.

사랑스럽소	To be amiable, from 사랑	Love.
원슈스롭소	To be hostile „ 원슈	An enemy.
보암족하오	To be worth seeing „ 보오	To see.
먹엄족하오	To be worth eating „ 먹소	To eat.
마르칠만하오	To be teachable „ 마르치오	To teach.
움길만하오	To be moveable „ 움기오	To move.
다스릴만하오	To be manageable „ 다스리오	To rule.
적어가오	To grow small „ 적소	To be small.
커지오	To grow large „ 크오	To be large.

247.—A certain class of adjectival verbs are formed by adding **스럽** to the verbal stem, using a connective. This is almost restricted to colors and gives the idea of *moderately*, or *somewhat*, corresponding to the English termination *ish*.

붉소	To be red	붉으스럼하오	To be reddish.
누르오	To be yellow	누르스럼하오	„ yellowish.
푸르오	To be blue	푸르스럼하오	„ blueish.
검소	To be black	검으스럼하오	„ blackish.
희오	To be white	희웁스럼하오	„ whitish.

248.—A further modification of adjectival verbs of color, is made by a repetition of the stems with **하오**, giving us then, the sense of *to be spotted with*, or to be colored in spots.

붉웃붉웃하오	To be spotted with red.		
누룻누룻하오	„	„	„ yellow.
푸룻푸룻하오	„	„	„ blue.
검웃검웃하오	„	„	„ black.

249.—As in English so also in Korean, but to a much greater extent, nouns are used as adjectives. With many of these we may suppose the insertion of the postposition **의**, but as there is no ambiguity if omitted, it is not used.

조선	사람.	A “Korea man” or a Korean.
주방	소용.	Kitchen utensils.
여름	옷.	Summer clothes.
화로	불.	Hibachi fire.
바다	물.	Sea water.

#### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

250.—With reference to Korean comparison of adjectives it may be said, that as in all other things, so also here, unless ambiguity would arise without their

use, the particles expressing comparison are omitted. In comparing two things then, the Korean as a rule would not use the comparative but the simple positive.

251.—A comparative degree may be formed by the use of the adverb **더** (*more*) preceding the adjective.

오늘 산 껌이 더 도소.      The box you bought to-day  
is better.

이 개가 더 사오납소.      This dog is more savage.

이 사람이 더 늙었소.      This man is older.

그 말이 더 잘 가오.      That horse goes better.

252.—In comparing two things, where both are mentioned **보다**, sometimes written **보덤**, signifying *than*, is affixed to the noun having the quality in the lesser degree, and the adjective is used positively. The use of **보다** together with **더** and the adjective, unless special emphasis is desired, is not common among Koreans, and should be carefully avoided by foreigners.

이 책 보다 그책이 도소.      That book is better than  
this.

화륜선 보다 화륜거가      The steam-car travels faster  
급히 가오.      than the steam-boat.

뜰 빛 보다 희빛치 밝소.      Sunlight is brighter than  
moonlight.

더운 것 보다 차운 거시      Cold is better than heat.  
도소.

253.—The postposition **에서** (*from*) may also be used for **보다** in the sense of *than*, to express a comparative degree.

Note.—The use of **보러** and **보렘** for **보다** is wrong, and should be avoided.

- 이 먹이 더 먹에서 검소. This ink is blacker than that.
- 이 물이 그 물에서 맑소. This water is clearer than that.
- 그물에서 이말이 빨리 가오. This horse travels faster than that.
- 작년에 한강댕주 에서 피서 하였지만 구미포 가 시원할걸. Last year we spent the summer at the summer house at Han Kang but Kumipo is cooler.

254.—The superlative degree is expressed by the use of **데일** (*the first*) preceding the adjective. However, as was remarked concerning the comparative, even when comparing several, the simple positive is used where the English would require a superlative. Here then we see with regard to both comparative, and superlative, that great care should be exercised by the student, if he desires to speak true Korean and not an Anglicized imitation of it, to as far as possible do away with their use and employ the simple positive.

- 이 붓시 여럿 중에 데일 도쇼. This is the best of several pens.
- 이 사람이 키 데일 크오. This man is the tallest.
- 네 시계가 데일 바로 간다. Your watch keeps the best time.
- 조희치고는 조선 거시 돛소. Korean paper is the best kind of paper.
- 나라치고는 으로서 아가 크다호오. Among the countries of the world Russia is the largest.



## CHAPTER IX.

## THE ADVERB.

255.—Korean adverbs may be classified as to their source, and as to their meaning.

Classified as to their source we have Primitive and Derived.

The Primitive Adverbs are few in number, such as :—

지금 .....	Now.	아마 .....	Perhaps.
아써 .....	A little while ago.	아조 .....	Entirely.
또... } 다시 }	Again.	더 .....	More.
미우 .....	Very.	덜 .....	Less.
오직 } 만... } 뿐... }	Only.	왜 .....	Why.
얼마 .....	How much.	아직 .....	Yet.
몇... ..	How many.	안 } 못 }	Not.

256.—Derived adverbs may be divided into two classes, those derived from verbs, and those derived from nouns or pronouns.

The adverb regularly derived from the verb, may be formed by adding 이 or 히 to the verbal stem.

In adding **이** to the stem, euphonic modifications naturally take place. Verbs in **하다** change the **하다** into **히** or sometimes into **이**. Verbs whose stems terminate in **ㄴ** add **니**. All other verbs take the form of the stem with its added or changed consonants as found in the past verbal participle, and add **이**.

높소 ..... To be lofty.	높히 ..... Loftily.
천하소 ..... To be base.	천히 ..... Basely.
귀하소 ..... To be rare.	귀히 ..... Rarely.
갓갑소 ..... To be near.	갓가이 ..... Near.
머오 ..... To be far.	멀니 ..... Far.
넓소 ..... To be wide.	넓니 ..... Widely.
빠부오 ..... To be quick.	빠비 ..... Quickly.
적소 ..... To be little.	적이 ..... Little.
밝소 ..... To be bright.	밝이 ..... Brightly.
쉽소 ..... To be easy.	쉬이 ..... Easily.
깊소 ..... To be deep.	깊히 ..... Deeply.

257.—The future verbal participle in **게** or **키** is also largely used adverbially.

다르오 ... To be different.	다르게 ..... Differently.
좋소 ..... To be good.	도케 ..... Well.
춥소 ..... To be cold.	춥게 ..... Coldly.

258.—These two classes of adverbs derived from verbs, have been claimed to be identical in signification, and interchangeable, some verbs preferring the form in **게** and some that in **이**. Such, however, is not the case, and the distinction made in the “Grammaire Coreénne” always holds. The form in **이** or **히** is in a sense passive, and indicates the manner, not in the object, but in the subject

of the verb. The form in **게** is *active*, and indicates the manner, *not in the subject but in the object*. These should in many cases be rendered more properly into English by an adjective. The following sentences will illustrate this difference.

새로한 책을 다르게 하엿소.	I have made the new book somewhat different.
일본 배 엿엇소 달니 할수 업소.	I have obtained a Japanese boat, I cannot do other- wise.
서울을 쉬이 가겟소.	I will soon go to Seoul.

259.—The Korean past verbal participle, may also at times, be rendered into English by an adverb.

내려, Downward.	너머, Too much.
올녀, Upward.	전녀, Beyond.

260.—Adverbs derived from nouns and pronouns, consist for the most part of a noun or a pronoun with one or more postpositions, used adverbially.

안으로 ..... Inside.	아침에 ... In the morning.
때에 ..... When.	후에 ..... Afterwards.
절로... } ..... Naturally.	낮제 ..... At noon.
스스로 } ..... Naturally.	전에 ..... Before.
임의로 ..... Willingly.	별로 ..... Particularly.

261.—Comparison in adverbs as with adjectives is not expressed unless the sense demands it. Ofttimes a simple adverb will be used, where we would use a comparative or a superlative. If needed the same particles will be used with the adverb as with the adjective, and in the same way.

집은 더 잘 지오.	Build the house better.
노래를 더 도케 하오.	Sing better.
내 말이 로형의 말 보다 급히 가오.	My horse goes faster than yours.
조선 보다 일본서 비가 자조 오오.	In Japan it rains more fre- quently than in Korea. .

262.—To the primitive adverbs many of the postpositions may be affixed, giving as a result a signification combining the meanings of adverb and postposition, as:—

어디 (where).	어디로 (whither).	어디서 (whence).
여기 } (here.)	여기로 } (hither).	여기서 } (hence).
이리 }	이리로 }	이리서 }

263.—To the ordinal numerals, may be affixed the postposition **은** giving us a form equivalent to the English numeral adverb.

첫째는	(As for the first) = Firstly.
둘째는	(As for the second) = Secondly.
데일은	(As for the first) = Firstly.
데이는	(As for the second) = Secondly.

264.—A long list of all the adverbs is hardly called for in grammatical notes such as these. From a study of the above rules, if they cannot be formed at will, they can be recognized at sight. Of course in their use, they always precede the word they qualify.

265.—Before we close this chapter, a word or two on Korean responsives seem in place.

네 to a superior, and 오냐 to an inferior, correspond to the English *Yes*; while 아니 올시다 and 아닐다 (*it is not*) correspond to *no*.

These words, however, are not as much used as their English equivalents and as a rule, in answering, the verb of the question is repeated, or some such phrases, as “*I don't know*,” “*I know*,” “*It is not*,” “*It is so*” etc., is used.

266.—With reference to answers to negative questions, the Korean idiom, like the Japanese, is the opposite of the English. In such questions, the English regards the facts as they are, and answers “*Yes*” or “*No*.” The Korean on the other hand regards the *statement implied in the question*, and answers accordingly. The consequence is that we get our answer the very opposite of what we would expect. For instance, in the question “*Has he not come?*” the Korean regards the statement “*He has not come*” which is implied in the question, and if he has not come, answers “*Yes*,” meaning that the statement implied in your question is correct, *he has not come*. But if he has come, he will reply “*No*,” meaning that the statement implied in your question is wrong, that he has not, *not come, but has come*. This being so directly opposite to the English idiom should be made a subject of great care, for otherwise serious blunders may be committed.

---

## CHAPTER X.

## THE CONJUNCTION.

267.—We divide Korean Conjunctions into two classes, Co-ordinate and Subordinate.

The Co-ordinate, are those which connect words or phrases that are co-ordinate.

The Subordinate, are those which connect dependent with principal clauses. *Some of the most common co-ordinate conjunctions are—*

와 or 과 .....	}	Signifying <i>and</i> .
및 .....		
고 or 하고 .....		
며 .....		
나 or 이나 .....		Signifying <i>either, or, whether</i> .
지 } 가 }	Used with verbs ... Signify <i>whether, or</i> .	
마는 .....	{ Disjunctive and signifying <i>but</i> , etc.	

268.—와, 및, 고 and 하고 are all copulatives and may generally be rendered by simple *and*, or with and are *affixed*, like all Korean conjunctions to their words or clauses. 와 affixed to a word ending in a consonant, becomes 파, and where a number of words are united is

repeated after all but the last, to which last only, will the postposition governing them all be affixed.

및 is less frequently used than any of the others, and is restricted almost entirely to books. It is generally prefixed to its word, and as a consequence we may at times find 와 and 및 used together.

고 and 며 are used to connect verbs. 고 may join itself directly to the stem, and where a series of verbs are connected, the last only will have tense root and termination: this tense root and termination then determines the time and termination of all the preceding verbs connected by 고.

며 is more largely found in books than in the spoken language, and in uniting itself to the verb, the tense root is not necessarily dropped. For illustrations of 고 and 며 with verbs see ¶ 194 and 200 of Part I.

269.—나 or (*affixed to consonants*) 이나, is equivalent to *or*, or *either* of the English. It marks alternatives, only one of which need be expressed, with the others or other understood. It may be joined to verbal tense roots with the same signification.

Joined to numerals and adverbs it signifies *about*, *in the neighborhood of*, *almost*.

지 and 가 are used only with verbs and are affixed to relative participles with the same sense. For illustrations of the use of these three conjunctions with verbs, see ¶ 189 and 197 of Part I.

270.—The most common subordinate conjunctions are—

비록, Used independently.....	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{나} \dots\dots\dots \\ \text{되 or 되} \dots\dots\dots \\ \text{거니와} \dots\dots\dots \\ \text{들 (preceded by ㄴ)} \dots\dots\dots \\ \text{도} \dots\dots\dots \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{Affixed to} \\ \text{verbs...} \end{array}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Are all concessive and} \\ \text{may be rendered into} \\ \text{English by } \textit{though}, \\ \textit{although}. \end{array} \right\}$



만일,	Used independently.....	} Are conditional and are rendered by <i>if</i> .
면	} Affixed to verbs .....	
거든		
니	.....,	<i>Whereas</i> ; both causal and concessive.
닛가	.....	} Mark the reason, and are equivalent to <i>inasmuch as, since, seeing that, etc.</i>
매	} Affixed to verbs...	
즉 (preceded by ㄴ)		

For illustrations of the use of these conjunctions and their method of uniting with verbs, see in the chapter on verbs. ¶ 181 ff.

Note.—Still further illustrations of Korean conjunctions and their rendering into English will be found in the Chapter on Conjunctions Part II.

There are also a number of phrases that may be rendered into English by conjunctions, however, from the very nature of the case, their true meaning is apparent. A few are as follows, and they can be formed at will.

그러나	} ( <i>Although that is so</i> ). Becomes	{ <i>notwithstanding,</i> <i>nevertheless.</i>
그라도		
그런고로, <i>For that reason...</i>	} Becomes <i>therefore.</i>	
그러므로, <i>Because that is so</i>		
그르면, <i>If that is so ...</i>	Becomes <i>then, therefore.</i>	

## CHAPTER XI.

## HONORIFICS.

271.—The use of special terms to inferiors and superiors, holds such an important place in Korean, that a special chapter on this subject is thought necessary. Attention has already from time to time been called to this fact, and in various places the terms used to superiors and inferiors have been marked. In the first few sections of Part II. all the sentences, (unless the sense does not allow, and restricts them to one or other class), have been given in three forms, *to inferiors*, *the polite form to equals*, and *to superiors*. Were these but the three grades with which we have to deal, the subject would be considerably simplified. But in each of these three grades, there are, what we may term sub-grades, and if we desire to be exact, we should have all the proper terminations for even these, at our finger's ends.

These sub-grades are for the most part, determined entirely by the terminations, and a careful study and practice of the lists and terminations given in the Chapter on the verb ¶ 137 ff. will accomplish this. Although the student may not desire to acquaint himself with all these forms, it is absolutely essential if he wishes to be respected by those around him, and to avoid giving

offence to his friends, that he make himself thorough master of the three forms, and their use, given in the first sections of Part II.

272.—But not only is the person spoken *to*, to be considered, but in many cases we must also consider the special rank of the person spoken *of*, or the subject of the verb. An honorific of the verb, must then be formed. This honorific is for the most part derived from the simple verb, and formed by the interposition of the particle *시*. With verbs whose stems end in vowels, simple *시* is added, but with verbs whose stems end in consonants *으* or *오* will be interposed as a connective, and *시* will then unite with the form of the stem, as found in the past verbal participle.

273.—The following list of verbs with their honorific forms, will illustrate this.

Ordinary.	Honorific.
하오.....To do .....	하십시오.
안소.....To sit .....	안지시오.
갔소.....Went .....	가셨소.
거뒀소.....Walked .....	거르셨소.
들소.....To hear .....	드르시오.
눕소.....To lie down .....	누으시오.
섰소.....Stood .....	서셨소.
쳐뒀소.....Beaten .....	쳐리셨소.
찾소.....To look for.....	차지시오.
바고오.....To exchange .....	바고시오.
벗섯소.....Took off .....	벗수셨소.
일헛소.....Lost .....	일호셨소.

274.—We find however in many cases, that there are a number of verbs that have corresponding honorific

verbs, and of course where this is the case, it may be used in the place of the honorific form of the simple verb.

The following list of the most common simple verbs, with their corresponding honorifics, should be learned.

## ORDINARY.

## HONORIFIC.

먹소.....	...To eat.....	잡수오.
자오.....	To sleep .....	잠으시오.
죽소.....	To die.....	도라가시오.
잇소.....	To be.....	계시오.
아오.....	To know .....	통촉하시오.
알소.....	To be sick .....	병환계시오.
평안하오.....	To be well.....	안녕하시오.
말하오.....	To speak .....	말씀하시오.
오오.....	To come .....	림하시오.

275.—There are also certain Korean verbs used to render respect to the person or persons acted upon, or objects of the verb. These are, most of them, honorific verbs from their very nature. For instance you *give* to an inferior, but you simply offer to a superior. A few of these are given below.

## ORDINARY.

## HONORIFIC.

주오.....	To give.....	드리오.....	To offer.
묻소.....	To ask .....	품하오.....	To request.
비오.....	To show .....	감쎄오.....	To show.
다리오.....	To take with	외시오.....	To accompany.
닐으오.....	To tell .....	엿주오.....	To inform.
도라오오...	To come back	환초하시오	To return.

276.—Thus we find that the Korean in speaking considers the rank of the person spoken of, as well as the

person spoken *to*, and at times this double variation takes place in the same verb. When such is the case we may use an honorific verb with an honorific termination. While at first sight it may seem as though this would involve complications almost unlimited, a careful study *separately*, of the special terminations and of the honorific verbs, will clear away most difficulties.

277.—The matter of honorifics, however, does not end with the verbs. It extends to the nouns and even to some postpositions, and is very apparent in the terms used to represent English pronouns. There will be two, and at times even more, sets of words, to designate the same object. The one used in speaking to or of a superior, the other, the common every day word. As has been hinted before, it will be found that Sinico-Korean is the more polite, and hence we find a large number of Sinico-Korean words, acting as the polite terms for pure Korean nouns, pronouns, etc.

278.—The following list of some of these nouns should also be learned.

아바지...	어루신네, 춘부장, 춘장, 로친, 가친 부친.	Father.
어마니...	조당, 흰당, 모친, 대부인.....	Mother.
삼촌.....	완장, 아저씨, 자근아바지 큰아비지.....	Uncle.
남편.....	가장, 입조.....	Husband.
안히.....	늬상, 안악 부인.....	Wife.
아들.....	조데, 영윤, 영남.....	Son.
딸.....	영릭, 영향.....	Daughter.
족하.....	합씨.....	Nephew.
형.....	빅씨, 중씨.....	Elder Brother.
아오.....	계씨.....	Younger Brother.
나.....	년세, 춘추.....	Age.

춧불.....	감기.....	A cold.
니.....	치아.....	Teeth.
집 .....	딕.....	House.

279.—It must not be forgotten that these honorific terms are not the same throughout the country, and terms used to inferiors in the capital, are in some provinces used to equals or even superiors. This difference, however, is not extensive and can soon be learned, but we mention it here, so that the student shall not only be prepared for some change, but when he is addressed in terms that he has been accustomed to consider degrading, he may first make inquiry as to the usage of the place before he considers himself insulted.

280.—Were it in order in Korea to always use inferior terms of one's self, and to address all others with honorifics the subject would be comparatively easy. We find, however, in Korea that it is important in addressing inferiors to speak of one's self in polite terms, and to address one's servants, children etc., in the terms for inferiors. Unless such a course is pursued one would be considered entirely ignorant of both the distinctions of the language and the rules of propriety.

---

## CHAPTER XII.

## THE STRUCTURE OF THE SENTENCE.

281.—While from time to time, in considering the different words we have attempted to show, not only their meaning, but their use and position in the sentence, a few closing words on the structure of the sentence as a whole are necessary.

In the first place, we may lay it down as a general rule, that the governing word or particle always follows that governed, under these circumstances we consider that the noun governs its adjective, although in Korean there is really no government in this matter.

Or looking at it from another standpoint, we may say, the qualifying word, always precedes the word qualified. Under these circumstances we consider that the action contained in the indefinite verb, at the end of the clause or sentence is qualified or limited by the subject and object which precedes it; that the noun is qualified or limited by the adjective or participle or other noun with postposition that precedes it; that the idea of direction, *to*, or *from* etc., contained in the postposition, which was originally a noun, is qualified or limited, by the word which precedes it.



282.—Taking either view of the matter, (the first of which is the clearer and better) we deduce the following.

*Verbs* are always preceded by their subject, object, and the adverb qualifying them, and followed by the conjunctions which connect them with other words or clauses.

The *noun* is preceded by the adjective or participle that qualifies it, and is followed by the postposition which governs, or the conjunction which joins it to another word.

The *adjective*, if in the adjectival form, precedes the noun it qualifies. If in the form of a substantive, it follows the noun with which it stands in apposition. If in the verbal form, it of course, holds the same position as a verb.

The *adverb* precedes the adjective or verb that it qualifies.

The *postposition* always follows the word whose relation it shows to another word in the sentence.

The *conjunction* (except in the case of those used independently, which might well be termed “*intensive*” and are only used in sentences where their corresponding dependent, or subordinate forms are used) always follows the word or clause that it connects with another.

283.—As a rule the subject comes first, then the object, then the verb.

In a simple sentence then, we have first, the subject, preceded by its attributes, second the indirect object preceded by its attributes, third the direct object preceded by its attributes, and finally the verb with its adverb or other attributes.

Emphasis, however, may change this, and the emphatic word will generally be found first in the sentence.

The position of the direct, and indirect object of a verb, is immaterial, either may precede the other.

By way of illustration of these rules a careful study of any of the sentences given in Part II. with regard specially to their structure is urged.

284.—When several verbs are to be connected, if they are co-ordinate, the conjunction **고** united to the stem will be used, and only the last verb inflected. If subordinate, however, the past verbal participle of the subordinate verb will be used without a conjunction. For illustrations of this see Part II, Chap. X. Sec. I. 2. (a) and (b).

285.—What has already been said upon the use of personal pronouns, and of passive constructions, leads us naturally, to notice the extreme indefiniteness as to subject, of a large number of Korean sentences. Not only will no subject be expressed, but none will even be thought of, and under such circumstances, when the context does not plainly show what the subject is, it must be rendered into English, either by an indefinite, such as *some one*, *something*, or the phrase must be changed, and a passive construction used.

Indefinite sentences of this kind may be found throughout the book in both parts, and in many cases where definiteness has been expressed by the use of personal pronouns etc., any other subject might have been used.

286.—As in English, so also in Korean, the use of two negatives gives us an affirmative, but this use of two negatives is much more common in Korean than in English.

The following will illustrate this.

미국은 업는 것 업소,

In America they have everything.

이거슨 업잔 찬소.

This is good.

그러케 아니하면 못되겟소.

I must do that.

237.—As will be seen from ¶ 230 ff. the Koreans are quite prone to use elliptical forms, and we often hear orders and commands ending in conjunctions, postpositions, etc., but in all cases, some other word is of course, left to be understood. Such phrases would not as a rule be correct in writing, and while allowable in speaking, would not be classed as elegant Korean.

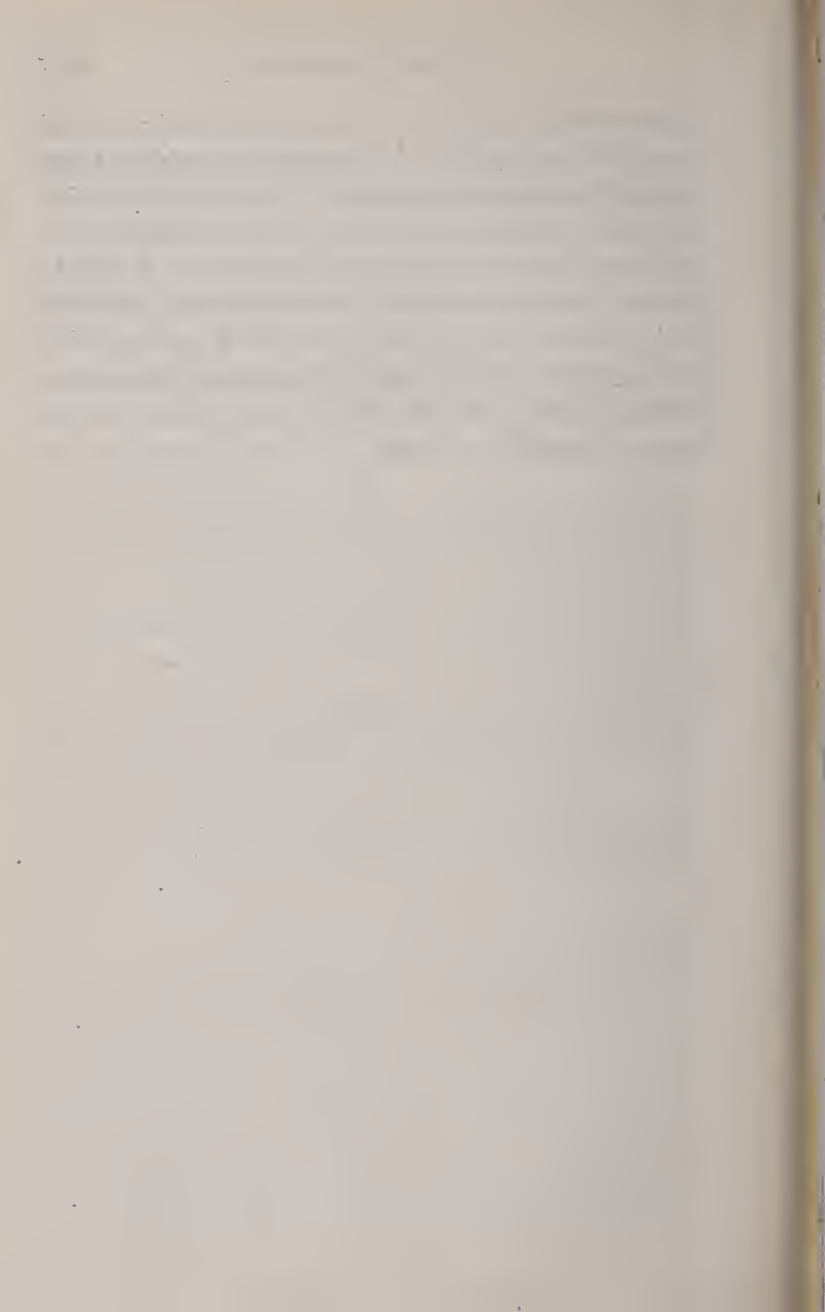
288.—In concluding this chapter on the structure of the sentence, we would again remind the student, that postpositions, conjunctions, and verbal modifications, are not to be used as in other languages.

What we understand as minute exactness of speech, is a thing not aimed at by the Korean, his desire is simply to express his idea, in as few words as possible, always remembering his surroundings and circumstances. As a consequence the same sentence taken out of its context might not only be ambiguous, but entirely meaningless, and yet, at the same time considered with its circumstances and surroundings it might be a complete sentence.

289.—In almost direct opposition to this, there seems to stand the Korean use of what we have termed conjunctions. The Koreans have no system of punctuation, and where we would use a comma, semicolon, or colon, etc., they would use a conjunction, expressing *cause*, *manner*, *means*, etc., as the case might be. Consequent upon this we find that the distinction between sentence and paragraph, does not exist in Korean, each sentence in an English paragraph becomes then, simply a dependent clause, connected by one or other of the conjunctions, and the whole paragraph but one sentence. This becomes much more apparent in the book language, and here is its main difficulty.

290.—In closing these “Grammatical Notes” we would say that we have tried but to introduce the student to the study of Korean spoken language. We would repeat that they should not be studied alone, but in connection with Part II. The accuracy of each rule given should be tested by the student, when thus tested they should be put in practice, for in order to gain any language quickly and thoroughly, practice must be combined with theory. Only by so doing can the student ever learn to use the KOREAN SPOKEN LANGUAGE.

---



PART II.

---

ENGLISH INTO KOREAN

OR THE

KOREAN SPOKEN LANGUAGE

FROM THE

ENGLISH STANDPOINT.





## PART II.

---

# ENGLISH INTO KOREAN.

---

## CHAPTER I.

---

### THE VERB.

---

In the Grammatical Notes, the attempt was made, to approach Korean from the native standpoint; to take Korean idioms, phrases and methods of speech, explain their meanings and uses, and ascertain their equivalents in English. In doing this, we have however, done but little more than half the work that is before us in the study of Korean. We have approached from but one side, and now it remains for us to approach Korean from the English standpoint; to take English phrases, words, and forms of expression, and learn their equivalents in Korean. This has been attempted in the following pages, and while the Korean equivalents, are not by any means claimed to be the only renderings, they are the common and most frequent methods of expressing the ideas they are said to represent. In doing this, we have begun with the verb, because here we find the greatest variety of changes. To a great extent what has already been said in the Gram-

matical Notes, will answer equally well here. This is very true of the verb as well as of the other parts of speech, and there remains under the verb, simply the verbs, *To be* and *To have*, Auxiliaries, The Infinitive, Passive Constructions, and Conditional Sentences. These will be taken up one by one, the rules for rendering them into Korean given, and sentences to illustrate each rule will follow.

### § I.—THE VERB “TO BE.”

1 Employed independently, expressing simple existence, *to be* is rendered by **있소**; negatively by **업소**.

2 Followed by a predicate noun or pronoun, *to be* is rendered by **이오** sometimes contracted into **요** or **오**; negatively by **아니오**.

3 Followed by a predicate adjective, the verb *to be* is united with the adjective. See Chap. VI § I.

4 When equivalent to *become*, the verb *to be*, is rendered by **되오** and negatively by **안되오**.

5 For the use of the verb *to be*, as an auxiliary See § III, Sec. 1 & 2.

#### 1.

There are some very high mountains around Seoul. \* **서울 일경 에 었던 매우 높흔 산들 잇다, —잇소,**  
*(Lit) Seoul neighborhood in certain very high mountains-is.*  
**—잇습는 이다.†**

About how many houses are there in this city? **이 성 안에 집 얼마 나 잇는냐, —잇소, —잇습는 잇가?**  
*This city within house how-many about is?*

\* It will be noticed that for the first few exercises, the sentences are all given in the three forms, for inferiors, equals and superiors, except perhaps in instances where the sentence by its very nature restricts the class to which it is addressed.

† Properly this should be written **잇소습는 이다** but pronounced *issimnida*.

Is there only one kind of  
oil in these bottles?

이 여러 병 속에 한 씨위  
*This several bottle inside one kind*  
기름 뿐 잇느냐, —잇소,  
*oil only is?*  
—잇습느냐잇가? \*

About how many soldiers  
are there in a regiment?

한 진에 군수가 얼마  
*One regiment-in soldier how many*  
나잇느냐, —잇소, —잇습  
*about is?*  
느냐잇가?

There is no telegraph office  
in Kang Wha.

강화 에 던보국 업다,  
*Kang Wha in telegraph office is not.*  
—업소, 업습느냐이다

There is no use in going  
before breakfast.

아침 먹기 전에 갈 것  
*Breakfast eating before going thing*  
업다, —업소, —업습  
*is not.*  
느냐이다.

Is there not any one who  
can go instead?

아 모 나 되신 갈 사람  
*Any one whatever instead going man*  
업느냐, —업소, —업습  
*is not?*  
느냐잇가?

Was there not any one who  
knew the way home?

집에 오는 길을 아느냐  
*House-to coming road knowing one*  
업섯느냐, —업섯소, —  
*was not?*  
업섯습느냐잇가?

## 2.

Is that smoke or is it only  
a cloud?

저 거시 연기 오 구름  
*That thing smoke is? cloud*  
뿐 이오?  
*only is?*

Is that a fox or a dog?

저 거시 여호요 개요?  
*That thing fox is, dog is?*

Is not that a dog sleeping  
on the veranda?

저 퇴 마루 에 자는 거시  
*That veranda on sleeping thing*  
개가 아니냐, —아니오,  
*dog is not?*  
아니오닛가?

\* Properly this should be 잇소습느냐잇가 but pronounced isslmlka.

Was not that an earthquake?

더 거시 디동 하는 거시,  
That thing earthquake making thing  
아니냐—아니 오—아니  
was not?  
오닛가?

## 3.

Our work is very hard.

우리 일 미우 어렵다,—  
Our work very difficult is.

The street is very muddy.

럽소.—럽습는다.  
길이 미우 질다,—지오,  
Road very muddy is.  
—지오이다.

These coolies are not lazy.

이 일꾼들이 게으르지  
The coolies lazy  
안타,—안소,—안습는다  
is not.  
이다.

The road from here to Fusan is not good.

여기서 부산으로 가는  
Here from Fusan to going  
길이 도치안타,—안소,  
road good is not.  
—안습는다.

## 4.

I do not believe it will be much of a fire.

내 생각에는 큰 화재는  
My thought in-as-for, big fire-as-for  
아니 되겠다,—되겠소,  
not will become.  
—되겠습는다.

You will never be rich if you are not more thrifty.

규모를 더 하니 부리 먼  
Economy more not employ if,  
부자가 아니 되겠다,  
rick man not will become.  
—되겠소,—되겠습는다.  
이다.

If this were only mended it would be as good as new.

이 거슬 꿰치기만 하였더  
This thing mending only made  
면 전 파 궂치 잘  
if before as equally well  
되겠다,—되겠소,—되겠  
will become.  
습는다.

## § II.—THE VERB “TO HAVE.”

## 1 Expressing possession or ownership :—

(a.) By animate beings, *to have* is rendered by the postposition 의게 with 잇소, or by 잇소 alone. Negative, by 업소.

(b.) By inanimate objects, it is rendered by the postposition 에 with 잇소.

2 Expressing acceptance. This idea does not appeal to the Korean as *accepting* and is therefore variously translated.

3 Expressing *To cause* or *To procure*—By 게호오 or by 식여 with the appropriate form of the verb.

4 Expressing necessity and followed by the infinitive ; it is rendered by the future participle of the verb with 수밋기업소.

5 For *have*, as an auxiliary see § III. Sec. 4.

## 1 (a).

Korean noblemen have a great many servants.

조선 양반의게 여러 하인이  
Korean nobleman to many servant  
잇다, — 잇소, — 잇습니  
is.  
다.

Englishmen often have light hair and blue eyes.

영국사람의게 흔히 누른  
Englishman to often yellow  
머리와 푸른 눈이 잇다,  
hair and blue eye is.  
— 잇소, — 잇습니다.

Japanese cats have no tails.

일본 고양이의게 꼬리  
Japan cat to tail  
업다, — 업소, — 업습  
is not.  
니다.

## 1 (b).

Our house has only five rooms. 우리 집에 다섯 방 만  
Our house at five room only

있다, —잇소, —잇습  
is.  
이다.

The box has no cover. 궤에 두껍 업다, —업소  
Box to lid is not.  
—업습는다.

This flower has no perfume. 이 꽃서 향내 업다, —업소  
This flower to scent is not.  
—업습는다.

## 2.

Will you have five dollars or ten? 오 환 가져가겠소  
Five dollar take will  
십 환 가져가겠소?  
ten dollar take will.

I will have a cup of tea. 차 한 그릇 먹겠다, —먹겠  
Tea one cup eat will.  
소, —먹겠습는다.

Will you have a flower? 꽃 하나 가지겠소?  
Flower one take will.

## 3.

I will have him take it away. 가져 가게 하겠다,  
Take away make will.  
—하겠소 —습는다.

I will have it done right away. 즉시 하게 하겠다, —하겠  
At once to do will make.  
소, —하겠습는다.

We will have these sent up to Seoul. 우리가 이거슬 서울노 올  
We these Seoul to  
녀 보내게 하겠다, —하  
up send will make.  
겠소, —하겠습는다.

He said he would have the boy bring them. 으히 식여 가져, 오겟다고  
Boy employed will bring  
하엿다, —하엿소, —하엿  
said.  
습는다.

## 4.

I will have to go to night.

오늘 밤에 석날 수 밖기  
*To-day night starting way outside*  
 없다, —업소, —업습  
*there is not.*  
 이다.

If you do not work you will  
 have to starve.

일하지 아니하면 굶를수  
*Work to do not do if starving way*  
 밖기 없다, 업소, 업습  
*outside there is not.*  
 이다.

I have to finish that early  
 to night.

그거슬 오늘밤, 일즉 다  
*That to-day night early all*  
 할수 밖기 없다, —업소,  
*doing way outside is not.*  
 —업습 이다.

## § III.—AUXILIARY VERBS.

## SEC. 1.—AM, IS, ARE.

## 1 Followed by the active participle :—

(a.) Expressing present continued action—either the present indicative or by the present participle with **것** followed by **잇소** or **이호** according to the rules given § I, 1 and 2 of this chapter, or the verbal participle with **이호**.

\* Negatively.—either the present indicative preceded by **아니** or by the present participle with **것** followed by **업소** or **아니호** (§ I, 1 & 2), or the verbal participial form of the negative verb with **이호**.

See also Part I. ¶ 129 ff. on tenses.

## (b) Expressing vivid future.—

As in English so in Korean there is a way of expressing vivid future by the present indicative, and either this or the future indicative may be used. Negatively—present or future indicative with **아니**.

\* For further use of the negative, see chapter on negative in Part I.



2 followed by passive participle—See passive voice.

1. (a).

A crow is building its nest  
in the garden.

화원에 가마귀 보금자리  
*Crow garden in nest*  
를 짓는다, —지오, —짓습  
*is building.*  
니다.

The rats are gnawing a hole  
somewhere in the ceiling.

쥐가 어딴던지 천장 에서  
*Rat somewhere ceiling in*  
구멍을 쉰것 잇다,  
*hole gnawing thing is.*  
—잇소, —잇습니다.

That is the baby crying.

떠거시 아기 우는 거시다,  
*That thing baby crying thing is.*  
—이오, —이옵시다.

Is not the clock striking  
now?

조명종 지금 치는 거시  
*Clock now striking thing*  
아니냐, —아니오, —아  
*is not ?*  
니오닛가?

It is not raining now.

지금은 비아니 와—요.  
*Now as for, rain not coming is.*

The carpenters are not  
working now.

목수들이 지금 일 아니하  
*Carpenters now work not making is.*  
여요.

1. (b).

I am going home next  
year.

내가 티년 에 본국 으로  
*I next year-in own country to*  
간다, —가오, —가옵  
*go.*  
니다.

The German minister to  
America, is coming back  
next month.

미국에 간 덕국 공사  
*America to gone German minister*  
티월에 도라 오겟다,  
*next month-in back will come.*  
—겟소, —겟습니다.

We are not sending a courier  
to Chemulpo to-morrow.

우리가 티일 제물포 로  
보행군 아니보낸다,  
—니오, —니옵니다.

## SEC. 2.—WAS, WERE.

## 1 Followed by the Active Participle :—

(a) Expressing continued action in the past.

The Koreans, prefer the simple past tense, but sometimes render this by the present participle with the past tense of **이오**.

See also Part I. ¶ 132 ff.

(b.) Introducing an event happening during the action—**다가** with verbal stem.

(c.) Expressing an action intended but not carried out—**랴다** or **랴더니** preceded by verbal stem.

## 2 Followed by passive participle :—

(a.) Of Intransitive verbs—The past tense of verb.

(b.) Of transitive verbs—See Passive Voice.

## 1. (a).

We were working all day      **어제 종일 일하엿다, 하  
yesterday.                              엿소, —하엿습는다.**

Were they laughing or cry-      **웃는거실너냐      우는 거  
ing?                                      실너냐?**

## 1. (b).

\* I was going to Chemulpo      **어제 제물포 가다가 청인  
yesterday, and met four-      열넷 만났다, — 낫소,  
teen Chinamen.                      —낫습는다.**

---

\* The Koreans, unless ambiguity would exist, do not use the personal pronouns. The surroundings alone generally determine the subject of the verb. These sentences are taken out of all surroundings, but the student is expected to use them and then circumstances will decide these matters.

He was eating some fish, and a bone stuck in his throat. 싱선 먹다가 목에 가서 걸녔다, — 녀소, — 녀습는다.

## 1. (c).

Mr. Pak was going to America, but his father died. 박서방이 미국 가랴다가 아바지가 죽었다, — 엇소, — 엇습는다.

We were coming to see you several times, but we were busy and could not. 여러번 보러 오랴더니 바빠 못 왔다, — 왔소, — 왔습는다.

## 2.

He was gone when I got there. 내가 거기 니를 썬에 밍서 갔다, — 갔소, — 갔습는다.

I went home after nine years, but all my friends were dead. 본국에 아홉히 만에 갔것 마는 친구들이 다 죽었다, — 엇소, — 엇습는다.

## SEC. 3.—DO, DID.

1 *Do* and *did* are expressed in Korean by the present and past of the verb.

2 *Do not* and *did not*\* used interrogatively, are expressed either by the interrogative present or past of the verb preceeded by **아니**, or by the negative base in **지** followed by interrogative present or past of **아니** **하오**.

3 *Do not*, used imperatively—by the negative base in

---

\* *Note*.—Interrogative sentences expressed negatively are regarded by Koreans from an opposite standpoint to the English. The Korean, in his answer, considers not the facts of the case, or the thing expected, but the implied statement in the question and when we would answer "Yes" answers "No" and *vice-versa*.

지 followed by the volitive mood second person of 마오, to avoid.

1.

Why do you leave the door open? 왜 문을 열어 두느냐,  
Why door open leave?  
—두오, —두옵느릿가?

They do not make it that way any more. 이삭이는 그러케 아니  
Now-a-days as for, that way not  
짓는다, —짓소, —짓습  
make.  
느이다.

Where did you put my umbrella? 내 우산 어디 노혔느냐,  
My umbrella where put.  
—하소, —하습느릿가?

2.

\* Did not the fans I sent you suit? 내가 당신씩 보낸 붓치가  
I you to (hon.) sent fan  
합의 치 아니하엿습느  
suit did not?  
릿가?

Do not the steamers sail twice a month now? 이삭이 화륜선 한달에  
Now-a-day steamer one month in  
두번 식 아니 돈느냐,  
twice each not ply?  
—돈이오, —돈이옵느  
릿가?

Why did you not give the coolie the things he came for? 왜 짐꾼에게 가질너 온  
Why carrier to, to-take came  
거슬 아니 주었느냐, —  
thing, not gave?  
엇소, —엇습느릿가?

Do you not like foreign food? 외국 음식 도화 하지  
Foreign food like to do  
아니하느냐, —하오, —  
not do?  
하옵느릿가?

\* For example the question, "Has not the teacher come yet?" expecting in English the answer "yes," will call forth from the Korean the answer "no" if the teacher has come, and "yes" if he has not yet come. See Part I ¶ 266.

## 3.

Do not put on any more coal. 석탄 더 넣치마라, —마오,  
*Coal more to put-on avoid.*  
 —마옵시오.

Do not take more than you think you will need. 당신이 쓸 료량에 더  
*You needing thought in more*  
 가져가지 마옵시오.  
*to take avoid.*

Please do not tear that newspaper. 더 신문지를 찢지 마옵  
*That newspaper to tear avoid.*  
 시오.  
 (hon.).

Do not light the lights yet. 아직 불 혀지 마라.  
*As yet light to light avoid. (inf.).*

## SEC. 4.—HAVE, HAS, HAD.

1 Have :—The auxiliary *have*, is generally expressed in Korean by the regular past tense of the verb.

## 2 Have been :—

(a.) Generally Koreans do not make the distinction between continued past action, and simple past action, but leave it to be decided from the context ; hence *have been* in English is largely expressed by the Korean simple past.

(b.) The distinction can be made by the use of the present participle with *것* and the past tense of *잇소*.

(c.) In speaking of the duration of continued action, the participial noun in *지* with the past tense of the verb expressing the extent of time is used.

3 Had :—The Koreans as a rule do not use the pluperfect tense. Such a tense can be formed, and is acknowledged as correct by many, but the great majority prefer

to transpose the sentence and use the simple past tense. See Part I on compound tenses ¶ 135.

Had, is then expressed :—

(a.) In affirmative sentences—either by a complete transposition of the sentence, or by the use of the adverb **발서** with the past tense.

(b.) In negative sentences—by either a like complete transposition, or by the use of **아직** with the past tense.

# I.

Have the coolies brought the freight? **짐 군 이 짐 가져 왔습  
더니잇가?\***

Have you heard the news? **당신이 소문 드렸소?**

Why haven't you brought your dog? **왜 개 아니 드리고 왔소?**

The post man has not brought any letters to-day. **래전부가 오늘은 아모  
편지 도 아니 가져  
왔소 읍더이다.**

## 2. (a).

Your room has not been swept and dusted yet. **당신 방을 아직 쓸고  
훑치지 아니 하였소.**

This roof has not been repaired for a couple of years. **이집 웅을 수년 이나 꾀치  
지 아니 하였소.\***

Haven't you repaired your house lately? **당신이 이사이 에 집을  
꾀치지 아니 하였소?**

Have you seen the paper? **신문지를 보았소?**

\* Note.—Hereafter the three forms referring to inferiors, equals and superiors will not be given with each sentence but only one or the other as the case may demand.

## 2. (b).

Some body has been sweep- \*이방 쓰는 이가 잊섯소.  
ing this room.

## 2. (c).

How long have you been 당신이 서울 잊신지가  
living in Sëoul? 얼마 나 되오?

The Sëoul merchants have 지 금은 서울 장수 들이  
been selling foreign goods 서양 물건 을 오래재  
for a long time now. 품오.

We have been studying 공부 훈지가 네시가  
four hours. 되었소.

The Japanese have been 일인이 철로 문드는지가  
several years building 여러 히 되었소.  
their railroads.

## 3. (a).

I went to the foreign office 내가 외아문으로 갔것  
but they had all left. 마는 말서 다 갔소.

The coolies had all finished 내가 집에 나르기 전에  
when I got home. 일꾼들이 일 다하엿소.

When you left Sëoul, had 서울 떠나기 전에 아국  
the Russian legation been 공서관 짓기를 시작  
begun? 하엿소?

I asked him to stop to dinner 저녁에 청하엿것 마는  
ner, but he had dined. 말서 먹엇소.

## 3. (b).

When I got to my hotel 주막에 니를 새에 내편지  
my letter had not come. 아직 아니 왔소.

I had not heard it when 화륜선이 떠나기, 전에  
the steamer left. 못드렸소.

\* As has been said before, while this is allowable it is not as the Korean would put it, and, unless absolutely necessary, such sentences as this should be avoided.



Had you not left Sēoul before that?      그새 전에 서울서 떠나지  
아니 하였소?

## SEC. 5.—SHALL, WILL.

## 1. Affirmative :—

(a.) Opinion ; also in seeking direction and in stating one's purpose or inquiring another's purpose from a third party :—the future of the verb in 리이다 : or, interrogatively—in 리잇가.

(b.) Simple future, *certainty*, *determination*, or enquiring another's purpose directly—future in 겐소.

## 2. Negative :—

(a.) Vividly ;—negative present.

(b.) Determination ;—negative future.

## 1. (a).

If you do not put in more salt it will spoil.      조금 더 넣치 아니 하면  
상하리이다.

Shall I send word again to Sēoul?      내가 서울 기별 또 하리  
잇가?

Shall I call a jinrikisha on my way to Tchongno?      종로에 가다가 인력거  
부르리 잇가?

I will call again in three or four days.      삼사일 간에 다시 오리  
이다.

If you need one I will lend you mine.      쓸디 잇시면 내 거슬  
빌너리이다.

Will Mr. Kim go with us?      김서방 우리와 껏치  
가리잇가?

## 1. (b).

To day it will close at six o'clock.      오늘은 여섯시에 닫겟소.

If it rains “cats and dogs” 비가 쏟아져도 가겠소.

I'll go.

Mr. Pak will go for it.

박서방이 차지리 가겠소.

About how long will you

얼마 즈음 이나 여긔 있

stay here?

겠소?

2. (a).

Buddhist priests will not kill

중은 모귀 도 아니 죽

even a mosquito.

이오.

I shall not go to-morrow.

내가 톨일 안 간다.

2. (b).

I will not give even one

내가 혼 푼 도 더 주지

cash more.

안켓소.

Not one of these will do.

이것 하나 도 못쓰겠소.

SEC. 6.—SHOULD,—WOULD.

1 In direct clauses—

(a.) Expressing *intention, determination*,—future of the verb. Negatively—future with **안** or **아니**.

(b.) Equivalent to *ought*,—see Sec. 11 of this division on Auxiliaries.

(c.) Expressing\* *determination in a past action*—the past tense of the verb ; negatively—past tense with **안** or **아니**.

2 In indirect clauses—

(a.) Expressing *opinion*—future participle with **줄** **아오**.

(b.) Expressing *determination, certainty*—form of the future or present used in indirect discourse.

---

\* Note.—In a simple sentence, the idea of determination conveyed by the English “*would*,” cannot be given in Korean except by a circumlocution, unless it is implied by the context. This idea is however in part conveyed by the use of **제가** with the past tense.

## 3 In conditional sentences—

(a.) In the conditional clause—by the form of the conditional with **면, 거든**, etc.

(b.) In the conclusion—by the future of the verb.

The past tense “*would have*,” is rendered by the future perfect.

See also § IV of this chapter, and Chap. X Sec. 8.

## 1. (a).

I would go but I have no passport.	내가 가겠것 마는 빙표 업소.
He would pay but, he has not yet received it from Mr. Yi.	갑겠것 마는 리셔방 의게서 아직 돈을 못 받았소.
I would not give you even a cash to keep you from starving.	너 굶지 안케 할, 돈은 혼푼도 안 주겠다.

## 1. (c).

In spite of all I could do, he would go to the country.	나는 암만 말넛실 지라도 제가 식골 노 갓소.
He would not listen to reason.	의리를 안 드럿소.
He would squander all his money in spite of all my efforts to stop him.	말니라고 암만 히 써도 제가 돈을 다 허비 하엿소.

## 2. (a).

I thought they would be here by this time.	이새 넘지 안코 을줄 알앗소.
Did you think it would be so dear?	그러케 비쌀 줄 알앗소?

## 2. (b).

- Mr. Yi said he would send 리서방이 훗 주일에 보내  
it next week. 마고 하엿소.
- Mrs. Kim said she would 김서방덕이 티일 밤에 다  
come with five other 른 녀편네 다스으 드리고  
women to-morrow night. 온다고 하엿소.

## 3.

- If any one should come 누가 날 보러 오거든 대궐  
enquiring for me, say I 노 갖다고 하여라.  
have gone to the palace.
- You would have time 더 일즉 내려나면 쟈가  
enough, if you would get 넉넉 하겠소.  
up earlier.
- If you had been a little more 더조심 하엿더면 이러케  
careful, this would never 안 되엿 겠소.  
have happened.
- It would not pay to sell it 오 환 안희 팔면 리 업겠소.  
for less than five dollars.
- If you had gone yesterday, 어제 갖더면 쟈 넉넉  
you would have been in 하엿겠소.  
plenty of time.

## SEC. 7.—CAN, COULD.

*Can* and *could* are commonly rendered in two ways.

## 1. Affirmatively :—

(a.) By the simple future or past.

(b.) By 수 preceded by the future relative participle,  
with the present or past of 잇소.

## 2. Negatively :—

(a.) By 못 with the future or past.

(b.) By 수 preceded by the future relative participle  
with the present or past of 업소.

## 1. (a).

If you only know how, you  
can say anything in  
Japanese.

If you open the door you  
can see.

He can only hear in one ear.  
Can your dog sit up on his  
hind legs?

Can you send any message  
you please by telegraph?

When I was a boy I could  
swim two ri.

엇더케 홀 줄 만 알면 아모  
뜻 이라도 일본 말노  
하겟소.

문 열면 보겟소.

훈 귀 로 만 들겟소.  
로형의 개가 뒤 다리로만  
안겟소?

아모 말이라도 던신 으로  
전하겟소?

내가 ㅎ히쎄에는 이리를  
헤엄 하엿소.

## 1. (b).

When can we see the Ky-  
eng Pok Kung Palace?

Can we see the inside of the  
prison if we get a  
permit?

If you go to the best shops  
you can get good silk in  
Korea too.

If I am not sick I can walk  
more then a hundred ri  
in one day.

경복궁 대궐을 언제 구경  
할수 잇겟소?

문 표지를 엇으면 옥 속을  
볼수가 잇소?

큰 전에 가면 죠션 셔도  
요흔 명쥬 살수 잇소.

병 업스면 ㅎ로 빅리 더  
겟겟소.

## 2. (a).

When the fire bell rings I  
cannot sleep.

I went everywhere but  
could not sell it.

불 낫다고 종 칠 쎄에 못  
자겟소.

수방 갔셔도 못 팔앗소.

If you have not government permission you can't sell it. 정부 허락이 없으면 못 팔겠소.

A great noise (of jabbering) arose and we could not hear. 썩드는 소리가 나서 못 알아 드렸소.

I invited both, but neither of them could come. 이 두 사람을 청하였것마는 아모도 못 왔소.

## 2. (b).

It was dark and we could not see the road. 어두어 길 볼수 업섯소.

I cannot take the accounts to night. 오늘 밤에 헐 볼수 업소.

I cannot go even though he offers me one hundred dollars. 백 환 주마고 할지라도 나는 갈수 업소.

He could not get a passport. 빙표 잇을 수 업섯소.

## SEC 8.—MAY, MIGHT.

1. Possibility equivalent to *perhaps* :—

(a.) With present or future—아마 or 혹은 with the future.

(b) With past—아마 or 혹은 with the past.

(c.) Might have—혹 or 아마 with the future past.

2. Ability.—Same as could ; or future participle with 변하였소.

3. Permission, liberty—is rendered variously according to the sentence by a transposition.

## 1. (a).

May be there are some mosquitos in the net. 모기장 안희 아마 모기가 잇겠소.

May be the steamer will be in to-morrow. 아마 티일 비 드리오겠소.

May be we had better order them from Sëoul.      아마 서울서 가져오라면  
도겠소.

You might get well if you went to Fusan.      부산 가면 아마 낫겠소.

May be he will not start for a day or two.      하루 잇흘 동안에는 아마  
아니 켜나겠소.

1. (b).

May be he has not heard yet.      혹 아직 못 드렸소.

May be he missed the steamer.      아마 화륜선을, 못 밋쳤소.

May be he has been told already.      아마 벌써 드렸소.

May be they have not begun yet.      아마 아직 시작 아니  
햏혔소.

1. (c).

If you had risen early perhaps you might have caught the steamer.      일즉 니러났더면 아마  
빅에 밋쳤겟소.

If Keuija had not lived, justice might not have been known.      기주가 나지 아니 햏혔  
더면 아마 레의가 업섯  
겟소.

If you had only called the doctor sooner, he might not have died.      의원 더 급히 부르기 만  
햏혔더면 아마 아니  
죽혔겟소.

If he had only been honest he might have been a rich man.      착햏기만 햏혔더면 아마  
부자 되혔겟소.

2.

If you had come yesterday, I might have gone to-day.      공이 어저썸 왔더면 내가  
오늘 갈번, 햏혔소.





You have eaten enough;  
now let me have a little.

당신은 넉넉히 먹었으니  
시방은 나 좀 먹게 하여  
주오.

Please don't let the boys  
come into the rooms with  
their shoes on.

학생들이 신 신고는 방  
에 못 드려 오게 하여  
주시오.

Make him wait a little.

좀 기다리게 하여라.

If those children come in,  
be sure and make them  
keep quiet.

으히 드려 오거든 부디  
중용이 잊게 하오.

Make the washerman iron  
these clothes better.

마전장이 드려 옷을 좀  
낫게 다리게 하여라.

I will have Soun Yongi  
mail your letters.

순용이 식여서 당신 편  
지를 우체국 전하게  
하겠소.

You had better have the  
carpenter make it.

목슈 식여 문틀게, 한편  
도켓소.

Where did you get this  
table made?

이 상을 어디서 식여 문  
틀렸소?

You must have your grass  
cut.

이 풀을 삭게 하여야 쓰  
겠소.

Please let the cat go out.

고양이 나가게 하여 주  
시오.

Do not let the water run  
out of the bottle so fast.

병에서 물을 이러케 급히  
쓰로지 말게 하오.

I ought to get my watch  
repaired.

누구 식여 내 시표를  
꿇칠 터히오.

## 2.

Let us go up Nam San to-  
morrow.

릭일 남산에 올라 가옵  
시다.

Let's go by way of Chong-  
nikol to-morrow.

릭일 정너골 노 가옵시다.

Let's rest and have a 쉬고 담배 먹읍시다.  
smoke.

Let's pull the cat's tail. 고양이 꼬리를 잡아 당기  
자.

### SEC. 10.—MUST.

#### 1 Expressing necessity :—

(a.) Affirmative—past verbal participle with the postposition 야 and future of 하오, or 쓰오.

Sometimes also the same effect is produced by the use of an adverb expressing necessity with the future.

(b.) Negative—the negative base in 지 with 말아야 and future of 하오, or 쓰오.

Or, by either a conditional clause, or a relative participle qualifying 것, with 못 and the future of 하오, or 쓰오.

#### 2 Expressing strong probability :—

(a.) Must—future, or future participle with 수밖  
기업소.

(b.) Must have—future perfect.

##### 1. (a).

You must be more careful. 좀 더 조심 하여야 쓰겠소.

You must make him take it  
whether he likes it or not. 도화 하던지 아니 하던지  
먹게 하여야 쓰겠소.

You must mind whatever  
your teacher says. 무엇이든 지 선생 하라는  
대로 하여야 쓰겠소.

We must leave the house at  
twelve o'clock. 집에서 열두 시에 떠나야  
쓰겠소.

I must be in Chemulpo by  
five o'clock to-morrow. 톨일 오시에 제물포 잇서  
야 쓰겠소.

I must pay a debt of one  
hundred dollars to-morrow. 백환 빚진거슬 톨일 갚하  
야 쓰겠소.

## 1. (b).

You must not put so much coal on the fire. 석한 그러케 넷치 말아야 쓰겟소.

You must not hold the baby so. 아기 그러케 안는 거시 못 쓰겟소.

You must not leave your light burning when you go out. 어디 갈 썬에 등불 혀 두고 가면 못 쓰겟소.

I told Soun Yongi, he must not even touch the flowers. 순용이 득려 화초 만지디 말아 야 쓰겟다고 하였소.

## 2. (a).

It must be so. 그러케 되겟소.

Mr. Song must have more than these. 송서방 안테 이 보다 더 되겟소.

You must be dreadfully tired. 대단이 곤할수 밋기 업소.

He must be wet through in such a rain as this. 이 비에 흠신 젖겟소.

## 2. (b).

You must have seen those books at Sēoul. 그 책들을 서울서 보았 겟소.

\* It must have been extremely difficult. 파히 어려웠겟소.

The new place must have been finished before he left Sēoul. 서울서 썬나기 전에 새 대궐 다 지었겟소.

## SEC. II.—OUGHT, SHOULD.

## 1 Obligation, Propriety.

(a.) Affirmative—future relative participle with 거시오.

(b.) Negative—future relative participle of the negative verb with **거시오**.

2 Strong probability.

(a.) Affirmative—future relative participle with **터히오**.

(b.) Negative—future relative participle of the negative verb with **터히오** (“Ought to have” takes future past participle).

3 Advice.

(a.) Asking advice,—either future in **리가**, or conditional present with **도켓소** or **올켓소** or present relative participle with **거시도켓소**.

(b.) Giving advice, — either conditional present with **도켓소** or present relative participle with **거시도켓소**.

4 Censure, Regret,—conditional past, with future past of **도소** or **도홀걸그리헛소**.

I. (a).

The people ought to obey just laws. **백성들이 도흔 법을 좇힐 거시오.**

Even an enemy should be forgiven. **원슈 라도 용서 할거시오.**

Men ought certainly to speak the truth. **사람이 맛당이 바른 말을 할거시오.**

Every man ought certainly to be vaccinated. **사람 마다 맛당이 우두를 할거시오.**

Soun Yongi should certainly be more respectful. **순용이가 맛당히 더 공순 할거시오.**

You ought to apologize to the consul. **공사께 사죄 할거시오.**

1. (b).

You ought not to sleep so late.  
그러케 늦도록 자지 아니  
할 것이요.

Mr. Pak, ought not to be out too late. 박서방이 너무 늦게 밝기  
잊지 아니 할거시오.

He ought not to ask so much.      그러케 만히 아니 달날거  
  시호.

2. (a).

He ought to be here directly. 지금 올 터히요.

It is already past twelve,  
the clock ought to have  
struck.

발서 열두 시가 지났으니  
즈명 중이 쳇실 터히오.

The dictionary ought to be good, it was written by a scholar.

Oranges ought to be very cheap now. 지금은 유자가 밋우 싸질러히오.

2. (b).

It ought not to have been very cold in Fusan. 부산서 미우 춥지 아니  
흐럿실 거시오.

They ought not to be asleep  
as early as this.

It was very carefully made,  
it ought not to be weak.

이 거슬 믿음 드려 문드  
릿시니 약하지 아니 할  
터히오.

3. (a).

Which road should I take? 어느 길노 가리릿가?

What color ought I to paint this? 무심 빛으로 그리면  
뎌겟소?

How ought I to translate this? 이거슬 엇더케 번역  
하느거시 요켓소?

I am going to Chemulpo, about how much ought I to pay the chair coolies? 내가 제물포를 갈러힌디  
교군군 얼마나 주면  
올켓소?

## 3. (b).

You ought to take an umbrella. 우산 가지고 가는거시  
요켓소.

You should go. 로형이 가면 요켓소.

You had better not build a house. 집 짓지 아니 하느거시  
요켓소.

You should consult with your father. 아버지 와 공 론하면  
요켓소.

Should you not buy a couple? 혼 두엇 사느 거시 요치  
안켓느냐?

## 4.

Then, you ought to have said so. 그런즉 그러케 말 하엿  
더면 요하켓소.

You ought to have been more careful. 더 조심 하엿 더면 요하  
켓소.

I ought not to have said a word about it. 내가 말 아니. 하엿더면  
요할걸 그리 하엿소.

I ought to have put on my mangan before. 망건 진작 섰더면 요할  
거슬 그리 하엿소.

## SEC. 12.—THINK, SUPPOSE.

1 Regard as a fact—future participle with 줄노아호,  
줄아호.

2 Regard as probable :—

(a.) Likely to happen—future relative participle  
with 듯하호 or 듯십소.



(b.) Likely to have happened—future past participle with 듯<sup>호</sup> or 듯<sup>십</sup>소.

Note.—Where we would use the verb “to think,” the Koreans, for the most part, use the verb “to know.”

“To know” with the accusative postposition, conveys to the Korean the idea of absolute knowledge, but with the postposition 로 the idea of an opinion, merely.

송서방을 아<sup>호</sup> means I know Mr. Song but 송서방으로 알<sup>호</sup>소 “I knew him (*understood*) for Mr. Song,” or “I thought it was Mr. Song.”

## 1.

I did not think you would come to-day.	오늘 공이 아니 을줄 알 <sup>호</sup> 소.
Some people think that man is crazy.	엇던 사람 생각은 그가 밋 <sup>호</sup> 칠줄 아 <sup>호</sup> .
I thought I could go in half an hour.	내 생각에는 반시면 갈 <sup>호</sup> 줄 알 <sup>호</sup> 소.
I thought Mr. Song would probably be late.	내가 송서방이 혹 늦게 을줄 알 <sup>호</sup> 소.
When I first saw you I thought you were an old friend.	로형을 처음 볼 때에 구면으로 알 <sup>호</sup> 소.

## 2. (a).

I do not think you will find any good fresh fish there.	내 생각에는 주 <sup>호</sup> 리가 더 <sup>호</sup> 기서 성 <sup>호</sup> 훈 성 <sup>호</sup> 선을 찾 <sup>호</sup> 지못 할 <sup>호</sup> 듯 <sup>호</sup> 호 <sup>호</sup> .
I do not think you will like Korean food.	공이 조선 음식을 도 <sup>호</sup> 화 할 <sup>호</sup> 가 십 <sup>호</sup> 지 안 <sup>호</sup> 소.
I suppose there are plenty of fleas in this mat.	내 생각에는 이 자리에 벼 <sup>호</sup> 룩이 만 <sup>호</sup> 홀 <sup>호</sup> 듯 호 <sup>호</sup> .

## 2. (b).

I do not think the minister has arisen yet.	공 <sup>호</sup> 수가 아직 아니 니 <sup>호</sup> 려나 섯 <sup>호</sup> 실 <sup>호</sup> 듯 십 <sup>호</sup> 소.
---	---

Do you suppose the steamer **어루신너 생각에 화륜선**  
has arrived yet? **이 드려 왓실듯 십소?**

(Addressing an old man).

I suppose the postman **나 나간 동안에 테전부가**  
passed while I was out. **지나갓실듯 십소.**

I suppose the eggs are all **알 다 씻실듯 하오.**  
gone.

### SEC. 13.—INTEND.

1 Intend is rendered by the stem of the verb with **랴하오** or **코자하오**. These two are really almost interchangeable, but the latter is a little stronger and conveys more the idea of definite purpose, although this distinction cannot always be recognized.

2 Sometimes also the same idea is expressed by the use of the future relative participle with **것**.

#### 1.

I intend to go by the nine **아홉시 화륜거에 가랴고**  
o'clock train. **하오.**

I intended to let you know, **내가 공췌 알게 하랴고**  
but I had no time. **하엿것 마는 밧바서**  
**못 하엿소.**

I had not intended to let **내가 리셔방 췌 알니랴는**  
Mr. Yi know, but he **거슨 아니엿 마는 몰너**  
heard it without my **듯고 알랴소.**  
knowledge.

I had not intended going, **내가 가랴는 거슨 아니**  
but as that person advis- **엿시나 그 사릅이 권하**  
ed it, I went. **기에 갓소.**

I intended building a house, **내가 집을 지랴 하엿시나**  
but I could not afford it. **저력을 당치 못 하엿소.**

I intended to use them, but 쓰랴다가 못 썼소.  
could not.

He intended eating it, but 먹으랴다가 못 먹었소,  
did not.

I intended to go, but some- 가랴 하엿것 마는 일 잇서  
thing came up and I 못 갔소.  
could not.

## 2.

He says he intended to go, 갈 거슬 하니 갔다고 하옵  
but did not. 덕이다.

I intended to finish the book 그 책을 어저석 못칠 거슬  
yesterday, but I was sick 병이 잇서 못 하엿소.  
and did not.

## SEC. 14.—WANT.

## 1. Followed by a noun.

(a.) Need, Require—the verb. 쓰오.

(b.) Desire to have—원하오 or by the use of a verb  
with 십소 as in number 2.

## 2. Followed by a verb.

(a.) Desire to do—십소 joined to the verb by the  
particle 고.

(b.) Wish it to be—밋소 or a circumlocution.

3. Meaning “how about,” how would it be.”—verb in  
랴, 고십소, or conditional present with 었더하오.

4. Used independently in questions signifying, *for what purpose*, etc.—a noun or pronoun to signify the thing  
purposed with the postposition 로.

## 1. (a).

Do you want this? 이것 쓰랴오?

I want a chair to go to **종로 가기에 보고 쓰겟소.**  
Chong No.

Do you not want some **적은 거슨 아니 쓰랴오?**  
small ones?

I do not think we shall need **내 생각에는 오늘 룡금**  
any crab apples to-day. **쓸디 업슬듯하오.**

## 1. (b).

Sujini wants some grapes. **슈진이가 포도를 달나고**  
**십소.**

Do you want a small **조끔한 강아지 하나 가지**  
puppy? **고 십소?**

I want a Chinese tailor. **중국 옷 장이 었고 십소.**

He said he wanted some **셔양복 좀 었고 십다고**  
foreign cloth. **하오.**

## 2. (a).

Mr. Pak wants to borrow a **박서방이 적은 칼 빌고**  
small knife. **십소.**

I wanted to see Yi Cham- **리참판을 보고 십엇시나**  
pan, but he was out. **출입 하엿습더이다.**

Although I did not want to **그 편지를 쓰고 십지 아니**  
write the letter, as he **하되 쓰라고 하기에**  
told me to, I did. **썼소.**

I have wanted to give you **발서 브터 하나 주고**  
one for some time. **십엇쇼.**

Do you not want this letter **이 편지 순용이 식여서**  
sent to the post office by **우편국에 보내고 십지**  
Soung Yongi? **아니 하오?**

## 2. (b).

I want it well made. **잘 만들 기를 밋소.**

I want it made exactly like **똑 이대로 만들니고 십소**  
this.

He wants it pressed well. **잘 눌니면 표화 하겠소.**

## 3.

Do you want to change **붓 받고 략오?**  
pens?

Do you not want to buy **넷솔 사고 십지 안소?**  
four?

Do you want to go to Nam **오늘 오후에 남산에 가면**  
San this afternoon? **엇더 하오?**

## 4.

What does he want here? **여기 무슨 일노 왔소?**

What do you want with me? **무슨 일노 나를 불넛소?**

## SEC. 15.—WISH, HOPE.

1 Desire to do—same as Sec. 14, 2. (a.) of this chapter.

2 Hope that a thing is, or will be:—

(a.) Simple desire—verbal noun in **기** with accusative postposition and **넛라오**; or conditional present with future of **표소**.

(b) Coupled with doubt, fear or regret—conditional past with **표소**.

It is also correct to use the conditional past alone as an exclamation, and this practice is much in vogue among Koreans. Sometimes also the past tense of **넛라오** is used.

## 2. (a).

I hope to-morrow will be **리일 도 날 표키를 넛라오.**  
fine too.

I hope that that boy will be a scholar too. 더 오히려 도 선비 되기를 바라오.

I hope he will soon recover. 쉬히 낫기를 바라오.

I hope it will be done by the day after tomorrow. 모레 다 되기를 바라오.

I wish you would tell him. 날너 주면 요켓소.

I wish it would not rain. 비가 아니 오면, 요켓소.

2. (b).

I wish I had a little change. 잔돈 좀 잇섯더면 요켓소.

I wish you had told me sooner. 더 일찍 알렸더면 요켓소.

I wish that dog wouldn't bark. 그 개가 아니 짖주면 요켓소.

I wish we wouldn't have any more snow. 이 후에 눈이 그만 왔시면 요켓소.

I wish I could learn Korean. 조선 말 배울 수가 잇섯더면.

I wish I were a little taller. 좀 더 컸더면.

I wish he had come yesterday. 어저석 왔더면 요켓소.

I hoped it would be pleasant to-day, but it is doubtful. 오늘이 요키를 보랏 것 마는 엇더할런지오.

I hoped he would come by that steamer, but he didn't. 더 화륜선으로 올가 보랏 더니 아니 왓소.

SEC. 16.—NEED.

1. Followed by a noun—Same as Sec. 14, 1 (a.) of this chapter *q v.*; or by the use of the past verbal participle with the postposition 야.

## 2. Followed by a Verb :—

(a.) Negative—By future relative participle with  
것업소.(b.) Affirmative—Same as *must* see Sec. 10.

## 1.

You need court robes to enter the palace.	관복 잇서야 대궐에 드려 가겟소.
You need a new hat.	공은 새갓 잇서야쓰겟소.
You need money to build a large house.	돈 잇서야 큰 집을 짓 겟소.
You need flour, sugar and eggs to make this cake.	밀 가로와 사당과 알이 잇서야 이런 사당 썩 문들겟소.

## 2. (a).

You need'nt wait any longer.	더 기다릴것 업소.
You need'nt serve tea before six.	여섯 시 전에 차 올닐것 업소.
You need'nt lock the door when you go out.	뵈기 나갈 썩 문 잠을것 업소.
Tell Mr. Kim he need'nt go to Chong Ro to-day.	김서방 드려 오늘 종로에 갈것 업다고 하소.
As we have a long time yet, we need not go fast.	아직 시가 머릿시니 급히 갈것 업소.

## SEC. 17.—SEEM, LOOK.

1 Appearance—the appropriate relative  
participle and—

{	모양이오.
	모양겟소.
	것겟소.
	가보오.
	일이오.
{	듯하오.

or appropriate tense of verb with ..... 나보오.



2 Report—the verb, followed by **그리하** or form used in indirect discourse.

## 1.

The fire seems as though **불이 스질 모양이오.**  
it will go out.

The fire seems to be going **불이 스지는 모양이오.**  
out.

The fire seems to have gone **불이 스진 모양이오.**  
out.

When the man came for **사름 신 차지러 왔실 새**  
the shoes he looked a **성 좀 낸것 꺾흐옵더**  
little angry. **이다.**

Those pictures seem to me **내 어림에는 더 그림이**  
to be hung a trifle too **조금 높게 걸닌듯하오.**  
high.

When you talk to him he **말 흘새에는 허락 하느**  
seems to assent. **모양꺾소.**

These mats seem to be **이 방석이 더러운 모양**  
dirty. **이오.**

This gun seems to be out of **이 총이 병 난것 꺾소.**  
order.

It seems wonderful that you **던보로는 수오시 동안**  
can send a telegram to **이편 미국에 기별을 보**  
America in four or five **내니 아 좀 이상한 일**  
hours; doesn't it? **이오 그러치 안소?**

This pond seems deep. **이 못시 깊흔것 꺾소**

This seems the best plan. **이거시 데일상척 일듯하오.**

Mr. Yi looks strong. **리셔방이 귀운이 미우**  
**센 모양이오.**

That man seems to be very clever. 그사람 미우 령리흔 모양이읍되다.

That child seems very tired. 그 으히가 미우 곤한 모양이오.

It seems to be a fire. 불 난것 쯏소.

He looks to me like a thief. 나 보기는 도적놈 쯏소.

The man who came here this morning did'nt look like a Japanese. 오늘 아침에 왔던 사람이 일본 사람 쯏지 아니 하옵더이다.

It looks as though it will rain to-day. 오늘 비가 올가보오.

He had intended to go to see the sights to-day, but it seems as though the rain will prevent it. 오늘 구경가랴 하엿더니 엿지면 비가 희방 짓겟 나보오.

Last night it seemed as though it would clear. 어제 저녁에는 날이 질것 쯏하옵더이다.

It does not seem as if there will be much wind. 바람이 파히 불것 쯏지 안소.

It does not look like peace. 태평할것 쯏지 안소.

It seems as if this leak is'nt going to stop. 이 시는거시 컷치지 아닐것 쯏소.

## 2.

It seems there was a fire in Chong Dong yesterday. 어제 정동 화지가 났소 그리야.

It seems there is a terrible famine in China. 지금 중국에 큰 흉년이 드릿다 하오.

There seems to be no steamer running to Chemulpo now. 시방은 제물포로 가는 화륜선이 업다 하오.

It seems you've bought a watch. 시계 샀소 그리야.

## § IV.—THE INFINITIVE.

In Korean there is no true infinitive; that which the French grammarians denominated the infinitive, is so in no sense of the word. In neuter verbs it is the low form of the indicative present, and in active verbs has little or no use except as a mere designation of the verb, much as we say “the verb to be.” There being then no true infinitive and the English infinitive having various senses, it will be rendered therefore in various ways according to circumstances.

1 When it stands as an object or subject of another verb—by the verbal noun in **기**, or the relative participle with **것**. For this infinitive with auxiliaries, see § III.

2 Signifying the *purpose*, or *object*, with verbs of motion—by the supine in **러** or **라**.

3 Signifying *with the intention of*,—the desiderative base with **교** or future participle with **나교**.\*

4 Following the means, instrument or agent—the same as the preceding (3); or, more properly, by the verbal noun in **기** with the postposition **에**. (see, Part I. 174).

5 Equivalent to the verbal noun—the verbal noun in **기** or the relative participle, with **것** or **딴** etc.

6 Equivalent to “if” and accompanied by “it will” or “it would”—the appropriate tense of the verb with **면**.

7 Following verbs of command, direction, or advice,—the imperative verb in **라고** or **라고하오** sometimes contracted into **래오**. (see Part I. ¶ 229).

8 Following verbs of promising, requesting, etc.—the form of indirect narration in **다고**.

---

\* Note—This last is but a corruption of the desiderative base see Part I. ¶ 238.

## 1.

It is wrong to waste time. 세월을 허탄이 보내는  
거시 그르호.

Are you afraid to have your teeth pulled? 니 세기클 무서워 호호?

The government does not allow foreigners to live in the interior. 정부 에서 식골에 외국  
사름 사는 거슬 허락지  
아니 호호.

I have decided not to buy a horse. 몰 아니 사기로 결단  
호엿소.

Do you want to go to America? 미국에 가고 십소?

You will hardly be able to bring this load alone. 너 혼자 이짐을 가져올  
수 업슬듯하다.

## 2.

I went to get the vase that we saw the other day, but some one had already bought it. 전에 보던 그를슬 사러  
갔더니 밭서 누가 사  
갔습더이다.

I went to find the children but they had all gone to school. 으히들 차지러 갔것마는  
밭서 다 학당으로 갔소.

I went to meet you but you didn't come. 로형을 만나러 갔것마는  
오지 아니 호엿소.

I came to pay my debts. 빚 갓호리 왔소.

## 3.

I raised my hand to strike. 쓰리라고 손을 드렸소.

Did you do it to make him angry? 그 사름 분하게 홀나고  
그러케 호엿소?

Did you say it to make a  
fool of him?

그 사람 실업는 사람을  
문들나고 그러케 하였소?

He bought some arsenic to  
kill rats, but his child ate  
it and died.

쥐를 죽이랴고 비상을  
샀더니 아기가 먹고  
죽었소.

## 4.

I want a wagon to send  
this freight to Chemulpo.

이 짐을 제물포로 보내  
랴고 수레를 얻고 십소.

You had better buy a rat  
trap to catch the rats.

쥐를 잡기에 쥐 덫을 사는  
거시 도켓쇼.

I must have some nails to  
mend the box.

케를 못치기에 못을 얻어  
야 쓰겟쇼.

He asks for some money  
to pay for his supper.

저녁 밥 값 주랴고 돈 좀  
달나오.

I should think it would  
cost fully a thousand  
dollars to build such a  
house.

내 생각에는 이런 집은  
짓기에 일천원 이나  
들겟쇼.

How long does it take to  
send a man to Chemulpo?

제물포에 전인 하기 몇  
시나 되겟쇼?

Call a plasterer to repair  
the inside of the roof.

양로 못치기에 미장이  
불너 오너라.

Who was appointed to ex-  
amine the students?

성도 상고 하기에 누구를  
제슈 하였소?

## 5.

I do not know how much  
I ought to give, to go on  
horseback.

볼 득고 가는데 얼마나  
주어야 도흔지 모르  
겟쇼.

We went down to the beach  
but the waves were too  
high to bathe.

How much ought I to  
give to have my court  
sodded?

Did you not have to pay to  
cross the river?

How many chair coolies  
shall we need to go to  
Pouk Han?

우리가 바다 ㅁ흐로 갔소  
마는 목욕 감기에 물결  
이 너무 컷소.

우리 마당 세 넓히논디  
돈 얼마나 주면 쇼겟소?

강 건너 가기에 돈 안주  
엇소?

북한 가기에 교군군 몇  
쓰겟소?

## 6.

It will be a great mistake  
to wait a month longer.

It will injure the country  
very much to pass such a  
law.

I don't believe it would pay  
to publish the "O Ryun  
Haing Sil" in foreign  
type.

It would be very incon-  
venient for me to move  
to Chemulpo.

It will not be very pleasant  
to get into debt.

Tell Sou Pongi to serve  
breakfast.

훈들을 더 기다리면 미우  
실슈가 되겟소.

만일 이런 법을 세우면  
나라에 미우 옥 되겟소.

내 생각에는 오륜형실을  
양서로 판각 하면 리가  
못 남겟소.

제물포에 이사 하면 맛당  
찬겟소.

빚을 지면 상패 찬겟소.

슈봉이 드려 아침 밥을  
가져 오라고 호호.

## 7.

Tell the servant not to  
forget about the coal.

하인 드려 석탄 일을  
니저 브리지 말나 호호.

- He told the chair coolies to go to the river in time to meet the steamer. 교군군 득려 화륜선 만날 때에 강으로 가라고 하였소.
- Tell the gate-man to go out and get a pack horse. 문 하인 득려 나가 복마 었으래라.
- Didn't the doctor advise you to go to Gensan? 의원이 공을 원산에 가라고 편치 아니 하였습니릿가?

## 8.

- He promised to give me five dollars, but he has not. 오원 주 마 고 하더 니 아니 주었소.
- He promised to meet us in Chemulpo. 제물포 에서 만나겟다고 상약 하였습디다.
- I promised to go, but I don't feel well. 내가 가 겟 다 고 상약 하였시나 편치 못하오.
- Shall I go and tell the seamstress to come to get her pay? 침모 의게 가서 공전을 차지러 오라고 닐으리 잇가?

## § V.—PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.

Koreans like most orientals do not find much use for a passive construction. As has been said in the Grammatical Notes, a passive form can be derived from all transitive verbs. In many cases, however, the use of this passive, except in certain sections of the country, is considered inelegant. When, then, the foreigner desires to render a passive construction, there are several ways open to him.

1 In some cases, the use of a passive form with certain



verbs has become so general throughout the whole country that it is not considered inelegant.

2 There are in Korean a number of intransitive verbs, or intransitive forms of expression, that may and do commonly take the place of the English passive.

3 Where neither of the above methods are admissible, the English passive must be rendered into Korean by a change of the form of the sentence. This change of form will of course vary according to the circumstances :—

- (a.) When the passive construction can be rendered by the active, with the indefinite “they” the sentence will be translated accordingly.
- (b.) When the English sentence is simply explanatory it may be rendered by the past and sometimes the present participle, generally with **것**.
- (c.) When the passive clause is the object of another verb, its verb assumes the active form, and is generally, translated by the participle with **것** or **일**.
- (d.) “To be” followed by the passive participle expressing past action still continuing, is rendered sometimes by the simple active construction, as in (a); sometimes by the participial form of the verb, with **것잇소**, (or negative, with **업소**); sometimes by the simple verbal participle with **잇소**; and sometimes when intransitive verbs are used, by the past form in **더** expressing continued action.

1.

Where were you bitten?

어디를 물니잇수옵더니  
잇가?

Soun Yongi has been stung  
in the finger by a bee.

순용이 손가락을 벌의게  
쏘이엿습더이다.

He was arrested by the  
police, on the twelfth day  
of the sixth month.

륙월 열잇흔 날에 포교  
의게 잡혔소.

One is open, the other is  
shut.

흐나흔 열니고 흐나흔  
닫혔습더이다.

At Chemulpo, Fusan and  
Gensan, trading posts  
were first opened.

제물포와 부산과 원산에  
장소 항구가 처음  
열녔소.

## 2.

Don't let yourself be cheated.

속지 마오.

Man Chini has been whip-  
ped several times, for  
doing that.

만진이가 그러케 하기에  
여러 번 막 마졌소.

This child was vaccinated  
by a Korean doctor,

조선 의원 의게서 이 인  
히가 우두를 너혔소.

A fire arose in Chong Dong,  
and about half Söoul was  
burnt.

정동서 화제가 나서  
서울이 겨워 반이나  
들습더이다.

About when will the new  
Pouk Han temple be  
finished?

북한 세 절이 언제나 다  
되겠소?

It was finished long ago.

발서 다 된지 오래오.

Not one has been ship-  
wrecked.

흐나도 파션 하지 아니  
하혔소.

Is much sugar brought to  
Korea from China every  
year?

히 마다 중국서 사탕이  
조선에 만히 나오?

- This receipt has not yet been signed. 이 령슈증이 아직 슈결  
맛지 아니하엿소.
- I thought foreigners would be expelled immediately. 외국 사를들이 곧 쫓겨  
나갈 줄 알앗소.
- Has the carpenter been paid for the bookcase? 목슈가 책장 문돈 갑술  
밧앗소?
- While I was in Sēoul, I was taught by a man from Pyeng Yang. 서울 잇술 적에 평양  
사름의게 밧앗소.

## 3. (a).

- Has this room been swept? 방 쓰렸느냐?
- Tobacco is used almost everywhere. 담비를 거위 수방에서  
쓰오.
- I understand that in certain countries the criminals are beaten to death with clubs. 내 드르니 었던 나라에  
셔는 죄인을 곤장으로  
쓰러 죽인다 하옵디  
이다.
- Diamonds have recently been found in Africa. 금 강석을 근리 아비리가  
에서 차젧소.
- At what time is the rice harvested? 어느 때에 벼를 추슈  
하오?
- Where were those oranges put? 그 유즈를 어디 두엇소?

## 3. (b).

- This (boat) ticket was bought for a friend, but he has not yet come. 이 셴표가 친구를 위하야  
산 거시엇 마는 아직  
아니 왔소.
- This certainly was written with a lead pencil. 이거시 덩녕이 연필로 쓴  
거시오.

- Was this letter brought by the Euiju courier? 이 편지가 의주 비자로 가져 온 거시오?
- Was this cut with a knife or with scissors? 이 거시 칼로 버힌 거시오 가위로 버힌 거시오?
- What is kanjang made of, and when is it used? 간장을 무엇으로 만드는 거시며 또 언제 쓰는 거시오?

## 3. (c).

- I should like to hear the komengo well played. 거문고 잘 듣는 소리를 들으면 요кет소.
- Before I went to America, I had never seen a cannon fired. 미국에 가기 전에는 대포 쏘는 걸 못 보았소.
- Did you ever see a man's head cut off? 사람의 목 버히는 거슬 한번 보았소?

## 3. (d).

- The roof of that house is tiled. 저 집 지붕을 기와로 니었소.
- It is in the drawer, wrapped up in paper, and tied with a string. 설합 속에 드렸 는뒤 조끼로 싸고 노끈 으로 잡아 밍 거시오.
- None of those shoes are well sewed. 이 신 바느질 잘 혼것 하나도 업소.
- This fish is'nt well broiled. 이 성선 잘 군것 아니요.
- It was hidden under the roots of a pine tree. 쇼나모 썰회 밋헤 곱초아 잇습더이다.
- It must certainly be hidden somewhere in the garden. 어디 던지 텡녕이 화원에 곱초인 거시오.
- Was the lamp lighted in the minister's room? 공소 방에 불을 헛더냐?

## § VI.—CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

We will but consider three classes of conditional sentences in this place.

## 1st. Simple conditional :—

These are rendered by the simple tenses, present, past, and future, with **면** in the conditional clause ; and the future, or sometimes the present, in the conclusion.

## 2nd. Supposition contrary to fact :—

This class of sentences may be rendered by the compound tenses, or the forms of the verb in **더**, with **면** in the conditional clause ; and the future perfect in the conclusion. Quite often the conclusion will take the future participle with **번하오**.

## 3rd. Improbable supposition :—

When the supposition contains the idea of doubt, “ *if* ” may be rendered by **면**, with the interposition of a particle expressing doubt or uncertainty as **혹**, or by **거든**.

Note.—As was remarked in the Grammatical Notes, this particle **거든**, has often the idea of time, and may generally be said to give the idea of condition, with the necessary notion of time. In common use to-day, however, it has nearly always, the idea of doubt.

If you let the fire out, we shall all take cold.      불 쓰지게 하면 우리들이 다 감기 들겠소.

If the steamer leaves to-morrow we can't go.      비가 턱일 석나면 우리들이 못 가겠소.

If he goes I'll go too.      그가 가면 나도 가겠소.

If he has gone we can't help it.      갔시면 우리가 할수업소.

If he has already sold the books, no matter.      책을 벌써 팔았시면 관계 찬소.

## 2.

- If he were going I would go. 그 사람을 가더면 내가 갔겠소.
- If you had loaned me fifty dollars then, I could have paid my debt, made a little money myself, and paid you back with interest, in five days. 그새 로형이 내게 은전 오십 원을 빌렸더면 전 빚을 다갏고 내가 돈 좀 먹고 닻서 만에 로형 의게 빌어 온 돈과 벌리를 다 갏하겠소.
- If you had told me she was sick, I would have gone there yesterday. 병 잇섯 다고 닻 냇 더면 어저석 내가 갈 번 갔엇소.
- If it were not raining we would all get horses and go to the So Chang Myo. 비 오지 안터면 우리들이 다 물 엇고 쇼창묘로 갔겠소.
- If I were going to do it, I would have done it already. 그 일 갔엇더면 벌써 갔엇겠소.

## 3.

- If it should not be raining at that time let's go. 그 새 비 오지 아니 하거든 가옵시다.
- If he should have gone, bring the letter back. 갔 거든 편지 도로 가져 오너라.
- If you should be going to Söoul I wish you would take a letter for me; 서울 가겟거든 내편지 하나 전하야 주면 되겟소.
- If they should be spoiled he says he will change them. 상하엿 거든 다 바꾼다고 하오.

## CHAPTER II.

## THE NOUN.

With reference to the rendering of English nouns in Korean there is little to be said here. For the most part, they are rendered by their exact equivalents in Korean, which can be found in a dictionary. In some instances, (and these from the nature of the case are not a few) where the idea is entirely new to the Korean mind, new words must be formed, either by the use of ideas known to the Korean, or by the bodily introduction of foreign words into the language. This latter course however, except where the use of Korean ideas would make the words altogether too cumbersome for use, is to be deprecated.

In not a few cases where the foreigner would use an abstract noun, the Korean would prefer to transpose the sentence and use a verb.

The heat in this room is 이 방 대단이 더웁소.  
very great.

Mr. Yi's kindness to me 리서방이 내게 대단이  
was very great. 어질게 하였소.

It is not necessary here, to give further illustrations of the noun, as these are found in all the sentences.



## CHAPTER III.

## THE ARTICLE.

There are no words in Korean that exactly express the force of the English definite article. As has been stated before, the Koreans are not, for the most part, in the habit of affixing the appropriate postposition to its noun unless it is needed to avoid ambiguity.

The addition of the postposition giving definiteness, has often the effect of the article *the*.

The indefinite article is as a rule not rendered into Korean.

The absence of the proper Korean Postposition generally gives sufficient indefiniteness without any addition. It can however at times be expressed by the use of the Korean numeral **한** (*one*) placed before the noun.

Note.—The other form of the numeral, **하나**, is placed after the noun, emphasizing the fact of there being but *one*, and can never therefore take the place of the English indefinite article.

Sometimes, this indefiniteness is expressed simply by the absence of any postposition.

The books have come.

**책 들 이 왔소.**

Books, (plur. nom.) have come.

The patient took the medicine, but he died.

병인이 약은 먹었으나 죽었소.

A boy came and brought the books.

훈 으히 와서 책을 가져왔소.

Bring me a pencil.

연필 가져 오너라.

It is a letter from my friend who lives in America.

이거시 미국 사는 내 친구가 보낸 편지요.

He is a famous gentleman among the Chinese.

그이가 청국 사림중에 유명훈 신소요.

Dealing in rice is a profitable business.

쌀 무역 하는 거시 크게 유익훈 장소요.

I heard the news from a Seoul man, when I was staying with him.

내가 그 소문을 서울 사림의게 드렸 논디 궂치 떠를 썩에 드렸소.

It is very strange how an owl can fly in the night better than in the day.

올빔이가 낮보다 밤에 잘 논는 거시 미우이상하호.

## CHAPTER IV.

### PRONOUNS.

#### § I.—PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

As has been said before, the use of the personal pronoun in Korean is very much restricted and on this account we would again urge upon the student the necessity of omitting the pronouns when speaking Korean. At times however, for emphasis, or to avoid ambiguity, and also, sometimes as a matter of politeness the pronouns or words to take their place, are used.

The regular pronouns can be found in the chapter on pronouns in Part I. Other words are often used to take their place, as *쇼인* (*little man*) and *주피* (*my body*) etc. for I; *로형이* (*elder brother*) *어루신너* (*aged father*), etc. for you.

The English possessive pronouns are formed by affixing the postposition *의* (*of*).

Note.—In many places where we would use the pronoun of the first person singular, the Korean would use the plural, and often for first person plural, they will use the plural *우리* together with the sign of the plural *들*. See Part I. ¶ 60 ff.

I brought the box, and the  
servant carried the  
bundle.

그 궤는 내가 가져 오고  
보통이는 하인이 들고  
왔소.

This is different from what  
I ordered.

내가 허라는 것과 달소.

The ladies rode in chairs,  
but we walked.

녀편네들은 교운을 툷시  
나 우리는 걸었소.

Some of us would like to  
study history.

우리 중에 소기 비호라  
논이 더러 잇소.

Everything I say seems to  
offend you.

내 말 마다 로형을 성나게  
허는 모양이오.

Did you leave the door  
open?

더 문 네가 열어 노았  
느냐?

There was a man here an  
hour or two ago enquir-  
ing for you.

훈 두어 시 전에 사름이  
여기 와서 공을 차잿소.

That fur hat of yours just  
fits you.

공의 털모자가 썩 맞소

My father died three years  
ago.

우리 아바지 삼년 전에  
도라 가셨소.

Come out to my house in  
the country, and spend a  
month.

우리 식골 집으로 와  
훈들 머므 시오.

You're a little particular.

당신이 조금 사다롭소.

He's a man of ability, but  
he lacks energy.

지조는 잇시나 브주런치는  
못 허오.

Are not these yours?

이것 공의 거시 아니오?

He offered me a hundred  
dollars but I would not  
take it.

날 드려 은전 백원 주마고  
허엿것 마는 받지 아니  
허엿소.

## SEC. 2.—COMPOUND PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

There is no one word in Korean, that gives exactly the force of the English word "*self*." It must therefore be rendered according to the shade of meaning to be expressed.

1 When it is simply emphatic—simple personal pronoun with the emphatic postposition **는**, or personal pronoun alone.

2 One's self as well as another,—personal pronoun with **도**.

3 Signifying one's self as distinguished from others—by the use of **친히**, or **자기**, or by the repetition of the pronoun.

4 Signifying alone—by **혼자**.

5 Of itself—by **절로**.

## 1.

I'll lend it, just as soon as I finish reading it myself. 나는 다 읽고 끝 빌리이다.

When I wouldn't eat it myself, do you think I'd give it to you? 나는 먹지 아니 하였는데 네게 줄 줄 아느냐?

## 2.

I tripped on that sill two or three times myself. 나도 그 문지방 에서 두서너 번 이나 너머 질번 하였소.

We ourselves couldn't sleep last night, so no wonder you couldn't when you were so near the fire. 우리도 못 잤는데 공은 불난데 그러케 갓가 오니 못 잔거시 이샹 홀것 업소.

## 3.

I'll go myself.

내가 친히 가겠소.

You ought to be able to answer that yourself.

그거슨 공이 친히 대답  
할수가 잇슬 거시오.

He said that he himself would give five thousand dollars.

제가 친히 은전 오천원  
주마고 하엿소.

I cannot clear myself before God.

저기는 저기를 상데 압회  
발명 할수 업소.

## 4.

I doubt whether you can do it by yourself.

공이 혼자 할가 시부지  
안소.

He is unable to teach so large a school by himself.

그러케 큰 학당 혼자  
마르칠수 업소?

## 5.

Do you believe the world came into existence by itself?

공의 생각에는 세계가  
절노 된듯 십소?

## § II—RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Like the Japanese, Korean is without relative pronouns, and the relative clause is rendered by the use of the relative participle, which comes before what in English is the antecedent clause, and acts as an adjective governing it. For instance, the Koreans do not say "The man who came yesterday" but, "The yesterday came man," 어제온사람. It may be well to add that the tense of the relative participle will of cause follow the tense of the relative clause.

When the antecedent is "it" or "that," either expressed or implied, it is rendered by 것, or of a person by 이.

- Who was that you bowed to just now?      지금 인스 하던 이가 누구요?
- Who was that who bowed to you just now?      공석 인스 하던이가 누구요?
- He is a fellow that used to be a servant of ours.      전에 우리에게 하인 으로 잇던 놈이요.
- What is it that crow has in its mouth?      더 가마귀 입에 문 거시 무엇이시오?
- Let us see what you have in your hand.      손에 잇는 것 좀 보옵시다.
- What the rats don't carry off, the ants eat.      쥐가 아니 무리간 거슬 개아미가 먹소.
- Have you done what I told you?      내가 닐은 것 하엿느냐?
- What was the name of the king who used to kill flies when he was a boy?      어렸실 쎄에 파리 죽이던 님금의 일홈이 무엇이시오?
- The horse I gave so much for, is not worth his feed.      그러케 돈 만히 주고 산 물이 저 먹논 죽 갑 도 못 하소.
- Did they take the carpenter who fell off the roof, and sprained his arm to the hospital?      집웅서 락상 하야 팔 부러진 목슈를 병원 으로 드려 갔소?
- Who was that woman you met a little while ago with a baby on her back?      아싸 맛나던 으히 업은 계집이 누구요?
- In which drawer do you keep your lead pencils?      연필 든 설합이 어느 거시오?



- Is'nt this the book in which you put the letter? 편지 둔 책은 이거시 아니오?
- Where does the clay of which they make these bricks, come from? 이 벽돌 만드는 흙이 어디서 오오?
- I can't find the paper in which these books were wrapped. 이 책 싸던 조희를 차질 수가 업소.
- Where is the book that you were going to give me? 나를 주랴고 하던 책이 어디 잇습나니잇가?

### § III.—INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

The English interrogatives are translated by their equivalents in Korean, which may be found in Part I. 66 ff.

For convenience and study, however, we will give a few sentences below arranged in the following order.

1. Who, is rendered by **누** or **누구**, **누**, with the appropriate postpositions.

“Whose” used as a substantive is rendered by **누것**, **누히**.

Sometimes also *who* may be rendered by the circumlocution, **어누사람** (*what man?*).

2. Which :—

(a.) Used substantively,—**어누것**, or **엇던것**.

(b.) Used adjectively,—**어누** or **엇던**.

3. What :—\*

---

\* Note.—In many places where we would use “*what*” the Koreans employ some other word. The Koreans would not say “What does Mr. Yi think” but “how does Mr. Yi think.” They would not say “At what time” but “At which hour,” etc. In many places also where we would use *what* substantively, the Korean uses it adjectively and vice-versa.

(a.) Used substantively, —무엇, 무슨것.

(b.) Used adjectively, —무슨.

4. What kind of, what sort of, —엇던.

Who invented the tele- 누가 댐신을 발명 하였  
graph? 소?

Of whom have you learned 이 새 서지 뉘게 배웠소?  
hitherto?

With whom are you liv- 누구 하고 못치 잇소?  
ing?

Whose shoes are those? 더 신 뉘 히냐?

Whose are those apples? 더 룡금 뉘 거시오?

2 (a).

Which do you like best? 엇던 거슬 그중 묘화 하  
오?

Which of these two books 이 두 책중에 어느 거시  
was printed last? 그중 나중에 박혔소?

Which shall I do first? 엇던 일을 내가 먼저 하  
리잇가?

2 (b).

Which road shall I take? 어느 길노 가리잇가?

Which carpenter shall I 어느 목수를 부르리잇가?  
call?

In which room did you put 새 병풍 엇던 방에 두었  
the new screen? 느냐?

3 (a), (b); and 4.

What are you doing? 무엇 하느냐?

What have you come for? 무엇노 왔느냐?

- What is that?                      덕거시   무어시오?
- What is a "pogyo"?              보교가   무어시오?
- What is Mr. Song's opinion?      송서방   생각은   엇덧소?
- What does Mr. Yi think of it?   리서방이   엇더케   녀시오?
- Please explain to me what is the meaning of this word?      이 말 뜻시   무어신지   좀   ㅁ르쳐   주시오?
- What flowers do you intend to plant in your garden?      엇던   화초를   공의   화원에   심으랴오?
- By what road did you come?      어느   길노   왔소?
- In what neighbourhood does Mr. Kim live?      감서방이   어느   동네   사오?
- At what time does the boat start?      어느   때에   화륜선   떠나오?
- What is the reason?              무슨   사들   이오?
- What is that man's name?      그   사름이   성명이   무어   시오?
- What is the name of this fish?      이   성선   일홈이   무어시오?
- What is the name of the place where they get that coal?      그   석탄   나눈   터   디명이   무어시오?
- What do they call the river this side of Mapo?      마포   이편작   강   일홈이   무어시라고   호호?
- In what box did you put it?      그거술   어느   궤에   너헛소?

## CHAPTER V.

---

### PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

---

Adjectives have been divided into two classes, qualifying, and limiting, the latter have again been divided into articles, pronominal adjectives, and numerals. The few words necessary on articles have already been given, numerals and qualifying adjectives have in part been treated in Part I., and a few additional hints will be given later. There remain therefore for our consideration in this place, pronominal adjectives, or adjectives that are sometimes used to take the place of nouns. Among these are—

All	Either	Neither	Such.
Any	Few	One	Same.
Both	Many	Several	That.
Each	Much	Some	This etc.

In the following selection of these words it will be noticed that some not commonly called pronominal adjectives are given. This is because at times they do act as such and take the place of nouns.

#### [SEC. 1.—THIS, THAT, SUCH.

##### 1 This:—

(a.) Used substantively—이것.

(b.) Used adjectively—이.

## 2 That :—

(a.) Used substantively—그것, 그것.

(b.) Used adjectively—그, 더.

## 3 Such :—

(a.) “Like this”—이런.

(b.) “Like that”— $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{그런.} \\ \text{더런.} \end{array} \right.$ 

더, 더것, 더런, etc. are used of things near or in sight.

그, 그것, 그런, etc. are used of things more or less remote or out of sight.

Followed by an adjective, and in certain other places where the adverbial form appeals to the Korean, as more proper than the adjective form, the adverbial forms of 이런, 그런, 더런 are used.

“Such” used substantively, will be rendered by the adjective form with 것, where it refers to a thing, and with 이 or 사람 when referring to a person.

Note—The remarks made about the use of the plural ending, 들 in the chapter on nouns in Part I. 46 ff. apply equally here, and to all pronouns. Unless then ambiguity would exist without this postposition, we will be safe in omitting it, and in translating “these,” “those,” etc., as though they were “this,” “that.” In fact it may be said, that not only are we safe in omitting them, but that we would not be speaking true Korean in using them. In the use of the adjectival forms, we would remind the student that in Korean, there is no agreement either in case or number between the adjective, and its noun. It will also be noticed, that in some places where we would use “this” with a noun, the Koreans would use a noun in which “this” is implied.

## 1. (a).

Is this a mosquito bite, or a flea bite? 이거시 모기가 문디요  
벼룩이 문디요?

This is neither colloquial nor book language. 이거시 언수도 아니요  
문수도 아니요.

This is neither cast iron nor brass. 이거시 무쇠도 아니오  
쥬석도 아니오.

Have you any silk exactly like this? 공석 이것과 똑 똑한  
명쥬가 잇소?

These are much better than yours. 이것들이 로형의 것 보다  
믹우 낫소.

Do your trees yield as much fruit as these? 로형의 파목들이 이것과  
좃치 만히 여오?

## 1. (b).

I have not even yet finished this book. 이 책 아직도 다 못  
보았소.

I want something to put this water in. 이 물 담을 그릇 하나  
차지오.

This house is too large for you. 이 집이 공의게 너무  
크오.

This is the best day we have had in a long while. 오래 간 만에 오늘 날이  
데일 도소.

This year we have had a bad rice harvest. 올 히는 화곡 추슈 잘못  
되엿소.

In these days Koreans are beginning to regard all the world as brothers. 이수이는 죠션 사름이  
온 세 상을 형 데로  
넉이는 거슬 시작하오.

These apples are all bad. 이 룡금 다 썩엿소.

## 2. (a).

What's that (*not seen*)? 그 거시 무어시오?

You wont need as much as that. 그 처럼 만히 쓸디 업겟소.

That is just right. 그거시 똑 알맞소.

Put these in the box and 이거슨 궤 속에 너코

those in the drawer.

더 거슨 설 합 속에  
너히라.

What machine is that?

더 거시 무슴 기계오?

2. (b).

Have you read that book?

그 책 읽어 보았소?

You had better not eat too  
many of those cakes.

그 파주는 너무 만히 먹지  
마는 거시 도캣소.

I have never met either of  
those two men.

그 사름은 둘 다 맛난  
새가 업소.

Do you know how long  
that rope is?

더 줄이 얼마나 긴길  
아시오?

That dog ought to be killed.

더 개 죽일 거시오.

Isn't that box nailed up  
yet?

더 궤는 아직 못 박지  
아니 하였소?

That I don't understand  
(*the rest I do*).

그 거슨 나는 몰나.

That horse is lame.

그 말이 전다.

That boy is the laziest  
fellow I ever set eyes  
on.

그 으히 내 눈으로 본  
놈 중에 제일 게어른  
놈이오.

3. (a).

How much sugar does it  
take to make such cakes  
as these?

이런 파주 몬들 기에  
사랑이 얼마나 드오?

I use such a pen (as this)  
occasionally.

잇다금 이런 부슬 쓰오.

Flowers like these don't  
grow in Japan.

그런 화초 일본에 업소.



Such fine weather as this is common in Korea. 이렇게 요쁜 일기 조선서 흔하오.

## 3 (b).

How did you make such a mistake? 엇더케 하기에 그런 실수를 하였소?

Nobody but a fool would say such a thing. 바삭이 외에는 그런 말하는 사람이 업소.

Why do you always make such a disagreeable face when you are told to do any thing? 왜 언제던지 무슴 일을 하라 하면 그런 슬중을 내느냐?

At such a time one doesn't know what is best to do. 그런 때는 엇더케 하여야 효홀지 모르겠소.

Such talk as that, does more harm than good. 그런 말은 도로혀 리 보다 해가 만소.

Why do old Japanese ships have such high sterns? 일본 네전 배는 왜 고물이 그리 높소?

## SEC. 2.—EITHER, NEITHER, BOTH.

There is no one word in Korean exactly equivalent to any one of these terms and they can only be rendered by the use of several words. Where it is *either* or *neither* of two, if this idea is to be expressed, 들중예, (*among two*) with or without one of the demonstrative pronouns 이, 그, or 덕, must be used in addition to the word used to render *either* or *neither*, as the case may be. Where it is of several, 중예 with one or other of the demonstrative pronouns is necessary. For example the Korean would not say, "Will either of these do?" but "Of these two, will one do?" "For the rendering then of "either" "neither" and "both" we obtain the following rules.

1. Either :—

(a.) Signifying, one ;—둘중에 하나, or 둘중에 with 것 preceded by the relative participle with or without 하나.

(b.) “One or the other,” or “both ;—둘중에 with 아모나 of persons, and with 아모것 of things, or 아모 with the name of the things repeated.

2. Neither, or Either, with the negative :—The same as No. 1, ‘a. and b. with the negative, or 아모도 with negative may be used.

Note.—Where it is of *several*, of course, 둘 will not be used.

3. Both :—둘다, 랑인 or 랑, with the noun or its equivalent repeated.

1. (a).

Is either of these pencils yours? 이 붓 하나흔 로형의 거시오?

Will either of these suit you? 이 중에 뭐음 맞는것 하나 잇소?

Is either of those men-of-war an iron-clad? 그 병선 둘중에 하나흔 철갑선 이호니잇가?

Did either of your sons come here yesterday? 로형 아들 둘중에 어저석 하나 여기 왔습니잇가?

1. (b).

Either of those will do, hand me one please. 그 둘중에 아모 거시나 쓰겟시니 하나 날 주호.

Either of those sticks would be strong enough. 그 두 막닥이 중에 아모 거시나 넉넉이 든든호.

Either way will do.

아모리케나 쓰겟소.

You will find that character  
in either dictionary.

그 글자 두 자던 중에  
아모 자던에서나 찾  
겟소.

## 2.

Neither of those pens is  
good for anything.

이 두 붓중에 하나도 쓸  
것 업소.

I think neither of those  
houses belongs to Mr.  
Kim now.

그 두 집 중에 지금은  
아모 거시나 김서방의  
것 아닌 줄 아오.

I hope neither of you is  
wounded.

당신 두분 중에 아모도  
닷치지 안키를 바라오.

Does'nt either of these colors  
suit you?

이 두 빛중에 뭐음 맞는  
것 업소?

You must not touch either  
of these books.

이 두 책 아모 거시나  
문지지 말아야 쓰겟소.

You cannot trust either of  
them.

그 두 사람 중에 아모도  
믿을수 업소.

This character is not in  
either of the dictionaries.

이 두 자던 중에 이 글자  
잇는 자던 업소.

Did not either of your friends  
come?

로형의 친구 둘 중에  
아모도 아니 왔습  
나니잇가?

## 3.

Both of my flower pots fell  
off the shelf and were  
broken.

내 꽃 분이 둘 다 탁자  
에서 누려져서 부서  
졌소.

Please lend me both, for a  
few moments.

둘 다 잠간 빌녀 주시오.

You must certainly do both. 둘 다 불가불 하여야  
 하겠소.

These ornaments (*for the person*) are both beautiful. 이 노리개 들 다 훌륭  
하오.

My parents both died while I was a child. 부모 양친이 나 어렸실 적에 도라가셨소.

Bring both the hammer and  
the screw driver.

Have you looked in both pockets?      두 주머니에 다 차자 보았소?

These chair coolies are both drunk. 이 교군군이 둘 다 취하였소.

SEC. 3.—EACH.

1. Signifying every one individually “each” may be rendered by **마다** or **각**.

2. Signifying a piece—**식** or **항나식**.

마다 and 식 follow the noun while 각 precedes it.

Note.—Frequently Koreans use “*each*” twice and sometimes oftener, in the same sentence, where we would use it but once. For example where we would say, “I will take three of each sort,” the Korean would be very apt to say, “Of each sort, I will take three each.” We would note also, that the distinction made above cannot be rigidly adhered to; and as in English “*each*” and “*every*” are at times interchangeable, so *하나씩*, and *마다*, may at times be used, the one for the other.

3. Each other:—서로.

1.

Each student lives by him self.

성도마다 각각 거처  
함오.

- Each soldier had on a different uniform. 병되 마다 다른 군복을 닙엇소.
- Each man does as he likes. 각 사람 제 맘 대로 하오.
- Each came up in turn and received his share. 각 사람이 차례로 와서 제 몫을 받았소.
- Each horse has its own groom. 각 말이 제 마부 잇소.
- Each child recited in turn. 각 으히 차례로 외웠소.

## 2.

- Give one to each child. 으히들 하나씩 주오.
- Put a spoonful of tea in each of these cups. 이 차중에 차 혼 슈가락 식 너히라.
- Put a stamp on each of these letters, and mail them. 이 편지에 인지 하나씩 붓치고 우태국에 두 어라.
- I'll take three of each sort. 각 식으로 셋식 가지겟소.
- These lamps have two chimneys each. 이런 등에는 류리 둘식 잇소.
- Give each man three of each kind. 각 사람의게 각식으로 셋식 주어라.
- You must put three hinges on each door. 각 문에 경첩 셋식 두 어야 쓰겟소.

## 3.

- Those two men hate each other like cats and dogs. 그 두 사람 서로 뽀뽀 하기를 고양이와 개 못치훈다.

Men should help each other    사람은 제 힘 대로 서로  
all they can.                    도와 줄거시오.

Those two men love each    그 두 사람 형제 못치  
other like brothers.        서로 사랑하오.

SEC. 4.—SOME.

As was remarked in Part. I. 66 ff the Korean interrogatives serve equally as well for indefinite pronouns, and hence we get the following rules for rendering “*some*.”

1 Somebody—누가, 누구.

2 Something—무엇.

3 Some one of a particular group :—

Here the “*some*” is omitted, and “*one*” only is translated by 하나.

4 When it represents indefinite designation and is equivalent to “*a certain* :”—엇던.

5 Signifying a part or portion—도 or 드리. “*Some... some*” becomes 도...도 or 드리...드리.

6 Signifying an indefinite quantity :—

(a.) Used as a substantive—it can only be rendered by some such word as 좀 or 드리는.

(b.) Used as an adjective—it is not rendered.

7 “*Some more*”;—

(a.) In addition—더.

(b.) Left—엇히 아직도.

1.

Somebody is knocking at    누가 문을 두드리오  
the door.

I am positive somebody    텅녕 누가 말하거술 아오.  
has told it.

Somebody must go to Sëoul  
to-day to get that money.

그 돈 차지러 누가 서울노  
오늘 가야 쓰겟소.

Somebody came to see you  
this afternoon, but refused  
to leave his card.

오늘 오후에 누가 로형  
보러 왔것 마는 명첩  
두기를 슬히여 하엿소.

## 2.

You had better plant some-  
thing here.

여기 무엇 심으면 도켓소.

Something fell down and  
woke me up at about four  
this morning.

오늘 아침 네시 즈음  
무어시 쉰러져서 나를  
깨웠소.

Have you not put something  
heavy in this drawer?

무거운것 무엇 이 설합  
속에 아니 너헛느냐?

Have you not dropped some-  
thing?

무엇 싸지지 아니 하엿소?

## 3.

Can you spare me some one  
of these?

이 중에 하나 날 줄수  
잇소?

Will not some one of the  
coolies from this neigh-  
borhood do?

이 동네 잇는 모군 중에  
하나 못 쓰겟습느냐  
잇가?

## 4.

Some scholar has written a  
history in about fifty  
volumes.

엿던 문장이 오십 권이나  
되는 수괴를 지엿소.

Some general with but two  
or three hundred soldiers  
defeated the Chinese army  
last year.

엿던 대장이 상년에 이삼  
백명 군수만 거느리고  
청국 군수를 이기엿소.



## 5.

- Some tables have three legs. 세 다리 상도 잇소.
- Some people sympathize with England, and some with Russia. 영국 편 드는 사람도 잇고 아라사 편 드는 사람도 잇소.
- Some said "go," and some said "don't go." 가라는 사람도 잇고 가지 말라는 사람도 잇섯소.
- Some among those soldiers were cavalry. 그 병덕 중에 기병이 더러 잇섯소.
- Some of the English kings were wise men. 영국 임금 중에 더러는 명철훈 이가 잇섯소.
- Most blind men are ignorant, but some are celebrated scholars. 눈 먼 사람이 거위 다 무식한것마는 그중에 유명훈 문장도 잇소.
- Some of the most celebrated men have been blind. 데일 유명훈 사람 중에 흑 쇼경도 잇섯소.
- Make some white and some black. 더러는 희게하고 더러는 검게 하여라.
- Some of them are better than others. 그중에 나흔 것도 잇소.
- I keep some of my letters, but most of them I burn up. 내 편지 중에 더러는 잘 두나 거위 다 툇우오.
- Song Yongi put some in the bookcase and the rest are still in the box. 더러는 순용이가 책장 속에 너코 놓아지는 궤 속에 그져 잇소.
- I gave Mr. Song some, ate, some myself, and put the rest in the drawer. 더러는 송셔방 주고 더러는 내가 먹고 놓아지는 설합에 너헛소.

## 6. (a).

Sprinkle some there.

더기 좀 뿌리오.

Some probably dropped out  
on your way home.

집에 가는 길에 좀 빠졌실  
듯하오.

Take some, to try, and see  
how you like it.

더리는 시험으로 가져  
가서 도화 흘넌지  
보아라.

## 6. (b).

I want to embroider some  
silk.

명주에 슈를 노크 십소.

Tell the cook to make some  
Chinese tea.

숙슈 드려 중원 차를  
문들나고 하오.

I wish I had planted some  
monthly roses in this  
garden.

이 화원에 월계 심엇 더면  
도켓소.

## 7. (a).

Tell Sujini I must have  
some more nails.

슈진이 드려 못시 더  
잇서야 쓰겟다고 하오.

Tell the servant to put some  
more coal on.

하인 드려 석탄 더  
너라고 닐으오.

Please give Mr. Pak some  
more paper.

박서방 의게 조히 더  
주시오.

## 7. (b).

There are some more in the  
right hand drawer.

올흔 편 설합에 아직도  
잇소.

Did you say there was some  
more flour in the house?

집에 밀 가로 잇히 잇다  
고 하엿습누니잇가?

## SEC. 5.—ANY.

## 1. Persons :—

- (a.) Somebody—누가, 누구 or the relative clause with  
이. Negatively—the same with the negative.

(b.) Anybody whatever, no matter who.—아모나, 누구던지. Negatively—아무도, 누구던지 with the negative or the relative clause in 이 with **하나다 업소.**

## 2. Things :—

(a.) Something—무엇 or 무슴 with a noun, or the relative participle with 것. Negatively—the same with the negative.

(b.) Anything whatever, no matter what—아모 거시나, 아모거시라도, 무어시던지, or 무슴 followed by 던지. Negatively—by the same with the negative, except that 아모거시나 becomes 아모 것도. This same negative form is very emphatically rendered by the use of the relative participle with **것하나다 업소.**

## 3. One or more, any at all :—

(a.) In affirmative sentences—not rendered.

(b.) In negative sentences, signifying none at all—**조품도** or **하나다** with the negative.

## 4. Any more :—

(a.) In affirmative sentences—엇히 or 더.

(b.) In negative sentences **더** with the negative.

### 1. (a).

Is there anybody in the 방에 누가 잇소?  
room?

Did anyone ever attempt 전에 누가 시험하엿소?  
it before?

Did not anyone say any- 누가 아모 말도 아니  
thing to you about it? 하옵더니잇가?

If anybody should call, say 누가 와서 찾거든 못  
I can't see them. 본다고 하여라.

Cannot anyone translate this? 이거슬 번역 할이 업소?

## 1. (b).

Please call anyone of the soldiers.	병터 하나 불너주오 누구 던지. or 병터 하나 누구던지 불너 주오. or 아모 병터나 불너 주오.
That's a thing that any boy ought to know.	그 거슬 아모 으히나 알거시오
Anybody who knows Ōn-mun can read that.	누구던지 언문 아는 사 름은 그거슬 능히 읽 으오.
Is'nt there any one who can go?	아모도 갈 사름 업습나 잇가?
There is'nt anybody who lives without sin.	죄 아니 범하코 사는 이가 하나도 업소.
Nobody came to see me while I was sick.	병 잇실 적에 아모도 와 보지 아니 하엿소.

## 2. (a).

Is there anything in my eye?	내 눈에 무어시 드럿소?
Did Mr. Kim send anything to me?	김 서방 이 내게 무엇 보내옵더니잇가?
Have you any business to attend to?	무슴 볼 일 잇소?
Did Mr. Yi tell you any news?	리서방 무슴 소문 말하 옵더니잇가?

I wish these boxes had nothing in them. 이 께들 무엇 안 드렸  
시면 도겟소.

Did you give anything? 무엇 주엇습느냐?

Did you say you had no-  
thing to do? 홀 일 업다고 하엿느냐?

## 2. (b).

One can accomplish almost  
any thing if he is ambi-  
tious. 백이 잇시면 거위 아모  
것도 성취호.

Any soft wood will do. 무슨 나모던지 연하면  
쓰겟소.

Any one of those colors will  
do. 내 색깔에 이 빛 중에  
아모 거시나 쓸듯  
호.

Give me any one of these  
cups. 그 차중 중에 아모 거시  
라도 하나 주호.

Not any one of these toys  
will please the children. 이 작란 가음 중에 으히  
맛음에 맞는것 하나도  
업소.

There was nothing there  
that I liked. 거기서 나 도화호는 거슨  
아모 것도 업섯소.

## 3. (a).

Are there any Chinese  
characters in that book? 그책 안희 진서가 드렸소?

Are there any men-of-war  
in Chemulpo now? 제물포에 지금 군함잇소?

Are there any American  
merchants in Fusan? 부산에 미국 장사 잇소?

Are there any schools where English is taught in Pyeng Yang ?      평양에 미국 말 가르치는 학당 잇소 ?

## 3. (b).

Have'nt you any money ?      돈이 조금도 업소 ?

Are there no sheep in Korea ?      조선에 양 하나도 업소 ?

Don't you have any good fruit in Japan ?      일본에 도흔 실과 하나도 업습누닛가 ?

Didn't you see any ducks on the road from Chemulpo ?      제물포서 오는 길에 오리 하나도 못 보앗소 ?

## 4. (a).

Is there any more flour ?      엇히 밀 가로 잇소 ?

Have you any more of the paper I bought the other day ?      그전에 사던 죠히 엇히 잇소 ?

Have they any more Pyeng Yang coal at Chemulpo ?      제물포에 평양 석탄 엇히 잇소 ?

## 4. (b).

Isn't there any more sugar in the house ?      집에 사탕이 더 업소 ?

Do not put in any more.      더 넛치 마오.

Do not put any more ice in the refrigerator until the leak is mended.      어름 궤 샌디 콧치기 전에 어름 더 넛치 마라.

## SEC. 6.—EVERY

## 1 Persons :—

(a.) Everybody, people generally—누구든지.

(b.) Everybody no matter who, anybody whatever,—  
누구라도 or 아모라도.

(c.) Every one of a particular group—모도, 다.

2 Things :—

(a.) Everything, things generally—무어시던지.

(b.) Everything no matter what, anything whatever,—무어시라도, 아모거시라도, 무어시던지 and sometimes by a change in form of the sentence.

(c.) Everyone of a particular group—다. 모도.

“Without exception” is rendered by 이것덕것업시.

Note.—아모 is more emphatic than 누구. There are also many other ways of expressing these same ideas by a change in the form of the sentence, but enough are given here for all practical purposes.

1. (a.)

Everybody expected war. 누구던지 싸움이 될 줄 알았소.

In India everybody has to go to the mountains in summer. 인도국에는 누구던지 여름에 산에 갈수밖고 업소.

One ought to be polite to everybody. 뉘게던지 공순하야 할 거시오.

1. (b).

Everybody can go to see the President. 아모라도 대통령을 보러 갈수가 잇소.

Every Jew had to learn a trade. 유대 사람은 아모라도 장식 일을 비호게 하엿소.

Every Korean must have a top knot. 조선 사람은 아모라도 상투 잇서야 쓰겟소.

They send every one to the same prison. 아모리도 혼 옥에 보낸다

## 1. (c).

Please make every one sit down. 다 함께 앉시오.

When I opened the door, everybody said "You must not come in yet." 내가 문 연즉 모도 아직 드려오지 말나고 하옵되다.

The weather was bad and every one in our house took cold. 일기가 언잔으니 집에 잇는 사름들이 모도 감기 드렸소.

## 2. (a).

Some people think that everything came into existence of itself. 무어시던지 다 절노 된줄 아는 이가 잇소.

Have you enough of everything, to last till you get to Pyeng Yang? 무어시던지 평양 서지 쓰기가 넉넉하겠느냐?

It seems to me you always find fault with everything. 나 보기에 공은 무어시던지 칙망하는 모양이오.

## 2. (b).

You seem to think you know everything. 공은 아모거시라도 아는 줄 아는 모양이오.

In a little while the Japanese will be able to make everything. 쉬이 일본 사름이 아모 거시라도 만들겟소.

That baby wants everything he sees. 그 어린 으희는 보는 대로 가지고 십히하오.



You must'nt give the baby \*아기 의게 무어시던지  
everything he wants. 달나는대로 다 주지

마는거시 을소.

They can teach everything 육영공원에서 아모거시  
at the government college. 라도 마르쳐 주겄소.

2. (c).

Leave everything as it is. 다 그대로 두오.

Every thing in the house 집 안에 물건이 모도 닳  
was burnt up. 브렸소.

Have you done every thing 내가 다 닐 은 대로  
as I told you? 하엿느냐?

Every one of these bottles is 이 병들이 모도 깨여  
broken. 졌소.

Every one without excep- 이것 터것 업시 다 두  
tion was broken in two. 졌에 낫소.

SEC. 7.—NO, NONE, NOBODY.

1 Nobody—업소 with either the relative clause with  
이; or 누구도, or 아모도, or 누구던지.

2 Nothing—아모것도 with the negative, or the rela-  
tive clause with 것 and the negative.

Note.—Sometimes with a relative clause, the repetition of the word  
will take the place of 것.

3 No :—

(a.) Not any—negative of verb.

\* N. B. In this sentence it would not do to say simply 무어시던지  
alone with the negative for this would mean you must not give him  
anything. If the idea is not to give all 닳 with the negative must be  
used, and in such a sentence as the above, some qualifying clause must  
be inserted.

(b.) Emphatic—signifying *none at all, not a single one*.—조금도, 하나도, 도모지, 아조, etc. with the negative.

4 No more—**더** with the negative.

## 1.

They looked at one another  
but nobody said a word.

서로 다 보기는 하나  
아무도 말 하지  
않았소.

Nobody can sit up till after twelve o'clock every-night and get up early every morning without breaking down.

밤마다 밤중 서지 자지  
안코 아침 마다 일즉  
니러나면 힘이 전후지  
안논이 도모지 업소.

Are none of you wet?  
Nobody expected peace so soon.

아모도 옷 저즌이 업소?  
아모도 그러케 쉬이 화친  
되줄 몰랐소.

## 2.

The house caught fire, but    집에 불이 났으나 튼거손  
nothing was burnt.                업소.

I took the cover off, and  
looked in, and there was  
nothing there.

None of those boats is very fast.

더 빅 중에 훈척도 빠른  
빅가 업소.

He showed me several, but  
none of them suited me.

내게 여러슬 보엿것마는  
모음에 맞는 것 업섯소.

## 3. (a).

I've had no fire all day.      오늘 종일 불이 업섯소.

Are there no snakes in this neighborhood? 이 근처 비암은 업소?

I found no mistakes in the essay. 글장에 잘못 훈것 못 차젼소.

## 3. (b).

Do you say there is no kerosene in Korea? 조선에는 도모지 석유가 업단 말이오?

Are you sure there are no mosquitoes in the net? 모기장 속에 덩녕 모기가 훈 마리도 업는걸 아오?

Are there no strawberries in the garden? 화원에 딸기 훈나도 업소?

Is there no one in this room who will go? 이 방에 갈 사름 도모지 업소?

## 4.

We have no more pears but we have some very nice persimmons. 비는 더 업스나 감은 도훈 거시 잇소.

We have no more red ones, but have some black ones. 붉은 거슨 더 업스나 검은 거슨 잇소.

I believe-I have no more letters to write. 쓸 편지 더 업슬듯 훈오.

## SEC. 8.—ALL.

1 Signifying *everyone, the whole number, or quantity*—모도, 다.

2 Signifying *the whole duration or extent*,—온, 온통, 일, 훈, or 다.

3 Signifying *the last of a thing*,—**쉴** or **만** may be used.

**온, 일, 한** precede their nouns, the rest follow.

## 1.

You had better throw these    **이것 다 내여 버리면**  
all away.                                **도켓소.**

These letters are all for    **이 편지는 모두 미국으로**  
America.                                **가는 거시오.**

The cherry blossoms must    **벚나무 꽃은 모두 썩러**  
have fallen off by now.                **젖실러시오.**

Put all those needles in the    **그 바늘을 모두 선반**  
box on the shelf.                        **우회 잇는 께에 너라.**

Take out all those books,    **궤 속에 잇는 책을 다**  
and arrange them well,                **쓰어 내여서 책장에**  
in sets, on the book shelves.        **질을 차자 잘 싸하라.**

The hoop broke, and every    **통 테가 곤히져서 물이**  
bit of the water ran out.                **다 솟아젖소.**

## 2.

I shall probably be in Söoul    **이 온 겨울 동안은 서울**  
all this winter.                        **잇슬 듯 하오.**

All next month I must go    **티월 한 둘은 불가불**  
every day to the palace.                **날마다 대궐에 드려가야**  
    **하겟소.**

From Nam San, they say    **남산서 서울이 거위 다**  
almost all of Söoul can be                **빈다고 하오.**  
seen.

There was not a man in all    **일촌 중에 외국 사람을**  
the village that had ever                **본이가 하나도 업소읍**  
seen a foreigner.                        **더이다.**

Mr. Song has travelled over nearly all the world. 송서방은 거의 세계를 다  
든넛소.

## 3.

Is this all the tea there is? 차가 이 썬 이냐?

Is this all the flour there is? 밀가루가 이 썬 이호?

## SEC. 9.—SEVERAL.

## 1 Number :—

(a.) Quite a number,—여러 in its various forms.

(b.) An indefinite number,—몇.

## 2 Kind :—식식, 식식이로, 각.

The distinction made above between 여러 and 몇, is not always adhered to by Koreans. The difficulty with 여러 for “several,” is that it may mean a large number of almost indefinite proportion, but this is generally expressed, by the strong stress or emphasis, laid upon the word. The English word “several” may also be rendered by the Korean words 두서넛, (*two, three, four*) 서너넛 (three, four, five.)

## 1. (a).

There are several pencils in that case. 이 필통 속에 연필이 여러  
자로가 잇소.

There were several who declined to go. 가 기 슬 타 는 사 람 이  
여러히 잇수옵더이다.

I enquired at several shops but there were none. 여러 전 에 차 자 보 았 시 나  
업수옵더이다.

I've had several dogs since I came to Söul. 서울 온 후 브 러 내 게 개 가  
여러히 잇섯소.

A fly has several legs. 파 리 안 트 발 이 여러 시  
잇소.

## 1. (b).

- We met a coolie just now carrying several parcels.      지금 몇 보통이 가지고 가는 훈 삭군 맛났소.
- He took several boxes to the river this morning.      오늘 아침 강으로 몇 궤를 가져갔소.
- We met several pack ponies laden with cash, on the road.      충로 에서 돈 실은 복마 몇 맛났소.
- There seem to be several lame ones among these dogs.      그 개 중에 몇치 저는 모양이오.

## 2.

- You have several (*kinds*) beautiful flowers in your garden.      공의 화원에 도은 꽃시 식식이 잇소.
- Birds build their nests in several ways.      새가 각 모양으로 보금 자리를 치오.
- At this hotel, they have several kinds of food.      이 주막에는 음식이 식식이로 잇소.
- Koreans wear garments of several colors.      조선 사름은 옷술 식식이로 님소.

## SEC. 10.—FEW.

1 Few (*not many*)—적소, 만치안소, which in Korean are verbs, and in rendering *few* can only be used as predicates.

Note.—*To be* with a *few* is rendered in the same way.

2 A few (*a small number*)—몇 or by some indefinite number as 두서넛, or 서너넛.

The particle 수 (*number*) prefixed to Sinico-Korean words also conveys this idea.

Few foreigners speak Korean well. 조선 말을 잘하는 외국 사람이 적소.

There were only a few there last night, but we had a good time. 어제 밤에 거기 사람이 만치 아니나 잘 놀았소.

There were only a few soldiers at the American legation, but they were all brave, and we were not afraid. 미국 공수관에 병사가 만치 아니 하였것마는 다 용맹하였으니 걱정 없섯소.

2.

Go to the garden and bring me a few small stones. 화원에 가서 잔 돌 몇 가져 오너라.

Go and buy me a few cigars. 가서 엽권연 두세 개 사 오너라.

I went to Pouk Han yesterday with a few friends. 어제 몇 친구 하고 북한으로 갔소.

A few years ago I was in America. 수년 전에 미국에 잇섯소.

I will go in a few days. 수일 후에 가겟소.

SEC. 11.—ONE, ONES.

One is rendered in Korean by 것.

Note.—It will have already been noticed, that the Korean use of the equivalent for “one” or “ones” is much more frequent than the English, and hence it is found in many places where we least expect it.

Either red ones or black ones will do. 붉은 거시던지 검은 거시던지 쓰겟소.

Neither red ones nor black ones will do. 붉은 거시던지 검은 거시던지 다 못 쓰겟소.

Have not you any (*ones*) a little better?      좀 더 나은 거슨 업소?

The best ones are all in the godown.      그 중 요흔 거슨 다 광에 드렸소.

Although even that is good, the one with the cover is better.      그 것도 요키는 요흐나 독경 잇는 거시 더 요소.

Is this to-day's (*one*)?      이거시 오늘 거시오?

Have you any different (*ones*) from this?      이 보다 다른 거시 잇소?

# SEC. 12.—OTHER, ANOTHER.

1 The rest of—**이외.**

2 Not the same, separate—**다른**, or by the adverb **달니.**

3 Besides—**이밖기, 이외에.**

4 One more in addition—**더, 하나더.**

5 The other one of two—**하나, 또하나, 다른것**, or by a change in the form of the sentence.

“The one...the other”—**하나흔...하나흔.**

6 People generally as contrasted with one's self—**놈.**

7 Again—**또, 다시.**

## 1.

See whether the other children don't want some too.      이외 으히들도 달나 하나 보아라.

Please tell the others to come in too.      이외 사름 드려도 드리 오라고 하소.

Are the other boxes the same size as this?      이외 께들도 크기가 이것 쫓소?

The other ones will be done in a month.      이외 거슨 흘들만 하면 되겟소.



I'll take another newspaper. 이외 신문지를 보겠소.  
 You had better take these coolies, you may not be able to get the others. 이외 일꾼은 혹 엇을 수가 업시니 이들을 쓰는 거시 요겠소.

2.

I came by another road. 다른 길로 왔소.  
 That's another matter. 그거슨 다른 일이오.  
 Another color would probably be better. 다른 빗치 요홀듯 하오.  
 As I am a Korean I cannot sit down in any other way. 조선 사람이니 달니는 안질 수가 업소.  
 He really had another reason for going. 그 사람이 실상은 다른 일이 잇서서 간거시오.

3.

I have not another cash. 이밧기는 혼돈도 업소.  
 Isn't there another pencil in that drawer? 그설합 속에 연필이 이것 밧기 업소?  
 If you intend to study Chinese you must get another teacher, (*besides the present one*). 한어를 비호시라면 이외 션성을 엇어야 홀듯 하오.

4.

This bookcase is a little small, I'll have to get another. 이 책장이 조금 적으니 불가불 하나 더 엇어야 하겠소.  
 It will be all right even though you don't put on another stamp. 우표 하나 더 붓치지 아니 하여도 요겠소.

Please order me another copy, of the O Ryun Haing Sil.      오륜형실을 혼질 더 맛초라고 하오.

Bring me another pencil.      연필 하나 더 가져오너라.  
Bring me another cake of ink.      먹 혼장 더 가져오.

## 5.

Where is the other hammer?      맞치 쏘 하나 어디 있느냐?

This is too soft you had better take the other one.      이거슨 너무 연하니 다른 거슬 가져가시오.

I gave one to Soun Pogi and one to Eung Whani.      하나혼 순복이 주고 하나 혼 응환이 주었소.

I like this house best, but prefer the other location.      집은 여기가 도흐나 러는 데기가 도소.

## 6.

Don't give too much credit to what others say.      남의 말을 너무 고지 듯지 마오.

I don't know what others think, and I don't care.      남은 엇더케 생각 할 년지 모르나 무어 시라 던지 관계치 안소.

## 7.

The news has just arrived, of another victory.      쏘 이기었다는 소문 곳 시방 왔소.

Did Mr. Pak say that if he went to Fusan he would send another telegram to Scöul?      박서방 말이 주기가 부산 가면 쏘 서울노 던보 하겠다고 하옵더니잇가?

## SEC. 13.—SAME.

1. Not different—By the different parts of the verb  
 ㅅ소 or ㅅ호오 (*to be alike*).

2. Not two :—훈, 일.

## 1.

Put the same quantity in all the bottles.      각 병에 ㅅ치 너히라.

Those two boys are the same height.      그 두 으히 키가 ㅅ소.

Is “Oltarago” the same as “Olsorago?”      올타라고와 올소라고와  
 ㅅ수읍느니잇가?

The meaning is the same, but the letters are a little different.      뜻은 ㅅ호나 글자가 ㅅ  
 달소.

Though you make them of the same material, make them of different colors.      ㅅ훈 가음으로 호되 빗춘  
 다르게 문드러라.

Are Buddhist temples all built on the same general plan?      절 짓는 법이 대테 다  
 ㅅ소?

I told them both the same thing.      둘의게 다 ㅅ훈 말을  
 닐넛소.

It is the same as last year's disease.      작년 병 파 ㅅ소.

## 2.

Were all these prepared by the same man?      이거시 다 훈 사름이 진  
 거시오?

Can't you two read out of the same book?      훈 책 가지고 둘이 ㅅ지  
 못호느냐?

Let us both stop at the **한 유막에 류하옵시다.**  
same hotel.

Are you all from the same **다 동향 사름 이오?**  
town?

### SEC. 14—MUCH.

1 In affirmative sentences—the different parts of the verb **만소.**

2 In negative sentences—**과히** with the negative.

3 Too much—**너무, 과히**, with and without **만소.**

4 So much—**그리케** either alone, or with the verb **만소.**

5 How much—**얼마.** About how much—**얼마나.**

Sometimes also another word such as **대개** will be added. If it is desired to call especial attention to the price the word **값** will be used. The Koreans use this word **얼마** in places where in English we would use simply *how*.

#### 1.

Is there much money in **더 궤에 돈 만히 드럿소?**  
that box?

Was much rice burned up **전년에 감을 적에 곡식이**  
during the drought last **만히 훗소?**  
year?

Do they import much kero- **석유가 조선에 만히 드리**  
sene into Korea? **호호?**

Is there much fruit in Ko- **조선에 실과 만소?**  
rea?

#### 2.

I don't have much head- **머리 과히 압흐지 안소.**  
ache.

You have'nt taken much pains with your writing.	글씨 쓰기에 익 파히 쓰지 아니 하였다.
I do not like Korean food very much.	내가 조선 음식 파히 소화 하지 아니 함소.
To tell the truth I do not feel much like going.	실상은 파히 가고 십지 안소.

3.

Do not drink too much.	술 너무 먹지 마소.
There is too much sugar in this tea.	차에 사탕이 너무 만소.
You can not sleep if you drink too much tea.	차를 너무 먹으면 못 자소.
This is a little too much.	이것 좀 너무 만소.
You must not spend too much money or you will soon be poor.	돈 너무 만히 쓰지 말아야 쉬이 가난 찬켓소.

4.

If you eat so much candy you will be sick.	엿 그러케 먹으면 알켓소.
I trust him so much that I would lend him whatever he should ask.	내가 그를 그러케 믿으니 달나는 대로 빌너 주 겟소.
You need not take so much pains with that letter.	그 편지 쓰기에 그러케 익쓸 것 업소.
Do not drink so much wine.	술 그러케 만히 먹지 마소.
Do not put on so much coal.	석탄 그러케 만히 넋치 마라.

## 5.

How much for the lot?	도합이 갑시 얼마요?
How much did you give for those pears?	이 비를 얼마 주고 샀소?
About how much salt is there in this water?	이 물에 소금 얼마나 드렸소?
How much vinegar did you say was left?	초가 얼마 남았다고 하였소?
About how long is that box?	그 께 길기가 대개 얼마나 되오?
How much silk shall I get?	명주 얼마 사리릿가?
How much is the annual income of the government?	정부에 일년 슈입 대개 얼마나 되오?

## SEC. 15.—MANY.

The Koreans do not make the distinction between *many* and *much*, that we do. Sometimes it can be done by the interposition of the word 수 (*number*) and 수가 만소, “*the number is much*” means “*there are many*.” As a general rule however, the simple use of the verb 만소 will answer all purposes and the context will tell whether it is quantity or number that is referred to. There is a difference between *how much* and *how many*.

We find then the following rules.

1 In affirmative sentences—the different parts of the verb 만소; and in negative sentences—the same with the negative.

2 A good many—The word “*good*” is not rendered, 만소 alone is used.

3 A great many—**많은** or **대단히** etc. with **만소**.

The English phrase “a great deal” is also rendered in the same way.

4 Too many—**너무**, **과히**, etc. with **만소**. As was said with regard to “*too much*,” **만소** may be omitted.

5 How many—**몇**. About how many **몇치나**.

1.

Confucius has many dis- **공자는 덕자가 만소.**  
ciples.

Many of the Americans **미국 사람이 눈 푸른**  
have blue eyes. **이가 만소.**

Formerly there were not **이전에 미국 해군에 철갑**  
many ironclads in the **선이 만치 안소.**  
American navy.

Many Korean flowers have **조선 꽃 도흔 향내 나는**  
a very sweet odor. **것 만소.**

There are not many sheep **조선에 양 만치 안소.**  
in Korea.

I didn't buy many, because **비싸 만히 사지 아니**  
they were dear. **하엿소.**

2.

A good many Japanese **일본 사람에는 안경 쓴**  
seem to wear glasses. **이가 만흔 모양 이호.**

It seems a good many **을 하흔 돈 넘진 농군이**  
farmers made money this **만흔 모양 이호.**  
year.

3.

A great many fishing **아침 마다 어선이 이리**  
smacks pass here every **많은 만히 지나 든니호**  
morning.

The fire last night destroyed a great many houses.      어제 밤 화제가 대단이 만흔 집을 망케 하였소.

We've used a great deal of coal this year.      올히 석탄 대단이 만히 썼소.

## 4.

There are too many books in that bookcase.      그 책장에 책이 너무 만소.

There are too many people on that boat, I'm afraid it will sink in such a sea as this.      그 비에 사람이 너무 만흐니 그런 바다에 빠져질가 념려요.

There are too many chairs in this room, there is no place for the table.      이 방에 교의가 너무 만흐니 상 둘디 업소.

There are too many windows in this room, there is no place for a wardrobe.      이 방에 문이 너무 만흐니 의장 둘디 업소.

## 5.

How many pears shall I buy?      벉 몇치나 사리잇가?

About how many bottles are left?      병이 몇치나 남앗소?

How many days are there in a month?      몇 날이 훈 들리오?

How many chickens did you order?      병아리 몇 사리잇가?

How many servants do you keep?      공이 몇 하인 둡누잇가?



How many sons has Mr. 김서방이 아들 몇치오?  
Kim?

## SEC. 16.—MORE.

More is rendered into Korean by 더. Quite often 좀 (*a little*) will be used with it.

When are you going to put on more men? 언제 브러 일군을 더 두  
랴오?

If you don't put on more coal, the fire will go out. 석탄 더 넉치 아니 하면  
불 쓰지 겠소.

I wish I had bought more of this tea. 이 차를 좀 더 샀더면  
효할번 하였소.

You can get a good article if you will pay more. 돈 더 주면 효흔 거슬  
엇을 수가 잇소.

Which costs the more? 엇던 거시 갑시 더 들겟소?

I have not a bit more. 내게 조금도 업수.

Go and get some more ice. 가서 얼음 더 엇어 오너라

## SEC. 17.—MOST.

1. Nearly all—거위다.

2. The greatest of several quantities :—

The Koreans, commonly do not make the distinction between “*more*” and “*most*.” The common way of expressing “*most*” would be by 더 with or without 만소. Sometimes however, when they wish to be accurate they will use 데일 instead of 더.

For the superlative degree, see Part II. Chapter VI. § II. Sec. 2., and Part I. ¶ 254.

## 1.

Most foreigners dislike a 외국 사름들 거위 다  
native chair. 보교를 슬희어 하였.

- Most of you have heard this I suppose. 공들은 거위 다 이거슬 드릿살듯 하오.
- Although some of them have not yet been told, most of them probably know it. 그 중에 아직 알지 아니 사람도 잇시나 거위 다 알듯 하오.
- I gave most of them five hundred cash each, but some of them left early and did not receive it. 내가 거위 다 다섯 량씩 주엇시나 더러는 일찍 나갔으니 받지 아니 하엿소.

## 2.

Which box holds the most? { 어는 께 만히 들겟소?  
어는 께 더 만히 들겟소?  
어는 께 데일 만히 들겟소?

Then I will have the most. { 그러면 내가 더 만히 가지오.  
그러면 내가 데일 만히 가지오.

## SEC. 18.—ENOUGH.

In rendering the pronominal adjective, *Enough*, the various parts of the verbs 넉넉하오, 족족하오, 자라오, etc., verbs meaning, “to be sufficient” should properly be used. The Koreans, often, however, use other words or phrases to express the same idea. As, they will say “That much will do,” “That is much” etc. When we use the word *enough* in English, we do not always have the idea of “sufficient for a purpose,” we often mean “*plenty*,” “*a good deal*,” and the Koreans in

this respect are almost more exact than we. Remembering these facts, we obtain the following rules.

1 Signifying a sufficiency, and without the verb “to be,” either as simple adjective qualifying a noun, substantively, or as an adverb we may render “*enough*,” by **넉넉히, 족족히, 만히**.

2. To be enough—**넉넉하오, 족족하오, 자라오**, etc. or we can use **그만**, (*that only*), or **그만큼** (*that much*) with the future of such a verb **쓰오**. Negatively—the same with the negative, or a negative verb, as **부족하오** may be used.

3. To do a thing *enough*.

(a.) In affirmative sentences—the adverbial form of the verbs.

(b.) In negative sentences—the same with the negative, or **덜** without the negative.

4. Enough to,—future participle of verb, or fut. past. with **만큼**, or **것**; negatively, the same with the negative. **자라오** may be used.

# 1.

Thanks, I've had enough **곰압소 마는 만히 먹었소**. already.

How many nails shall I **못 몇칠 가져 오리잇가?** bring? Bring enough. **넉넉히 가져 오너라**.

Be sure and put enough **일덩 사랑 넉넉히 너라**. sugar in.

# 2.

Is there enough sugar? **[사랑이 넉넉 하오?**

There is not quite enough **이 파자에 사랑이 조금** sugar in this cake. **부족 하오**.

Is this enough?	이 거시 넉넉하오?
Six inches will be wide enough.	광이 여섯 치 넉넉 하오.
That's enough.	그 만큼 쓰겠소.
This won't be enough.	이것 못 자라겠소.
Was there enough coal?	석탄 넉넉 하였소?

## 3. (a).

We've walked enough now, let's go back.	지금은 넉넉히 운동 하였 시니 도라 갑시다.
You've read enough now, that will do.	인제 넉넉히 읽었이니 그만 두오.
As the coolies have rested long enough, let us hurry on.	일꾼 그만 쉬었이니 어서 갑시다.

## 3. (b).

Haven't you had enough to eat yet?	아직 넉넉히 먹지 아니 하였소?
These potatoes are not boiled enough yet.	이 감자를 아직 덜 삶 었소.
You have'nt taken enough medicine yet.	약 아직 덜 먹었소.

## 4.

Have you enough stamps to put on that letter?	그 편지 붙칠만큼 우체표 잇소?
Have we coal enough to last till next spring?	티년 봄까지 쓸 석탄 잇소?
Have you studied into the subject enough to really understand it?	실상 그일을 알 만큼 상고 하였소?

We had enough plums to      우리게 주도는 각 친구  
send some to all our      의게 보낼 만큼 있  
friends.      셧소.

We went to see them and      우리가 보러 간즉 굶지  
instead of finding them      아니 하고 오히려 혼들  
starving, we found they      쓸 찰이 섬에 넉것  
had enough rice, stored      잇는 거슬 차젧소.

---

## CHAPTER VI.

## THE ADJECTIVE.

## § I.

The previous chapter having treated of pronominal adjectives, there remains for us here, simply qualifying, or descriptive adjectives. As will be seen in Part I, Korean has but few true descriptive adjectives, and as a consequence, in translating English into Korean, adjectives must be variously rendered.

1 Used attributively—either a simple adjective will be used, or a past relative participle, which will then, as in English precede the noun it qualifies.

2 Used predicatively—the verbal form in the appropriate tense will be used.

Note.—When two or more adjectives qualify the same word, they will be rendered by the stems of the adjectival verb with **고**, and the last only will be inflected. It must also be remembered that often where we use the attributive, the Korean uses the predicative form, and vice versa.

## 1.

This is a rainy day.

오늘 비오는 날 이요.

Those are very pretty  
flowers.

그 것 미우 묘흔 꽃 치요

My sister has dark eyes.

우리 누님은 눈알이 검소.

That is a large house.	그 거시 큰 집이오.
Koreans wear black hats and white coats.	조선 사람은 검은 갓 쓰고 흰 옷 입고.
You will need a thick overcoat.	춧겨온 두루막이 잇 서야 쓰겟소.
Koreans like bright colors.	조선 사람 환한 빛 도화 호호.
That is a good fire.	그 것 도흔 불이오.
There is a large white dog in the garden.	화원에 흰 크고 흰 개 잇소.
He wears a heavy gold chain.	무거운 금 수슬을 찻소.
My mother sent me a silver cup.	우리 어머니가 흰 은 잔 을 보내엿소.

## 2.

Japanese are very small.	일본 사람 미우 적소.
American women are tall.	미국 녀인이 키 크호.
The road was very muddy.	길은 대단이 질엇소.
Good coal is plentiful in Korea.	도흔 석탄 조선에 만소.
Those chairs are very strong, but they are very heavy.	그 교의는 미우 튼튼 하겟마는 무겁소.
That dress is very pretty.	그 옷시 미우 묘호호.
That overcoat is thick.	그 두루막이 두텁소.
Most Korean colors are bright.	조선 물색은 거위 다 광치가 잇소.
That fire is good.	그 불이 도소.

That gold chain is heavy.	그 금 사슬 무겁소.
He was a tall, strong, handsome man.	키 크고 힘 세고 어엿분 사름 이엇소.
I had a large, gentle, and fleet Chinese pony.	내게 혼 크고 순 하고 색론 중국 말 잇섯소.

## § II.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

### SEC. 1.—THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE.

As was seen in Part I. in the chapter on adjectives, the idea of comparison is expressed largely by Koreans by the use of the simple positive. If there are a number, and it is desired to know which is the best, the Korean picking out simply one, and saying "This is good," will mean that it is the best. Similarly where there are only two "Of these two this is good" means, *This is the better*. There are however, cases where the expression of the comparative or superlative degree is necessary to the sense.

The comparative degree may be expressed by such words as **더** (*more*) **낫소** (*to be better*), **보다** (*than*) **에서** (*from*). In connection with the use of these words, we must always remember, that in Korean the governing word always follows the word it governs, and the **보다** or **에서**, will refer then to the word which precedes it and not to the word that follows. **더** being an adverb, precedes the adjective or verb it qualifies, and we should remember that as a rule Koreans do not use **더** with **보다** or **에서**, either one alone, being sufficient. For the rendering of the English comparative degree we obtain then the following rules:—

1 Signifying in a greater degree—**더** preceding the adjective or neuter verb.



2 When two different objects are compared :—

(a) When *than* is expressed—**보다** or **예서** affixed to the noun having the quality in the lesser degree ; and the adjective in the positive.

(b) When *than* is not expressed—the postposition **는** may be affixed to one or both of the nouns, or **중에** (*among*) may be used with the positive : or **더** may be affixed to the adjective.

3 *The more—the more*, marking the introduction of two correlative clauses, may be rendered into Korean, by **수록**.

1.

Would it not be well to tie that bundle tighter ?      그 보통이를 더 든든이 묶는 거시 도치 안겠소?

You must be more energetic.      더 부지런 하여야 하겠소.

I wish you had waked me a little earlier.      좀 더 일찍 서왔더면 도화지오.

They are pretty well made, but I wish they were a little smaller.      꽤 잘 만든 듯 하나 좀 더 작았더면 도화지오.

2. (a).

Fusan is hotter than Sëoul.      부산이 서울 보다 더워.

The days are a good deal longer in summer than in winter.      여름 에는 히가 겨울 보다 미우 기오.

He is a good deal taller than his wife.      안희 보다 키 미우 크오.

Chairs are easier than jin-rikshas.      교군이 인력거 보다 편 하오.

I am about three years older than my brother.      내가 동생 보다 삼년 우히오.

## 2. (b.)

This is the prettier but the other is the cheaper.	이 거슨 묘하것 마는 그 거슨 싸오.
Of these two houses, the one nearer here is the higher.	그 두집 중에 갓가온 집이 높소.
Mine is the stronger horse.	내 말이 힘 세오.
This is the better pen.	이 붓시 낫소.
Mine was the greater fault.	내 허물 더 크오.
My sister is the prettier.	우리 누님 더 묘하오.

## 3.

The quicker the better.	색를 수록 도쇼.
The more the better.	만홀 수록 도쇼.
The more one gets, the more he wants.	더 엇을 수록 더 가지고 십소.
The more I study, the less I seem to myself to know.	공부를 할 수록 생각에 더 무식할 듯 하오.

## SEC. 2.—THE SUPERLATIVE DEGREE.

As was noticed above, unless the sense requires it, Koreans do not employ the superlative, the positive answering all the purposes. If it is necessary, it may be rendered by the ordinal 데일 (*the first*), prefixed to the adjective.

Which is the best hotel in Sëoul?	서울에 어느 주막이 데일 도쇼?
The first plan seems to me the best.	처음 계교가 내 생각에 데일 인듯 하오.

He is the richest man in America. 미국에 데일 부자요.

He was the bravest soldier in the regiment. 진 중에 데일 담대 한  
사름이 었소.

Of all these books which is the best. 이 모든 책중에 어능거시  
도소.

Is not the lion the most fearful of all animals? 짐성 중에는 샤즈가  
무섭지요?

Of all clothes foreign clothes are the easiest to wear. 모든 의복 중에 낚기 경  
편한 거슨 양복 이요.

## CHAPTER VII.

## THE ADVERB.

English adverbs may be rendered into Korean in various ways. Methods for forming adverbs from adjectives, with their various distinctions, may be found in the chapter on Adverbs, in the “Grammatical Notes.” We have not here then to deal with these, but will simply consider how a few of the English adverbs of *place, time, manner*, etc., are rendered into Korean.

## § I.—ADVERBS OF PLACE.

To Korean primitive adverbs, the various postpositions can be affixed.

## SEC. 1.—HERE.

1 Signifying this place—여기, 이리, 이곳 etc.

2 Signifying this neighborhood—이 근처.

## 1.

Here it is.

여기 있소.

Here is where I lost my watch.

여기가 내 시계 일히 버리던 데요.

Here is where Son Doli fell into the river.

여기가 손돌이 강에 빠져 지던 데요.

Is the book you bought yesterday here? 어제 산 책이 여기 있소?

Sou Dongi and Sou Jini were here just now. 슈동이 하고 슈진이 하고  
즉금 여기 왔다 갔소.

Do they make pottery here? 여기서 사기 굽소?

Do they generally drill the soldiers here? 병덕들을 대테 여기서  
조련 하오?

Has'nt some one been writing here? 여기서 누가 쓰지 아니  
하엿소?

Bring it here! 이리 가져 오너라.

Come here with the baby! 어린: 으히 이리 데려오  
너라.

Tell Nomi to come here. 놈이 데려 이리 오라고  
하오.

Then we must certainly ride in chairs from here. 그리하니 여기서 불가불  
교균을 득야 쓰겟소.

How far is it from here to the next hotel? 여기서 이다음 휴막 사지  
얼마나 머오?

## 2.

Are there any deer about here nowadays? 이 근처에 이사이도 스  
슴이 있소?

Do they not have a flower show here to-night? 오늘 방에 이 근처에 꽃  
저주 버리지 안소?

## SEC. 2.—THERE.

There—**더**기, **더**리, **거**기, **그**리. The difference between **더** and **그** noticed in Part I. ¶ 72 extends to these adverbs.

There's a man with a dog and a gun.    **덕기 총 가지고 개드리고 잇는 사람 잇소.**

There have been fires there, very many times this year.    **덕기 금년에 불이 미우 여러번 났섯소.**

I hope Mr. Chyeng will wait there till we come.    **우리 오기 서지 정서방 거기서 기다리면 되겠소.**

Do they make much kan-chang there?    **거기서 간장 만히 문드오?**

What kind of a ship is that they are building there?    **덕기서 문드는 거시 무슨 배오?**

That's all right. Put it down there.    **관계치 안소 거기 노하두오.**

I think most of the silk thread comes from there.    **내 생각에는 대테 명주 실 모도 거기서 나오는 줄 아오.**

### SEC. 3.—WHERE.

1 Interrogative—어디, 어느곳.

2 Relative—되 with relative participle.

3 Somewhere—어디, 어디던지, 어디선지.

4 Everywhere, wherever,—by **던지** with the relative participle ; by two negatives ; or by such words as **사방** (*four sides*), **곳곳**, **쳐쳐** etc.

5 Anywhere—**아모디나**, **아모디던지**, **어디던지**.

6 Nowhere—**아모디도** with negative.

#### 1.

Where does the washer-woman live?    **마전 집이 어디오?**

Where was it that you met Mr. Kim this morning?	오늘 아침에 김서방 만나던 터가 어디요?
Where is this flower pot cracked?	이 꽃분이 어디가 금이 갔소?
Where is Mr. Yi?	리서방 어디 잇소?
Where is the spoon I left on the table?	상 우희 놓 슈가락 어디 잇소?
Where is the shirt I sent to the wash?	빨너 보낸 속 적삼 어디 잇소?
Where did you buy this fish?	이 생선은 어디서 샀소?
Do you know where these grapes were grown?	이 포도가 어디서 자란 지 암니까?
Where's my dictionary gone?	내 주련이 어디 갔소?
Where were you going when I met you yesterday?	어제 만날 췌에 에디 가는 길이었소?
Where does the best rice come from?	테일 요흔 찰이 어디서 나오?

2.

Is this where we take the boat?	여기가 뱃 두는 데요?
Here's where we have to show our passports.	여기서 빙표 보이는 데요.
Sit where you can hear.	들릴 데로 앉시오.

3.

Is'nt there a bridge somewhere on the river?	어디 던지 강에 다리 업소?
--	-----------------

Are there not fireworks somewhere to-night?      오늘 밤에 어딤 던지  
불노름 항지 안소?

It seems to me I saw a second hand one at some book store on the main street.      어딤 셴지 큰 길 책사  
에서 늑은 거슬 본 듯  
항호.

He has gone somewhere.      어딤 갔소.

He put the book somewhere, and has forgotten where it is.      책은 어딤 노코 논티를  
니졌소.

## 4.

He smokes tobacco wherever he goes.      어딤를 가던지 담비는  
먹소.

He makes friends wherever he goes.      어딤를 가던지 친구가  
성기호.

Mosquitoes are everywhere in Japan.      일본서 모기가 업논티  
업소.

Steamboats go everywhere now.      지금은 화륜션이 곳곳이  
가호.

There are plenty of merchants everywhere.      쳐쳐에 장수가 만소.

The cat has looked everywhere for her kittens.      고양이갸 샷기를 수면  
으로 차жат소.

I am lonely wherever I go.      아모디 가던지 심심항호.

## 5.

I can't find my handkerchief anywhere.      내 슈전 아모 티서 던지  
차질수 업소.

Of course water runs down hill anywhere.      본티 물은 어딤 던지 낙  
티로 흐럭호.



You can travel anywhere in Japan without a passport.      빙표 업시 일본에 아모 띤 던지 둔니겟소.

6.

He is nowhere in the house.      집에는 아모 띤도 업소.

There were no fish anywhere this morning.      오늘 아츰에는 생선이 아모 띤도 업섯소.

Foreigners could live nowhere except in the open ports.      외국 사름은 통상 항구 외에는 아모 띤도 못 사랏소.

§ II.—ADVERBS OF TIME.

SEC. 1.—ALWAYS.

1 Invariably—언제던지.

2 Continually—늘, 느루.

3 From the beginning—본럭 with or without 지금 사지.

4 At all times—항상, 일상.

5 Signifying *all*—다.

1.

Is June always rainy?      륽월은 언제 던지 장마요?

Does the king always have a guard?      님금 석는 언제 던지 호위 병이 되시고 잇소?

I suppose the waves are not always as high as this.      내 생각에는 풍랑이 언제 던지 이 곳치 높지 아닐 듯 하오.

Do you always put out your light before you get in bed?      언제 던지 침상에 들기 전에 불 끄오?

## 2.

- Are you always in pain?      느루 압흐오?
- Is the earth always in motion?      땅이 늘 동흐오?
- Before you had the small-pox were you always well?      역질노 알키 전에는 늘 평안 하엿소?
- Is a bird always on her nest when she is hatching her young?      새가 샷기 칠 썬에는 느루 그 보금자리에 잇소?
- Is a sentinel always walking when he is on guard?      순경 군이 순경 돌 썬에는 느루 것소?

## 3.

- Have you always lived in Sēoul?      본릭 서울서 지금 사지 살앗소?
- The English have always been good sailors.      영국 사름 본릭 사공 노릇 잘 하오.
- Have there always been eight provinces in Korea?      본릭 죠션에 팔도가 잇섯소?

## 4.

- God is always the same.      상테는 일샹 훈 모양 이오.
- It is always best to do right.      을케 하느 거슨 흥샹 묘소.
- I am always glad to see that man.      그 사름 보기 흥샹 반갑소.
- He is always telling lies.      일샹 거짓 말 하오.
- That baby is always crying.      그 어린 것 흥샹 울 더라.

Although the Koreans are 조선 사람 일상 밥 먹으되  
always eating rice, they 혼변도 슬치 안소.  
never refuse it.

5.

Are crows always black? 가마귀는 다 검소?  
Do mapoos always wear 마부는 다 빙거지 쓰오?  
felt hats?

SEC. 2.—WHENEVER,

1 At whatever time—언제든지 or 어느새든지.

2 Every time—때마다 with the relative participle.  
The above may also be used, but this is the better.

1.

I'll start whenever it is con- 어느 새 던지 당신씩  
venient to you. 덕당훈 새에 켜나겟소.

Can I borrow your dictionary 어느 새 던지 가질너  
whenever I send for it? 보내면 주던을 빌수  
잇겟소?

We must go on board 어느 새던지 비가 드리  
whenever the ship comes 오거든 등야 하겟소.  
in.

Be ready whenever Mr. Yi 어느 새 오게 되던지  
comes. 리서방 예비하여 두  
어라.

2.

Whenever I go to Che- 제물포 가는 새 마다 비가  
mulpo it rains. 호호.

He gets angry whenever he 론난할 새 마다 성이  
argues. 나호.

Every time I read it, it 늑을 새 마다 더 어려운  
seems harder. 모양 이호.

I have a headache whenever I smoke. 담비 먹 을 때 마 다 두통이 잇소.

SEC. 3.—GENERALLY, USUALLY.

Generally, usually—흔이, 대개, 대더, 힘용.

What kind of a pen do you generally use? 흔히 무슨 붓을 쓰오?

Cholera generally comes in the summer. 쥐통이 흔히 여름에 잇소.

We generally have tiffin at one. 힘용 혼 시에 텀심을 먹소.

We generally take a walk in the afternoon. 우리들이 대개 오후에 힘기 하오.

It generally rains a good deal in July. 양력 칠월에 대더 비가 만히 오오.

We do not usually have much snow in Southern Korea. 조선 남편에는 흔히 눈 만히 오지 안소.

SEC. 4.—OFTEN, FREQUENTLY.

Often, frequently—자조, 잣고.

I often have headache. 두통이 잣고 나오.

Come and see me often, when you come to Söoul. 서울 오거든 자조 와 보시오.

We often read together. 자조 껏치 읽소.

SEC. 5.—SOMETIMES.

1 Occasionally, now and then, once in a while—잇다금, 갓금, 때로.

2 On certain occasions, at particular times—잇던새는.

3 Indefinite,—때 with relative participle.

## 1.

Even the wisest plans sometimes fail.	암만 요흔 계교 라도 잇다 금 실슈가 잇소.
Do you still go to the palace sometimes?	이 스이도 잇다금 대궐에 드러가오?
Why do you not let me hear from you sometimes?	왜 갓금 편지도 아니 하오?
I meet him sometimes, but not very often.	새로 만나 나 잣지는 안소.
You may go occasionally.	잇다금 이나 가오.
Once in a while I take a nap in the day time.	잇다금 낮잠 자오.

## 2.

Sometimes one does not know what to do.	엇던 새는 엇더케 하여야 요흔 넌지 모르오.
Sometimes she sings even better than she did to-night.	엇던 새는 오늘 밤 보다 노래를 쏘 더 잘 하오.
Sometimes I half suspect we have made a mistake.	엇던 새는 내 생각에 우리 들이 실슈 혼듯 하오.
When we were in Japan last year, it sometimes rained for four or five days in succession.	샹년에 일본 잇술 새 엇던새에는 닛서를 날 마다 비 왔소.

## 3.

I eat rice sometimes.	밥 먹는 새 잇소.
He comes sometimes in the mornings.	아침에 오는 새 잇소.

Sometimes I cannot sleep    밤 쉬도록 안 자는 때  
all night.    잇소.

Sometimes not one of the    날 마다 비호는 거슬 아는  
boys knows his lesson.    으히가 하나도 업는 때  
잇소.

### SEC. 6.—SELDOM.

Seldom—**별노** followed by the negative.

I seldom have a cold.    나는 감기가 별노 아니 드오.

I seldom smoke in the    나는 집에서 담배 별노 아니  
house.    먹소.

I have seldom seen him of    이수이는 그 사람을 별노  
late.    만나지 못 하엿소.

### SEC. 7.—NEVER, EVER.

#### 1 Temporal:—

(a.) On no occasion, not once—**제** or **때** with the relative participle. If emphatic, **흔 번도** may be used.

(b.) Invariably not—**언제든지**, followed by the negative.

(c.) At no future time—**아모 때 이라도** with the negative.

(d.) Never before—**그전 에는** with the negative.

#### 2 Emphatic:—

(a.) Not at all—**아조, 도모지**, with the negative.

(b.) Positively not—**일덩코, 작덩코**, with the negative.

(c.) Under no circumstances whatever:—**세상 업서 도, 암만 하여 도** and the like with the negative.

1. (a).

I never had toothache till I was twenty.	갓스물 되기까지는 치통이 한번도 업섯소.
I have never ridden in a chair.	보고 한번도 아니 렀소.
This grass has never been cut.	이 풀은 깎아 본제가 업소.
Does small-pox ever prevail in Korea?	조선에도 역질이 성한 새가 잇소?
Have you ever been robbed?	도적 마자 본제가 잇소?
Had you ever been to Sēoul befere you met me?	나 만나기 전에 서울 와 본제가 잇섯소?

1. (b).

Some people never get up till seven or eight o'clock.	언제 던지 칠팔 시 전에는 니러나지 안는 사람 도 잇소.
Do you never take sugar in your tea?	언제 던지 차에 사탕 노코 안잡수오?
I never take wine.	언제던 지 술 안 먹소.

1. (c).

Will murderers who have escaped by bribery never be punished?	돈 드리고 도망한 살인 죄인은 아모 새 라도 잡지 안겟소?
I will never see him again.	아모 새 라도 다시 안 보 겿소.
The soul can never die.	령혼이 아모 새 라도 죽 지못 하겟소.

## 1. (d).

I never saw such flowers before. 그 전에는 그런 꽃 못 보았소.

Did you never understand it before? 그 전에는 몰랐소?

## 2. (a).

Are diamonds never found in Korea? 조선 서는 금강석이 도모지 아니 나요?

I never see him now. 지금 도모지 못 보오.

Korean ladies never go out. 조선 부인 들이 도모지 출입 아니 하오.

## 2. (b).

I shall never love any one so much again. 내가 작당코 아모 사람 이라도 다시 그리케 스랑 하지 안겟소.

I will never give him another cash. 다시는 작당코 혼 푼도 아니 주 겟소.

Never do a thing like that again. 다시는 일당코 그런 일 마라.

I can never consent to such a thing as that. 그런 일은 일당코 허락할 수 업소.

## 2. (c).

He can never study Japanese. 세상 업서도 일본 말 공부할 수 업겟소.

He can never live unless he takes medicine. 약먹기 전에는 세상 업서 도 살수 업소.

I believe I'll never be able to learn Korean. 나는 암만 하여도 조선 말을 비할수 업을 것 겐소.



You'll never find it without 불 업시는 암만 하여도  
a light. 차질 수 업소리이다.

Can you never forgive him? 암만 하여도 용서 할수  
업소?

## SEC. 8.—AGAIN.

1 Another time—또 or 다시.

2 Once more—또한번.

3 To do over; again—새로 or 꺾쳐.

## 1.

I'll call again.

또 오리이다.

Be sure and call again.

부디 또 오시오.

Do not do that again.

다시 그 것 하지 마라.

It just stopped raining, and  
it is raining again.

비가 꺾쳤다가 또 오오.

## 2.

Sing that song again.

또 한번 그 노래 하시오.

If you don't understand I  
will explain it again.

모르시면 또 한번 빌너  
드리리이다.

## 3.

You will have to do it over  
again.

새로 하여야 쓰겟소.

You will have to iron these  
clothes again.

그 옷을 꺾쳐 다루리 질  
하여야 쓰겟소.

The legs of this table are  
not alike, you must make  
it over again.

이 상 두리가 꺾지 아니  
하니 꺾쳐 문득라야  
쓰겟소.

## SEC. 9.—WHEN.

1 Interrogative:—

(a.) At what time—언제, 어느새.

(b.) Until what time—언제까지, 어느때까지.

How long—얼마.

(c.) About when—언제나, 어느때쯤.

(d.) At what hour—어느시.

## 2 Relative:—

(a.) At the time—때 or 적 with relative participle.

(b.) By the time—때및처서 with relative participle.

(c.) After the time—후 with relative participle; sometimes 거든 will be used with one of the simple tenses.

### 1. (a).

When did you write this letter? 이런지를 언제 썼소?

When do you intend going to Chemulpo? 제물포 에 어느때 가랴고 하오?

When would you like it to be done? 언제 하면 공의 묵음에 맞 겠소?

When was that? 그 것 언제 일 이오?

When did foreigners come to Korea? 언제 부터 외국 사람이 조선에 왔소?

When did Keuija live? 귀주가 어느때 사름 이오?

### 1. (b).

Till when can you wait? 어느때 까지 기다리겠소?

How much longer can you wait? 어느때 까지나 더 기다리 겠소?

About how much longer do you intend to be in Sëoul? 서울 얼마나 더 계실 경 영이오?

### 1. (c).

About when will it be done? 언제나 되겠소?

[illegible]

장마가 어느새 즈음 시작  
하오?

1. (d).

When shall I wake you Sir? 어느시에 켜여 드리오리  
잇가?

어느시에 석여 드리오리  
잇가?

When do you retire?      어느시에 귀침 하시느니  
   잇가?

어느시에 귀침 하시느니  
잇가?

When do you tiffin?      어느시에    점심    잡수시  
                                     누너 잇가?

어느시에 덤심 잡수시  
누니 헛가?

2. (a).

Which of the boys was it that answered when you called? 부를적에 대답 하던 히가 누구요?

부를 적에 대답 하던 이  
히가 누구요?

I will send word when I write to Chemulpo? 제물포 편지 흘새에 기별  
알겠소?

제물포 편지 흘새에 기별  
할것소?

When the Japanese ambassador comes will he go to see the King?

일본 대신이 드리 올때 대군주를 뵈오러 가겠소?

일본 대신이 드리 올새  
대군쥬를 뵈오러 가  
겟소?

He broke it just when it was about done.      막 다 될만할 때에 켜트  
렸소.

막 다 될만흔 새에 씨트  
렸소.

What did he say when he was arrested?      잡혔을 때에 무슨 말을 했습니까?

잡혔실 때에 무어시라고  
호흡더니잇가?

2. (b).

It will certainly be done when you come. 오실 때 밋쳐서 덩녕 다 되 겠소.

오실 때 밋쳐서 덩녕 다  
되 겐소.

The letters must all be written by the time the postman comes.

테전부 을새 밋쳐서 편  
지를 다 써 두어야  
쓰겟소.

## 2. (c).

When you have swept and dusted the room shut the door. 방을 다 쓸고 훑친 후에 문 닫아라.

When Sou Dongi comes back, tell him to put these jars in the box. 슈동이 온 후에 이 항아리 들을 궤에 너라고 하오.

When this sugar is gone I will buy more. 이 사탕이 다 업거든 더 사겟소.

## SEC. 10.—WHILE.

While—동안에, 사이에, 적에.

While the chair coolies were eating we climbed the mountain. 보교군이 밥 먹을 동안에 우리가 산에 올라 갔소.

While I was in the country I studied hard. 식골 잇솔 적에 공부 만히 하엿소.

Please do not talk just now while I am writing a letter. 지금 나 편지 쓸 적에 잔 소탕 말아 주오.

While I was standing in front of the monastery, a priest came out. 절 압헤 섰실 동안에 중이 나왔 소옵더이다.

A while ago, while we were coming it was very cold. 아싸 올 적에 미우 춥소 옵더이다.

While you are studying do not play. 공부 할적에 작란 하지 마오.

## SEC. 11.—As.

1 When—, 적에, 제, 때에.

2 Indicating simultaneous action—면서 affixed to verbal stem.

3 Taking advantage of the opportunity—**길에** with relative participle.

4 On the way—**다가** with verbal stem. **길에** may also be used here. **다가** indicates an interruption and often something unexpected.

1.

Do the men-of-war always fire a salute as they leave port?      **군함이 항구에 나갈 때 마다 레포를 쏘소?**

We got home just as it began to rain.      **비가 막 올때에 집에 도라 왔소.**

The postman came just as I was finishing my letter.      **편지를 다 막 못칠 때에 데전부 왔스옵더 이다.**

2.

I will read as I ride.      **를 타고 가면서 보겠소.**

As you read, notice carefully the writing of the characters.      **읽으면서 글씨 쓴 거슬 자세히 보겠소.**

According to Korean custom they do not talk as they eat.      **조선 법에는 밥 먹으면서 말 아니 하오.**

3.

As you are going to Chong No, call chair coolies.      **종로 가는 길에 교꾼 불너라.**

As you are mending it, you had better put in a new lock.      **긔치는 길에 새 잠을쇠 사지 두면 되겠다.**

As you are going home, please call there.      **집에 가는 길에 거기 좀 돈너 가오.**

## 4.

As we sailed up the river 강에 올라 가다가 삼리서  
we stopped at Samkai. 지체 하였소.

He told me that story as 송도 가다가 그 이야  
we went to Song Do. 기 하였소.

As I was going to the 대궐 가다가 종로에서  
palace I met Mr. Yi at 리서방을 만났소.  
Chong No.

As I was coming up to 서울 올라 오다가 오리  
Sëoul I stopped at Ori- 끌서 머물렀소.  
cole.

## SEC. 12.—THEN.

1. At that time,—그때, 그때에, 그때는.
2. Till that time,—그때까지.
3. By that time,—그때에, (*indefinite*) 그때 즈음.
4. After that time,—그후 or 그때부터.
5. At that point,—그다음.

## 1.

Will you be here then? 그 때에 여기 있겠소?  
Then there were Buddhist 그 때에는 절이 팔도에  
Monasteries in all the 잇섯소.  
provinces.

The people paid their taxes 그 때에 백성 들이 구실  
in rice then. 을 쌀노 바쳤소.

## 2.

Leave it here till then. 그 때 까지 여기 두오.  
I will be at home till then. 그 때 까지 집에 있겠소.  
We had better give it up 그 때 까지 그만 두는 거  
till then. 시 요겠소.

3.

Then the boys will be old enough to work for themselves. 그 새에 으히가 제 손으로 버러 먹을 만콸크겡소.

Then there will be rail-roads. 그새 즈음 털로가 잇겡소.

Will you be ready then? 그 새 즈음 다 준비가 되겡소?

4.

Then the wind blew so hard, we could not go and came back. 그 후는 바람이 대단히 여셔 가지 못 하고 도라왔소.

Then we got in a boat and went to see the fire works. 그 후에 비를 등고 승괴전 구경 하러 갔섯소.

Then I will go to the palace. 그 후에 대궐에 드리갓소.

Then I studied. 그 후 브럼 내가 공부 하엿소.

From then on I stayed here. 그 후 브럼 여긔 잇섯소.

5.

What did you say then? 그 다음 무어시 라고 하엿소?

Then I asked him another question. 그 다음 다른 말을 무리 보앗소.

SEC. 13.--Now.

1. At the present time:

(a.) Definite, 시방, 지금.

(b.) Indefinite, 근럭, 근일, 이수이, 요수이.

2. Now as opposed to formerly—the same with 눈.

3. By this time already,—인제.

4. Next,—이듬에.

5. Than before,—전보다 or 아싸보다.

1. (a).

Is not Mr. Song in Korea now?      지금 송서방이 조선에 업소?

He is out at present, Sir.      지금 출입 하엿 수읍는 이다.

We are just out of it now.      시방 못춤 다 췌소.

Kerosene is very high now.      시방 석유가 락우 비싸호

1. (b).

There are a good many mad dogs about now.      근럭 밋친 개가 만흔 모양 이호.

Nobody seems to make much money now.      근일에는 누구 던지 리 늑기지 못 하는 모양 이호.

It is very dear now.      요수이 대단이 비싸호.

2.

Nowadays Koreans don't wear the large hat.      이수이는 조선 사름이 큰 갓술 쓰지 아니 호호.

The Japanese government tolerates Christianity nowadays.      이수이는 일본 정부에서 예수교 하는 거술 모 르는 테호호.

3.

Most of them will have been sold by this time.      인제 거워 다 팔앗 겿소 .



Your house must be about done now.

공의 집 역소는 이제 다  
못찾실 듯 하오.

It's too late now.                      인제 느꼈소.

It would be useless to send 의원 부러러 보내여 도  
for the doctor now. 인제 쓸티 업소.

You had better apologize now.

인제는 사죄  
할것소.

They will probably be here **인제** **곧** **올** **듯** **하**오.  
directly now.

It is boiled enough now.      인제 다 삶엇 겠다.

Tea will be ready directly **인제 차가 곧 다 되겠소.**  
now.

## 4.

Sou Pongi will recite now. 이 다음에 슈봉이 외호  
것소.

We will read Chinese now. 우리들이 이 다음에 진서  
비호겠소.

5.

The tide is running out more rapidly now. 아싸 보다 조슈가 더 세  
르게 나가오.

I am in much better health now. 전 보다 내 몸이 더 편  
하오.

We are having less rain 전보다 비 덜 오오.  
now.

SEC. 14.—ALREADY.

1. At the time spoken of,—**임의**, 발서.

2. Prior to the time spoken of,—이왕.

3. Equivalent to *so soon* expressive of surprise,—  
어느새.

Note.—With this last 발서 also may be used.

## 1.

The wind has already begun to blow.

발서 바람이 불기 시작  
하엿소.

I have already applied for a passport.

임 의 빙 표를 청구 하  
엿소.

He says he has been waiting for about an hour already.

발서 한시 동안 이나 기  
득렸다고 하옵더이다.

I was going to give the shoemaker a blowing up, but they were already done.

갓밧치를 꾸지지랴고 하  
엿더니 발서 다 몬드렸  
수옵더이다.

I have had plenty already.

발서 그만 먹엇소.

## 2.

As I have already explained several times.

이왕 여러번 닐넛 거니와.

He has already declined two or three times.

이왕 이삼츠나 슬 하고  
하옵더이다.

## 3.

Have you finished already?

어느 수이 다 하엿소?

Have they come already?

어느 수이 왔소?

Are the cherry trees in blossom already?

어느 수이 벚 꽃치 피  
엿소?

## SEC. 15.—FORMERLY, USED TO.

Formerly, used to—근본, 전에, 더거번에.

Formerly all ships were made of wood.

근본 비를 다 나모로  
몬드렸소

There used to be no jin-rikshas in Korea.

조선에 근본은 인력거가  
업섯소.

It used to be thought that. 전에 히가 쌍을 도는  
the sun went round the 줄 알았소.  
earth.

There used to be a temple 데거번에 여기 절이 있  
here. 었소.

Formerly foreigners could 이전 예는 외국 사림들이  
not live in S oul. 서울서 살지 못했소.

## SEC. 16.—HITHERTO.

Hitherto—이때까지, 지금까지.

Where have you lived 이때까지 어디서 살  
hitherto? 았소?

What have you studied 이때까지 무엇이 공부  
hitherto? 했소?

As I have lived without 지금까지 고기 안 먹고  
eating meat hitherto, I 살았으니 안 먹겠소.  
will not eat it now.

## SEC. 17 —RECENTLY, OF LATE.

Recently, of late,—이사이, 근럭, 접새.

Have you read any new 근럭 무슨 새책 이나  
books lately? 읽었소?

The government has re- 정부 예서 이사이 새로  
cently built a new cus- 히관을 지었소.  
tom house.

Did I not see you lately in 접새 일본서 보지 아니  
Japan? 했소?

The king has not come out 이사이논 님금 거동 아니  
lately. 했소.

## SEC. 18.—AGO.

I. Ago—전, 전에.

2. Long ago,—오래전. The Koreans generally, how-  
ever, render this by the relative participle of the verb,

with 지 or 제 followed by the verb 오라오, *to be long (temporal)*.

3. Several days ago,—일전에.

4. A little while ago,—아싸.

5. Just a minute ago,—인제, 지금, 시방.

## 1.

He died three years ago.

삼년 전에 죽었소.

I wish I had written a month ago.

한 달 전에 편지를 하였  
더면 뉘틀 번 하였소.

How many years ago was Söoul built?

서울이 몇히 전에 되었소?

## 2.

I saw him a long while ago.

오래 전에 보았소.

It was made long ago.

몬든 제가 오라오.

He promised to lend it long ago.

말서 빌니 마고 상약 한  
제가 오라오.

I knew it long ago.

안 지가 오라오,

## 3.

There was a dealer here the other day with some very pretty fans.

일전에 장수가 고흔 붓치  
를 가지고 왔소.

## 4.

I sent him to the office a while ago to mail the letters.

아싸 편지를 보내라고  
우테국 에 보내 었소.

Mr. Kim was here an hour or two ago with his nephew.

아싸 김서방이 그 족하  
하고 왔수읍더이다.

## 5.

As I told you a minute ago.

인제 말씀 한 대로.

I saw him ride by here a few minutes ago.

지금 이리 두고 지나  
가는 거슬 보았소.

SEC. 19.—JUST NOW.

Just now — 꽃, 꽃시방, 시방, 금방 etc.

I have just been seeing some dancing girls perform.      **곳지금 기생이 춤 추는 거슬 보고 왔소.**

The clock has just struck.      즈명종이 금방 쳤소.

When I've just given him  
one nyang will he ask  
more?

금방 훈양 주엇 눈덕 또  
달나 호호?

SEC. 20.—TILL, YET.

Still, yet—그저, 아직, 아직도.

Are you still sick?                      그제 편치 아소?

This pail isn't full yet. 이 통이 아직 도 차지  
아니 하였소.

Is'nt dinner ready yet?      저녁 아직 도 (그저) 안  
                                     되었소?

SEC. 21.—TILL, UNTIL.

1 Time :—

(a.) Up to— $\lambda_2 \pi$ .

(b.) Before—전에.

2 Degree—도록 with the verbal stem.

1. (a).

Wait till he comes.                    호기 서지 기 드리호.

I read till dark.                   어둡기까지 읽었소.

I must wait till twenty five minutes of five.

네시 삼십오분까지  
기다리여야겠소.

## 1. (b).

I can't go until ten minutes past five.	오시 십분 전에는 가지 못 하겠소.
I can't leave home until the middle of next month.	다음 달 보름 즈음 전에는 집에서 쉴 수 업소.

## 2.

I read till I was tired,	곤한 도록 읽었소.
Don't bend it till it breaks.	부러지 도록 휘지 마오.
He pulled the cat's tail till she bit him.	물니 도록 고양이 꼬리를 잡아 들었소.

## SEC. 22.—BY AND BY.

By and by—잇다가 with future tense for future, and past tense for past time.

By and by bring me some hot water.	잇다가 더운 물 가져 오너라.
---------------------------------------	---------------------

By and by go to the post- office for me.	잇다가 우체국에 다녀 주오.
---	--------------------

By and by let's study.	잇다가 공부 하읍시다.
------------------------	--------------

By and by we met a chair.	좀 잇다가 교관을 만났소.
---------------------------	----------------

There were no chair coolies in Chemulpo, and as it was hard to walk up, by and by having met a jin- riksha on the way, I rode up.	제물포에 교관이 업서서 거리 올라 오기에 미우 어렵더니 좀 잇다가 길에서 인력거를 만나 서 타고 올라 왔소.
--	--

## SEC. 23.—SOON.

1. 쉬 or 쉬이 or some such phrase as 일간, 오라 지 아니 하여, 얼마 아니 하여 etc.

2. As soon as :—The verbal stem with 면서, followed by such a word as 곧, 즉시, etc. Whether past, present

or future, the verbal stem is used, and the time marked by the tense of the principal verb. The same effect will be produced by the use of the copulative conjunctions, in the same way. This idea may also be expressed by use of the relative participle with **대로**.

1.

They say there will soon be a railroad to Sēoul.	쉬이 서울까지 철로를 싼다 하옵더이다.
The steamer will be in soon.	일간 화륜선이 드리 겟소.
We must start soon.	쉬 떠나야 하겟소.
It will stop raining very soon.	비가 곧 멎치겟소.
The rain came down in torrents and soon the roof began to leak.	비가 급히 쏟아지더니 얼마 아니 하여서 집안이 쇠기 시작 하엿소.
Supper will soon be ready.	오라지 아니 하여서 저 녁 다 되겟소.
I will soon go to America to study.	오라지 아니 하여서 미국 으로 공부 하러 드리 가겟소.

2.

I take a bath as soon as I get up.	니러나 면서 즉시 목욕 한다.
As soon as they get on board they begin to smoke.	화륜선에 오르 면서 즉시 담배 먹기를 시작 하호.
He died as soon as he heard it.	드르 면서 곧 죽엿소.
As soon as he took the medicine he got better.	약 먹으 면서 즉시 낫 섯소.

I'll go as soon as I have 저녁 먹고 곧 자겠소.  
dined.

I'll have a bath as soon as 목욕 물이 다 되는 대로  
it's ready. 곧 오겠소.

SEC. 24.—DIRECTLY, AT ONCE.

Presently—지금. 시방, etc., may be used : immediately  
—즉시, 곧, 곧지금 etc., will be needed.

I'll come directly. 지금 오겠소.

The bell will ring directly. 인제 인경 치겠소.

Let me know what he says 그 사람이 무엇이 라고  
immediately. 하느 거슬 곧 괴별 하오

Serve breakfast at once. 아침 곧 올너라.

Send that man away at 그 사람 즉시 내어 보  
once. 내라.

SEC. 25.—BEFORE.

전에. The same word is used with nouns or verbs, but  
the English verb limited by *before*, takes the form of the  
verbal noun in 기.

1.

We must start before ten. 열시 전에 떠나야 하겠소.

Let us have tiffin before we 떠나기 전에 점심 먹읍  
go. 시다.

I can't start for the country 우편 편지가 오기 전에  
before the mail comes in. 식물 떠나지 못 하겠소.

I want to speak to him be- 저주에 가기 전에 말 좀  
fore he goes to market. 하고 십소.

SEC 26.—AFTER, SINCE.

1 With a verb or noun—후에. The verb limited by  
*after*, takes the form of the past relative participle and



precedes 후에. (Quite often this same idea is expressed by the simple verbal stem, with the conjunction 고.

2 Afterwards may be expressed by 후에는, 그후에 etc.

3 Signifying *past*—by a from of the verb 지나오 (to pass).

## 1.

It began to rain after we passed Oricole. 오리골 지난 후에 비가 시작 하였소.

After the war was over, most of the troops returned to China. 싸움이 지난 후에 군수들이 거위 다 중국으로 도라 갔소.

After you've seen to all the doors, put out the light. 문 다 슬퍼 본 후에 불을 끄소.

Four or five days after I came to Söul I was taken sick. 서울 올라 온 후 수요일에 병이 났소.

The road dried an hour after the rain stopped. 비가 멎친지 한 시 후에 길이 물났소.

Everything looks beautiful after the rain. 비 후에는 무엇이든지 다 묘하소.

I can not go after the last of the month. 금음 후에 못 가겠소.

I will come after I have written the letter. 편지를 쓰고 오리이다.

I will come after dinner. 점심 먹고 가리이다.

## 2.

Afterwards we moved to Pyeng Yang. 후에는 평양으로 이소 하였소.

He was better for a while, but afterwards he became worse. 좀 낫다가 후에는 더하엿소.



I didn't understand that 그 거슬 모른지가 오랫동안.  
for a long while.

2. (a).

It will be a long time before you can talk like a 오라지 안코 셔는 조선  
Korean. 사름 처럼 말 못 하오  
리이다.

It will be a long time before a railroad will be 오라 지 안코 셔는 합흥  
laid to Ham Heung. 사지 털로가 깔너지  
못 할 듯하오.

2. (b).

It was a long while before 우리가 집에 안 도라 간  
we went home. 지가 오랫동안.

It was a long while before 우리들이 친구 안 된  
we became friends. 지가 오랫동안.

Was it a long while before 외국 사름이 일본 식골  
foreigners could travel 아모 되라도 듣너지  
anywhere in the interior 못흔 제가 오랫동안  
of Japan? 니릿가?

It was long before the 그 나라 란리가 덩돈  
country recovered from 되지 아닌 지가 미우  
the effects of the war. 오랫동안.

It was a long while before 병이 패차 하지 아닌  
I recovered completely. 지가 미우 오랫동안.

Was it a long while before 조선 사름과 말하지 못흔  
you could talk with Ko- 지가 오랫동안  
reans? 잇가?

He died long before you 로형 날째에 그사름 죽은  
were born. 지는 오랫동안.

SEC. 28.—SOME TIME.

The Korean interrogatives being at the same time

indefinites, *some time* will be rendered by 얼마, and the context alone shows whether it is interrogative or indefinite.

Will you be in Sēoul for 서울 얼마 계시 겐소?  
some time?

I shall probably not see 인제 얼마 못 뵈을 듯  
you for some time now. 호오.

It will take some time to 그 것 다 못치기에 얼마  
finish it. 더 가겐소.

I waited some time, but 얼마 기다렸 겐 마는 아  
nobody came. 모도 아니왔소.

#### SEC. 29.—A LITTLE WHILE.

A little while—잠간, 조금, 조금동안에, etc.

You need'nt go for a little 아직 조금 동안에 갈것  
while yet. 업소.

Wait a minute. 조금 기다리오.

Tell him to wait a little. 잠간 기다리라고 하여라.

#### SEC. 29.—FINALLY, AT LAST.

Finally, at last—나중예, 양중예, 필경. 나중 means simply *in the end*, while 필경 refers to *delay*, and something happening after much waiting.

At last the chair men came. 나중예야 교군군이 왔소.

Finally we got to the top. 나중예 꼭닥이에 올 나갔  
소.

At last, little by little I 필경 조금씩 조금씩 알아  
came to understand. 내혔소.

Finally he consented. 필경히락 하혔소.

At last the Italians were 필경 이다리가 이기 읍더  
victorious. 이다.

We walked everywhere and 수면 돈니 다가 나중예  
finally went to Chong No. 종로에 갔소.

At last he got angry.

나중에 (양중에) 성이  
났소.

### § III.—ADVERBS OF CAUSE, MANNER AND DEGREE.

Adverbs of manner derived from adjectives etc. are not treated of here.

#### SEC. 1.—WHY.

Why—왜, 엇지 하여 or by some circumlocution.

Why are the Japanese leaving Sēoul? 왜 일본 사람이 서울을  
떠나오?

Why does wood float and iron sink? 왜 나무는 뜨고 쇠는  
갈아 안소?

Then why do not you tell him to do it again? 그러 하면 왜 다시 하라고  
닐으지 안소?

Why did you pick those roses? 엇지 하여 더 월계 섯출  
섯소?

Why do Korean women when they go out cover their faces with the green coat? 엇지 하여서 조선 상녀편  
네 들이 출입 흘적에  
장옷 수로 얼굴을 가리  
우오?

Why do not you build your house of wood? 무슨 석돌 으로 집을  
나모로 짓지 아니 하오?

Why did he say he would-  
n't go? 무슨 석돌에 가지 안켓  
다고 하옵더니잇가?

#### SEC. 2.—ACCORDINGLY, CONSEQUENTLY, THEREFORE.

These are rendered by—그런고로, 그리하여서, 그사들에, 이러하기에, etc.

Accordingly I did so. 그런 고로 그리 하였소

Accordingly he went to the Kyeng Ou Kung. 그리 하여서 경우궁 으로  
갔소.

Consequently they changed the law. 그 법률에 법을 꾀쳤소.

It rained for three days without stopping, and consequently all the bridges were swept away. 사흘을 비가 줄 곳 오기에 두리가 다 업서 졌소.

Breakfast was fifteen minutes earlier than usual today, and consequently we couldn't eat together. 오늘 아침이 그 전 보다 일은 사흘 으로 우리가 밋쳐 참예 하지 못하 였소.

### SEC. 3.—How.

1. Interrogative,—엇더케 or some form of the verb 엇더하오.

2. The way in which,—participle with 겠.

Note.—How, with verbs of *knowing*, etc., may often be rendered into Korean by the future participle with 줄아오.

#### 1 & 2.

How is the road from here to Eui Ju? 여기서 의췌 가기 사지 길 이 엇덜 수옵 더니 잇가.

How do they make Kan-chang? 간장을 엇더케 문드오.

Do you know how they print photographs? 사진을 엇더케 박는 줄 아오.

Did you hear how your friend was killed? 내 친구가 엇더케 죽엇단 말 드렸소.

Before he came to Sēoul he did not even know how to hold a pen. 셔울 오기 전에 붓도 잡을 줄 몰랐소.

Does that carpenter know 목슈가 쇠덕쇠덕 하는

how to make rocking chairs? 교의 문들줄 아오?

He knows how to construct a sentence, but he does not know the pronunciation. 말 마디는 엇더케 문들줄 알것 마는 음은 몰나.

It is very strange how a snake crawls. 비암이 기는 거시 미우이상 하오.

Please teach me how to hold my pen. 붓 잡는 거슬 좀 가르쳐주오.

## SEC. 4.—So.

## 1 Manner:—

(a.) In this manner—이러하오.

(b.) In that manner—{그러하오.  
더러하오.

## 2 Degree:—

(a) In this degree—이러게.

(b.) In that degree—{그러게.  
더더게.

Note.—For the distinctive difference, between **더** and **그**, see Part I ¶71 ff.

3 So that, so—as,—**도록**, and the forms of the verb **알소** with **와**.

## 1.

Be sure and not do it so, do it so. 부디 그러케 말고 이러케 하오.

If that's your opinion, why do not you say so? 만일 생각이 그러 하면 왜 말 하지 안소?

That's so. 그러 하오.

I thought so. 그런 줄 알앗소.

## 2.

Tell that man not to make the shelves so high. 그 사람 두려 탁자를 그  
러케 높히 만들지 말  
나고 하오.  
It would have been well if you had not been quite so  
hasty. 그러케 성급하게 아니  
하엿 더면 도왔지요.

## 3.

It is so bright that it hurts my eyes. 빛치 눈이 압흐 도록  
붉소.  
It was so hot that the grass withered. 풀이 마르 도록 더웠소.  
He is so tall that he looks awkward. 보기 실 도록 키 크오.  
That is not as good as this. 그것 이것 파 갓치 도치  
아니 하오.  
I don't go to Chemulpo as often as I used to. 전파 갓치 자주 제물포  
아니 간다.

## SEC. 5.—LIKE, AS.

## 1 Manner:—

(a.) In a similar way,—처럼 or 갓치.

(b.) In the way,—대로.

(c.) To be like; and like used as an adjective will be rendered by 갓하오 in its various forms. 갓하 prefix to 처럼 has the force of *exactly*, and 똑 also has this effect.

*Like this* is 이런, *like that* 그런 or 더런.

## 2 Degree—처럼 or 와갓치.

## 1. (a).

If I could do as you do, I would be glad. 나도 꼭처럼 하엿 시면  
도왔소.



I should hate to work like a coolie.	일군 처럼 일 하기는 슬소.
He lives like a king.	님금 처럼 사옵는이다.
He dresses like a Chinaman but he talks like a Japanese.	중국 사람 처럼 옷술 님엇 것 만는 일본 사람 처럼 말하호.

1. (b.)

As I have already said.	내가 발서 브러 말하는 대로.
Try and repeat the conversation just as you heard it.	드룬대로 말을 음겨보호.
Why didn't you put out your light last night as you were told?	웨 닐은 대로 밤에 불을 쓰지 아니 하엿느냐?
Make it round like this.	이대로 둥글게 문드오.
Just like this.	썩 이 대로.

1. (c.)

Are the Japanese iron-clads exactly like the English?	일본 철갑선 도 영길리 것 파 썩 죠소?
Have you any silk like this?	이런 명쥬 잇소.
Have you any silk exactly like this?	이 것 파 썩 죠흔 명쥬가 잇소?
Pens like this are useless.	이 것과 죠흔 붓 쓸 티 업소?

2.

When one is thirsty there is nothing like water.	목 마를 썬에 물 처럼 도흔 것 업소.
Is Nam San as high as Sam Kak San?	남산이 삼각 산 파 죠치 높소?

Go as quick as you can to the house and tell Sou Dongi to go for the doctor.  
아모 조록 썰니 집에 가서 슈동이 드려 의원을 청하라고 날너라.

## SEC. 6.—VERY.

1 In affirmative sentences,—**미우**, **대단이**, **파히**, **금직이**, **심히**, etc.

2 In negative sentences except when interrogative,—**그리**.

## 1.

This pen is very bad.	이 붓시 미우 피악 하오.
I will be very busy in the morning	리일 아침에는 미우 바투 겐쇼.
He was very sick but he is better now.	대단이 알려니 지금은 좀 낫쇼.
It is very cold.	대단이 춥쇼.
It is very dear.	파히 비싸오.

## 2.

The sky is not very clear to-day.	오늘 하늘이 그리 청명치 못하오.
It is not very good.	그리 요치 안쇼.
They do not like each other very much.	그리 요혼 수이 아니오.
That fan was not very dear.	그 붓처가 그리 비싸지 아니 하옵더이다.
It is not very cold in Sëoul in winter,	서울이 겨울에 그리 춥지 안쇼.

## SEC. 7.—ONLY.

- 1 Only—**만**, **썰**. **오직**, **단**, **다만**.
- 2 Preceded by if,—**만** with the conditional.
- 3 Not later than, yet,—**아직** ; **바꾸** with negative.
- 4 Not until,—**계우**.

1.

It's only a dog barking.	개가 지질 썬일다.
As I only came as company for you, why do you want to quarrel with me?	동협 으로 올 썬 인디 웨 나하코 싸호랴고 하오?
I go to Chemulpo only once or twice a month.	훈 들에 제물포 가기는 훈 두번 썬이오.
He not only wears a sword but he knows how to use it.	다만 칼 찻실썬 아니라 쓸 줄 도 아오.
How is it this jinriksha has only one wheel?	이 인력거가 웨 박취 하나 썬이오?
Only half the number I ordered have come.	맞초인 수에 다만 반만 왔소.
Mr. Kim has only one brother.	김셔방 단 형데 썬이오.
I expected only twenty, but about forty came.	이십 명 만 올줄 알앗더니 스십 명 왔소.

2.

If we only had a good cat, we could catch these rats	도흔 고양이 만 잇더면 이 쥐를 잡앗겄소.
If you only use moderation, there will probably be no difficulty.	알맞게 만 하면 어려울 것 업 솔듯 하오.

3.

To-day is only the fifth.	오늘 다섯 밧기 아니 되엿소.
Why it's only three o'clock.	무얼 아직 세 시오.
He's only a child.	아직 어린거 시오.
Your letter reached me only yesterday.	공의 편지가 어저석 계우 왔소.

## 4.

## SEC. 8.—TOO.

1 Too—너무, 파히, etc., with the adjective.

2 Too...to—너무 with the past verbal participle followed by the negative.

## 1.

This pencil is too soft.

이 연필 파히 (너무) 연  
하오.

This bottle is too small.

이 병 파히 (너무) 작소

Are not your ceilings a little  
too high?

천장이 파히 높지 안소.

This is a little too much.

이 거시 좀 파하오.

## 2.

These clothes are too dirty  
to wear.

이 옷시 너무 더러워서  
 입을 수 업소.

Pine is too brittle to make a  
cane.

쇼나모는 너무 연하여서  
 집힘이 할 수 업소.

His talk is too low to hear.

말 소리가 너무 낮아서  
 드를 수 업소.

## SEC. 9.—EVEN.

1 Even—도, or more strongly 이라도 affixed to its word.

2 Signifying, *even including*,—까지.

## 1.

Even a child can do that.

어린 하히 라도 그 거슨  
 하오.

Even Soun Yongi can read  
Chinese pretty well.

쑤용이 라도 제법 진서를  
 볼 줄아오.

Even to-morrow will do.

리일 이라도 하겠소.

He hasn't even eaten rice  
to-day.

오늘 밥 도 아니 먹으  
습 더이다.

Soun Yongi didn't even sweep the room this morning.

If I walk even one ri I get very tired. 일 리라도 걸어가면 대단히 곤혹호.

## 2.

They killed even the children. 어린 으히 심지어 죽  
이엇소.

SEC. 10.—ALMOST.

1 Nearly—거위.

2 Nearly all, the most of—거위 다 거받, 거받다.

1.

It's almost twelve o'clock.      거워 십이 시호.

It's almost a year since I went to Pyeng Yang. 평양 갔다 온지가 겨우 일년 이호.

My horse stumbled, and I      물이 압   두리를 쓸어서  
almost fell off.                      거위 켜리졌소.

## 2.

The rain water is almost 비 물이 거반 업서 져소.  
gone.

Almost every one in the 집 한 사람 거반 다 감기  
house has a cold. 드렸소.

Almost all the apples were rotten. 사과가 거의 다 썩었소.

Nearly all our sugar was stolen. 우리 사탕 거위 다 도적  
마작호.

I am home almost every afternoon.

오후 하면 거위 흥상 집  
에 있소.

## SEC. 11.—ABOUT

Approximately—**흔** preceding the quantity or number, or **즈음** sometimes contracted into **즘**, or **나** following it. At times both these may be used, the one preceding and the other following the quantity referred to.

About how much will it cost? **얼마 나 된 듯 호오?**

You had better put in about ten pounds and boil it about half an hour. **흔 열근 너코 반시 간 즈음 쓰리는 거시 요켓다.**

I waited about half an hour, and then called a chair and went home. **흔반시 간 기다리 다가 교군을 불너 득고 집으로 갔소.**

He is about five feet high and weighs about a hundred pounds. **그가 키는 흔 오척되고 무게는 백근 즈음 되오.**

It's about twice as large as ours. **우리 것 보다 흔 곱절 되엿소**

## CHAPTER VIII.

## NUMERALS.

With reference to numerals little need here be said. In treating of them from the Korean, they have virtually at the same time, been considered from the foreign standpoint. We then saw that Korean numerals might be either adjectives or substantives. When used substantively they stand in apposition to the noun they limit, and consequently hold a position much more emphatic, than when used adjectively. Hence, if, when using English numerals, the *number* is the special thing to which attention is to be called, it must be rendered into Korean by the use of the substantive form. If on the other hand, the number is simply secondary, and only mentioned incidentally, and its noun is the principal thought, the adjective form will be used, and it will precede its noun.

In rendering English into Korean, we should also remember, the Korean constant use of "Specific Classifiers." Many of these cannot be rendered into English and consequently when we render English into Korean, if we would speak idiomatic Korean, the proper classifier must be introduced. A careful study of these classifiers must then be made.

It has been noticed, that there are two classes of numerals, pure Korean, and Sinico-Korean, and while they may be used interchangeably, it must not be forgotten, that where a Sinico-Korean numeral is used a corresponding Sinico-Korean noun must also accompany it.

While the importance of this rule may not at first sight appear to the student, its neglect is altogether wrong, grates upon Korean ears, and will cause the offender to be regarded as ignorant of one of the fundamental rules of Korean etymology. With reference to ordinals and fractions, enough has already been said in Part I.

Right in this place, we should speak of the method of addressing a letter. In this matter, the Korean is more logical than the foreigner ; his plan is the reverse of ours, for instance, he would begin with the country then the province, city, ward, street, and end with the name of the party addressed.

As sentences illustrating the use of the numerals, occur everywhere throughout the book, none need be given here.

---



## CHAPTER IX.

## THE PREPOSITION.

The English prepositions may be rendered into Korean generally by Korean postpositions, simple or composite; verbal participles; phrases; or, where the sense is clear without, they need not be rendered. From this it will be seen that the Korean equivalent of an English preposition, will always follow the word it governs.

## SEC. 1.—AT.

1 Signifying place:—

(a.) With a verb of situation—에.

(b.) With a verb of action—에서 or simply 서.

2 Referring to time—에.

1. (a).

There used to be temples 서울에 근본 절이 잇섯소.  
at Seoul.

Are there no tombs of the 왕씨 때 룡이 송도에  
Whang dynasty at Song 업소?  
Do?

I wish there were no mos- 북한에 모기가 업섯 덕면  
quitoes at Pouk Han. 도켓소.

1. (b).

We buy our vegetables at 덕 전 에서 치쇼는 사요.  
that shop.

We stopped at Pyeng Yang 평양서 사흘 류 하엿소.  
three days.

We rested at Oricole. 오리골서 쉬엿소.

## 2.

I got up at half past four 오늘 식전 에는 네시  
this morning. 반에 니러 낫소.

Wake me at sunrise to- 톡일 히 돛기 에 켜워라.  
morrow.

## SEC. 2.—IN.

1 With verbs of situation,—에 which is often used with 드오.

2 With verbs of action,—에서 which may contract into 셔 or 에.

3 Inside of, within, during,—속에, 안희, 에 or 동안.

## 1.

Is there a good hotel in 서울에 도흔 슈막이 잇소?  
Söoul?

There are two or three fine 조선에 도흔 폭포가 두  
water-falls in Korea. 서너 곳 잇소.

Is there anything in the 집 안에 무엇 잇소?  
house? •

Don't sit in a draught. 바람 :모 지 에 안 지  
마라.

What is in that box? 그 궤에 무엇 드렸느냐?

Is there a hole in this tea- 이 차관에 구멍 잇소?  
pot?

## 2.

He probably died at Tokio. 동경서 죽은 듯 하오.

I must have dropped it at 덩녕 종로 에서 썩러  
Chong No. 트린 듯 하오.

How much wine do you suppose is drunk in Söoul in a year?	일년에 서울서 술이얼 마나 먹힐 듯 하오?
You can't get good chairs in the country.	시골 서는 도흔 교군을 엇을수가 업소.
Which is the longest street in Söoul?	서울 서는 어느 길이 그 중 기오?
Which is the largest island in the world?	현하에 엇던 섬이 그중 크오?
It's in the leather trunk, wrapped in paper.	가죽 상자 속에 도희로 싸 너헛소.
I saw a fox in the woods.	수풀 안희 여호를 보앗소.
You can go to Chong No in twenty minutes.	이십 분 동안 에 종로에 가오.
You probably put it in your pocket.	쥬먼이에 너헛 실 듯 하오.

SEC. 3.—ON.

1 On.—에.

2 On the top of, on the surface of,—우희.

Please write "Mr. Kim" on this envelope.	이 피봉에 김씨방 이라고 써주오.
There's a stain on my handkerchief.	내 슈건에 어릉이 젖소.
There's a fly on the ceiling.	현장에 파리가 잇소.
You went home on the first.	초 하로에 집에 갔소.

2.

Is not that a dog sleeping on the floor?	더 마루 우희 자는 거시 개가 아니오?
My hat is on the table.	내 갓 상 우희 잇소.
I dropped a stone on my foot.	발 우희 돌을 쉼러트 렸소.

## SEC. 4.—TO.

1 With animate objects—의게, 안테, or 석, which last is honorific.

2 With inanimate objects—에 or 로; oftentimes also the simple accusative postposition 을 will be used.

3 As far as—까지. (See Part I. 107).

Note—With the indirect object, the postposition is frequently omitted.

## 1.

Give something to the dog. 개 무엇 좀 주오.

Don't lend it to anyone. 그거슬 뉘게 던지 빌너지  
마오.

What did you say to Mr. 송서방석 무슨 말하엿소?  
Song?

Give ten nyang to Mr. 열량 박서방안테 주오.  
Pak.

## 2.

He has gone to Song Do. 송도로 갔소.

In order to see the sights, 티일 경쳐를 보랴고 비  
we are going by boats to 두고 강화를 가오.  
Kang Wha to-morrow.

Would you like to take a 남산에 힘피 하느 거시  
walk to Nam San? 엿더겜소?

## 3.

How much is it to An Dong 안동 까지 안빳 얼 마냐?  
and back?

I went to Pak Dong but I 박동 까지 갔시나 만나지  
didn't meet him. 못 하엿소.

## SEC. 5.—FROM, OUT OF, OFF.

1 Preceding a noun,—브러, 에서.

2 Preceding a verbal noun,—the negative with future verbal participle and 할오.

3 With verbs of receiving accepting, etc., equivalent to *at the hand of*—의게 or 안테 will be used.

4 *Off*, in the sense of *detached from*, is generally expressed by some form of the verb.

5 *Off shore*—압회 or 압회서 dependent upon whether there the accompanying verb is one of situation or action.

## 1.

About how far is it from here to that tree? 여기서 더 나모까지 얼마  
나 되오?

Hang it from the fourth nail on the right. 올흔 편 넷재 못셋서  
거오.

I rode steadily from six in the morning, till six in the evening. 아홉 른시 브러 저녁 른시  
까지 물을 늘 쫓소.

Can you borrow one from next door? 이웃 집에서 빌수 잇소?

Take a pound of sugar out of that box. 더 궤에서 사탕 혼근  
내여라.

Empty it out of this bottle and pour it into that. 이 병 에서 쓰라서 더  
병에 부어라.

Take the books off this table. 책을 이 상 에서 갖다  
노하라.

I fell off my horse and sprained my foot. 내 물 에서 썩러져서  
발을 세엿소.

## 2.

Is there any way of keeping things from moulding? 곰팡 아니 나게 할 수가  
잇소?

Be careful and keep the children from taking cold.    으히 감기 들 지안케 하오.

## 3.

I received fifteen dollars from Mr. Pak.    박서방    안테    은전    열  
다섯 개 받았소.

I got a passport from the minister.    공사의게    빙표    었엇소.

I obtained permission to go to the eastern palace from the president of the foreign office.    동판    대궐    드러 갈    허락을  
독판    안테    었엇소.

## 4.

The leg is off the table.    더    상    다리    가    빠졌소.

The tiles are off the roof.    더    집    용에    기와    가    버서  
졌소.

He took off his clothes.    옷    을    벗엇소.

## 5.

Two large whales were killed off Fusan.    부산    압회서    큰    고래    둘  
잡았소.

Two Chinese men-of-war have been off Chemulpo for over a month.    제물포    압회    중국    병선  
둘이    혼    뜰    넘    도록  
잇소.

## SEC. 6.—BY, THROUGH.

1 Of the agent—의게, 안테, 에. (see Part I. ¶ 101 ff.)

2 Of the instrument, by means of—로 or 으로; or **써** **문**에 which, if the English preposition it represents governs a verbal noun, is preceded by the participle, or verbal noun in **기** of the appropriate verb.

3 Beside—옆히.

4 Of time—에, or more exactly 남지안코.

5 From end to end of—통하야, 통과하야.

## 1.

I had it made by a black-smith. 내가 대장 안테 문드  
릿소.

This book was written by a Korean. 이책 조선 사람 안테  
썼소.

I was struck by a stone. 내가 돌 안테 마쳤소.

I was cut by a knife. 내가 칼로 베티혔소.

## 2.

He went to Tokio by rail. 열로로 동경 갔소.

Let me know by telegraph immediately. 던신 으로 곧 내게 알게  
하여 주오.

Were you not awakened by the earthquake last night? 어제 밤에 디동 으로  
아니 쉬엿소?

I couldn't sleep all night through his crying. 우는 석문에 밤식 도록  
못 잤소.

I lost fifty dollars through Mr. Kim. 김서방 석문에 오십원 일  
렸소.

He lost his whole fortune through the burning of his house. 집 드는 석문에 잇는  
지물 다 일히 브렸소.

He avoided such a mishap by riding on a horse. 물드코 가기석문에 그런  
봉 패가 업섯소.

## 3.

Did you ever stand by a water-fall? 폭포슈 옆히 섰스옵더니  
잇가.

Let's see, you live in the house by the bridge?      로형이 다리 옆에 집에서 살지요 그랴?

This brook runs by our house.      이 내 우리 집 옆에 흐려 가오.

## 4.

It will be ready by noon.      열 두시 에 다 되겠소.  
It may possibly stop raining by evening.      혹 저녁 때에 비가 낄 듯 하오.

The chair must be here by four o'clock.      네시 넘지 안코 보코 여기 잇서야 쓰겠소.

I must start for home by the last of the month.      금음 넘지안코 집에 가기로 켜나야 쓰겠소.

## 5.

I ran through the house.      내가 집을 통하야 드라 왔소.

I rode through a crowd in a jinrikisha.      인력거를 두고 사름 모힌 뒤를 통과 하엿소.

## SEC. 7.—WITH

1 Of the instrument,—로 or 으로.

2 Together with, in company with,—하코; 혼가지로; 궂치; 함씨, 더브러.

3 Belonging to, connected with,—에 or often not rendered.

## 1.

You'd better tie that parcel with a string.      더 짐을 노끈으로 미면 되치오.

Wipe it with a cloth.      슈건으로 씻셔라.

That man writes with his left hand.      그 사름 왼손으로 쓰오.



## 2.

I argued with that man for about an hour.	그 사람 하고 혼시나 힐 난 하였소.
Send the pears along, with the grapes.	포도를 비 하고 보내오.
I put it in the corner with the umbrella.	구석에 우산 하고 두 엇소.
Then I'll go with you.	그리 하면 저녁과 함께 가겠네.
That which is called "Ojun- hoiem" is the king meet- ing with all the officials to consider affairs of state.	어전 회의라 하는 것은 군주가 모든 관리로 더 부러 국사를 의논하 는거시오.
That old man passes the time each day with his many grandchildren.	더로인은 매일 자기의 여러 손자들노 더브러 소일하오.
I came with a Chinaman.	청국사람 파궤치 왔소.
Do you expect to get break- fast and study with me.	나하고 궤치 공부 하게 조반 먹고 오려나.
When I went with Mr. Yi, to engage in trade I saw such sights.	리서방과 혼가지로 무역 하러 갔다가 그런 구경 하였소.
Don't you want to go to Tokyo with me.	나와 혼가지로 동경까지 아느려나.

## 3.

Is there no key with this watch?	이 시계 트리키 업소?
Is there not is a wick with this new lamp?	이 새등 십지가 업소?
Was there not a letter with this box?	이 궤에 편지 업섯소?

## SEC. 8.—WITHOUT.

## 1 Preceding a noun :—

(a.) Not having—**없이** affixed to the noun.(b.) Unless one has—**없수면**.

2 Preceding a verbal noun.—the verbal stem preceded by a negative, connected with the accompanying verb by **고** ; or, the negative base with **안코**, and the accompanying verb. Emphasis is added by the use of **는** after **고** or **코**.

## 1. (a).

This letter came without a stamp. 이 편지가 우표 없이 왔소.

Why did you make it without handles? 왜 손 잡이 없이 만들었소?

These sulphur matches burn without any smell. 이 석류황이 내암새 없이 득호.

Don't go without permission. 허락 없이 가지 마라.

## 1 (b).

You can't open it without a key. 열쇠 없수면 열수 업소

Mr. Kim can't read anything without glasses. 안경 없수면 김서방이 아무 글자 도 못 보겠소.

## 2.

I suppose it wouldn't do for us to go in without taking off our shoes. 아마 신 아니 벗고 집에 드려 가면 묘치 안치오

You must not go without letting me know. 나를 알게 하지 아니 하고는 가지 마라.

- Don't buy sugar without weighing it. 근수를 달지 안코는 사탕을 사지 마라.
- He went without (*taking*) an umbrella. 우산 아니 가지고 갔소.
- Bring me the lamp without (*putting on*) the chimney. 등피씨우지 말고 등을 가져 오오.
- I'll go without (*eating*) supper. 저녁 아니 먹고 가겟소.
- Will you go without (*taking*) a guide? 인도 할는 사람 아니 드리고 가겟소?

## SEC. 9.—OF.

1 Possession,—의 if expressed, but more generally not expressed.

2 Apposition,—not rendered.

3 Partitive :—

(a.) Some of a group as contrasted with the remainder, or emphasized, (hence frequently accompanied by a pronominal adjective)—그 중에, 에.

(b.) When no contrast or special emphasis is expressed the *of*, is not rendered.

4 Made of,—로.

## 1.

The nails were rotten and the bottom of the box fell out. 못시 다 삭아서 께 밋치 싹졌소.

Don't you like the smell of a good cigar? 도흔 엽권연 내암새 도 묘화 아니 향호?

Don't handle the property of others. 남의 저물 문지 지 마라.



Do you intend to build the 집 벽돌노 지랴고 흙  
house of brick? 누니잇가?

## SEC. 10.—FOR.

1 For the sake of,—위하야.

2 Instead of,—되신.

3 To serve as, to be used for,—로 or 으로.

4 Considering that,—로논, 으로논.

5 To be delivered to,—의게 with a participle of some such verb as 전하오 or 주오.

6 To be used *with, on, by*—에 쓸.

7 Addressed to,—의게 or 석.

8 To fetch, to get,—가질너, 차지러.

9 To call,—부르러.

10 Price,—으러, or 에.

11 Courtesy, usually of a favor for a third party,—the verbal participle with 주오.

## 1.

He died for his country. 나라 위하야 상소 나섯소.  
The doctor to-day recom- 오늘 의원이 날 회춘 하기  
mended me to go to the 위하야 식골노 가랴고  
country for my health. 권하엿소.

## 2.

Do not use scissors for a 칼 되신 으로 가위를 쓰지  
knife. 마오.

## 3.

What are those boards 더 널판지 무어 소로  
for? 쓰겟소.

That wont do for a pillow. 더 거시 목침 으로 못  
쓰겟소.

He will do well for a teacher. 선생 으로 잘 될듯 하오.

I bought it for a thing to put pens in. 붓 썬질 거수로 샀소.

## 4.

He speaks very well for a foreigner. 외국 사람 으로는 말 잘 하오.

He runs very well for a child. 으히 로는 잘 두라 나오.

It was very badly done for him. 그 사람 으로는 잘 못 하엿소.

Isn't this hot weather for Söoul? 지금 일기가 서울 노는 더웁지 안소?

## 5.

Mr. Kim has a letter for you. 김서방이 로형씨 전할 편지 잇소.

Yesterday I gave him a letter for Mr. Song. 어저씨 송서방 의게 전할 편지 주엇소.

Mr. Choi received some money for you. 최서방이 로형씨 줄 돈 밧 았소.

## 6.

I want a key for this box. 이 께에 쓸 열쇠 하나 엇으랴고 그리 하오.

Have you a cork for this bottle? 이 병에 쓸 막히 하나 잇소?

Get another chimney for this lamp. 이 등에 쓸 등피 썬 하나 사 오너라.

## 7.

Did any freight come for me a little while ago? 아씨 내게 호는 짐 왔소 읍 더니잇가?

A letter has come for you. 로형씨 편지 왔소.

8.

Soun Yongi has gone for my watch.	순용이가 우리 시계가질너 갔소
Send Soun Yongi for it.	순용이 차지러 보내오.
Have you written to Japan for that money?	그 돈 차지러 일본 편지 썼소?

9.

I went for the doctor, but he was out.	의원 부러러 갔것 마는 업섯소.
Some time or other to-day, you must go for the car- penter.	오늘 어능 썤 던지 목슈 불러러 가야 쓰 겐소.
You had better go for four more chair coolies.	교군 넷 더 부러러 가면 도켓다.

10.

I don't think you can buy one for ten yen.	내 생각에 열원 으로 못 살듯 호호.
I bought it for five dollars and sold it for six.	오원 으로 사서 육원 으로 팔앗소.
He sold it for five thousand dollars and got the money.	은전 오천 원에 팔고 돈다 밧앗소.
I'll go for two nyang.	두량 에 가겐소.

11.

Please sharpen both ends of this pencil for me.	이 연필 량 쏫 삭가 주 시오.
Buy some toys for the children.	으히 작란 ㅁ음 사주시오.
Wont you buy a horse for me?	나를 몰 안 사 주겐소?

I want you to write two **공이 나를 편지 둘 써**  
letters for me. **주면 도캣소.**

SEC. 11.—ACROSS, OVER, BEYOND.

1 On the other side—**건너** or **넘어**. When it is simply *across*, it is **건너**; when it has gone *over*, it is **넘어**.

2 Further on than :—**지나**.

1.

Who is that over there? **더 건너 잇는 이가 누구요?**

What's that house across the canal? **리천 건너 더 집이 무슨 집이오.**

The kite went over the house. **연이 집 넘어로 넘어갔소.**

There is another temple beyond Sam Kak San. **삼각산 넘어 가서 또 절 하나 잇소.**

2.

It's a little beyond the Kwang Chung bridge. **광충 다리 조금 지나 잇소.**

He lives just beyond the American legation. **미국 공사관 좀 지나 산다.**

SEC. 12.—AMONG.

Among—**중에**.

I think you'll find it among the tools. **현장 중에 차질 듯하오.**

Who among us will obtain office first? **우리 중에 누가 먼저 벼슬 하겠소?**

Is there an Ok Pyen among them? **그 중에 옥편 잇소?**



## SEC. 13.—AMONG.

1 On all sides 에워.

2 About and round 도라, 두루.

1 and 2.

There was a crowd of policemen standing around the house.    혼 무리 순검이 집을 에워싸고 섰소.

Let's put some flowers around the fruit.    실과를 꽃초로 에워싸읍시다.

He walked three times around the city.    성을 세번 두루 돈넜소.

The rats ran all round the kitchen every night.    밤 마다 쥐들이 주방으로 도라 돈니소.

## SEC. 14.—BEFORE.

In front of—앞히, 앞히서.

He stood before the king.    대군주 앞히 섰소.

He planted a tree before the house.    집 앞히 나무를 심었소.

## SEC. 15.—BEHIND.

Behind—뒤히.

There's a well behind the house.    집 뒤히 우물이 잇소.

The key has fallen down behind the clock.    자명종 뒤히 트리기 썩러졌소.

Please hand me that book behind you.    뒤히 책 좀 집어 주시오.

The troops marched behind the king.    대군주 뒤히 병덕가 썩라가 읍터이다.

You go first and I'll come after.    형은 먼저 가고 나는 뒤히 가겟소.

## SEC. 15.—BETWEEN.

Between—**수이에**.

There's a well between the 의원<sup>의</sup> 집과 우리 집  
 doctor's house and mine. 수이에 우물이 잇소.  
 It has fallen down between 벽<sup>하</sup>고 책장 수이에 썩어  
 the bookcase and the wall. 졌소.

## SEC. 16.—DURING.

During **수이**, **동안** with or without the postposition **에**.  
 He died during the night. 밤 수이에 죽엇소.  
 How were you during the 밤 수이 었더 하시오?  
 night?  
 He worked very hard dur- 일년 수이에 미우 힘썼소.  
 ing the whole year.  
 The children played during 선생 업슬 동안에 으희들  
 the teacher's absence. 작란 하엿소.  
 If any one should come 점심 먹을 수이에 누가  
 during dinner tell him I 오면 못본다고 하여라.  
 can't see him.

## SEC. 17.—EXCEPT, BESIDES, BUT.

1 Excepting, besides—**봏기**.2 Only—**만**, **썸**, etc., or **봏기** with the negative.

1.

I have nothing except a 양은전 봏기 업소.  
 foreign dollar.  
 Didn't you go anywhere 집 봏기 다른 데 아니  
 but to the house? 갓더냐?  
 Everything except this is 이 말 봏기는 다 븍소.  
 perfectly plain.  
 Haven't you any pens be- 이 븍 봏기 업소?  
 sides this?

He has taken two himself,      더는 들 가지고 나  
and has n't given me but      하나 만 주었소.  
one.

He didn't send but half a pound. {   
 훈 반근만 보내 엿소.   
 or   
 반근 맞기 아니 보내엿소.

I won't give but a little more. 조금 만 더 주겠소.

He did n't wait but a little while.    조금 밝기 아니 기다렸소.

SEC. 19.—INSTEAD OF.

1 Before a noun,—**뒤** **식**.

2 Before a verbal noun,—the verbal stem with **안코** or the verbal stem preceded by a negative with **고**.

1.

Did n't you put in salt in- 사랑 되신 소금 안 너희  
stead of sugar? 누냐?

They arrested the father instead of the son. 아들 대신 아버지가 잡혔소.

Bring Korean money in- 양 은전 덕신에 조선  
stead of dollars. 돈 가져 오너라.

If you go instead of him it will be well. 그 사람 대신 가면 또  
괜찮소.

## 2.

Instead of going to Chemulpo he went to Fusan.

He sleeps all day instead of  
doing his work.

I think I'll build instead of buying. 집 사지 안코 질듯 하오.

## SEC. 19.—OVER, ABOVE.

Over, above...우회, 우호로.

There's a sign over that door.    더문 우회 현판 잇소.

It's hanging over the shelf.    탁주 우회 걸었소.

There are a lot of buzzards flying about over that mountain.    더 산 우호로 소리개 여러히 놀나 가호.

## SEC. 20.—UNDER, BELOW.

Under, below—밋회.

The books are under the shelf.    탁주 밋회 책 이 잇소.

Go and put it under the table.    상 밋회 갖다 두어라.

There is a dog under the verandah gnawing a bone.    더 마루 밋회 뼈를 씹무려 뜻는 개 잇소.

## SEC. 21.—ACCORDING TO, IN ACCORDANCE WITH.

1 Dependent on, regulated by—대로, 썩라.

2 Of opinions, teachings, etc.—으로는.

3 Of statements etc.,—말대로, 말노 or 대로.

4 In harmony with,—와합호호.

1.

The rate differs according to the number of characters.    글주수 대로 갑시 다릅호.

The postage differs according to the weight of the letter.    편지 무게 대로 우세가 다릅호.

I change my clothes according to the weather.    일기를 썩라 옷을 바치고아 님소.

They're arranged according to color.      빛 대로 버려 노랗소.

I may go or not according to circumstances.      갈 년지 안 갈 년지 일 되는 대로 하겠소.

## 2.

According to the opinion of some, this is a mistake.      었던 사람의 생각 으로는 이거시 그릇오.

According to my opinion this book is not worth much.      내 생각 으로는 이책 쓸데 별노 업소.

## 3.

According to the doctor, he has the small-pox.      의원 말노는 역질 이라 홉더이다.

According to the doctor's, orders the patient was taken to the country.      의원 하라는 대로 병인을 쇠골노 득려 갓소.

## 4.

Is that in accordance with Japanese custom?      그 것 일본 풍속 과 합 호오?

Your view is not in accordance with the treaty.      공의 생각 이 약도 와 합지 안소.

That's not in accordance with your agreement.      이 거시 로형의 상약 과 합지 안소.

## CHAPTER X.

## THE CONJUNCTION.

English conjunctions are variously rendered into the Korean by particles, verbal moods, and the participial forms of adjectives and verbs.

## Sec. 1.—AND.

1 Connecting nouns—by **하고** (*repeated after the last noun*), or **과** becoming **와** after a vowel.

2 Connecting verbs and adjectives. When the sentences and clauses connected are :—

(a.) Co-ordinate—by the verbal root with **고** or **며** the final verb only being inflected.

For distinction difference between **고** and **며** see Part I. ¶94, 200.

(b.) Subordinate—by the participial form of the verb of the subordinate clause.

3 Equivalent to, “*but*” “*yet*” “*because*” “*when*” “*if*” *etc.*—it is translated accordingly.

4 “*And-so-forth*” is translated by—**와...와...다**.

## 1.

Please buy some pens, paper	은	히를	붓	하고	요	히	하고
and books for the children.	책	하고	좀	사	주	오.	
For breakfast we will have	조	반	에	는	밥	과	차와
rice, tea, and bread.					떡	을	먹
					것	소.	

## 2. (a).

The chairmen put down	교	관	들이	보	교를	누	려
the chair and went into	노	코	술	막	으로	드	러
the saloon.	갔	소.					

I dreamed the house was on fire and woke up with a start.      꿈에 집 불이 난 거슬 보고 일어나 일어났소.

I met Mr. Kim before breakfast and proposed that we study together.      식전에 김서방을 보고 뭇치 공부 하자고 하였소.

## 2. (b).

I intended to cross the river and go to a hotel.      강을 건너 가서 휴막에 들나고 하였소.

The ball went over the fence and we cannot find it.      공이 담을 넘어가서 차질 수가 업소.

It rained and we could not start.      비가 와서 썩나지 못 하였소.

## 3.

I told Mr. Yi what you told me some time ago, and he said it was not so.      일전에 하시던 말을 리서방씨 하였더니 그 러치 안타고 하였소.

This roof was newly thatched barely a month ago, and it has begun to leak again.      이 집웅은 계유 훈 들 전에 새로 니어도 썩 새기 시작하오.

Sou Dongi did not put on much coal and the fire went out.      슈둥이가 석탄을 만히 댗치 아니 니싸 불이 끄졌소.

Put them in the sun and they will dry directly.      뵈히 내여 노면 꾀 뭇르겟소.

Everybody else gets them, and why can not you.      다른 사름은 다 잇어 가지논디 왜 공은 못 하오.

## 4.

He has pens, paper, ink, etc.      붓과 뎡희 와 먹과 다 잇소.

## SEC. 2.—BOTH...AND.

1 Usually the verb is repeated with 도...도.

2 With adjectives, simple 고 following the roof of the first adjective is often used.

## 1.

There seem to be plenty of      공의 화원 에는 월계 꽃  
both roses and camelias      도 만코 동백꽃 도 만흔  
in your garden.      모양이오.

It both rained and snowed      오늘은 눈도 오고 비도  
to-day.      왔소.

## 2.

There are many things that      곱고 진흔 물건 만소.  
are both useful and or-  
namental.

## SEC. 3.—TOO, ALSO.

Too, also—도.

Bring a spoon too.      슈가락 도 가져오너라.

They have a custom like      조선도 그런 풍속이잇소.  
that in Korea, too.

Does your right eye pain      을흔 편 눈도 압흐오?  
you also?

Did you forget to speak      그말도 니져브렸소?  
about that too?

## SEC. 4.—BUT.

1 A disjunctive is much less frequently used by Koreans than by English, the former preferring a transposition, and the use of the concessive.

2 It may however be rendered by its Korean equivalent 마는, or 만셔도, which may be joined directly to any one of the indicative tenses without the elision of its termination; or connected by 겠 to any indicative form, when 겠



replaces its termination : or to any participle, and then the participle qualifies 것.

1.

It is good enough but the price is high.     **도흐나 감시 만소.**

The screen is old, but it is well painted. 이 병풍이 늙기는 늙었  
시되 그림은 잘 그렸소.

That ring is good but it is a little small.

그 가락지가 도키는 도흐  
되 좀 적소.

## 2.

It will probably rain but I must go.

비 올 듯 하겠 마는 갈수  
    바쁘 업소.

If you want to go, go, but     가려면 가거라 마는 일즉  
come back early.                 도라 오너라.

I tried to get him to write 편지 써 주도록 하여 보았  
for me but he would n't. 것마는 아니 썼소.

I tried to sleep, but it thundered so I could n't.

미우 자랴고 쉬섯것 마는  
 천둥이 대단하야 못  
 잤소.

My brother likes Korean food, but I cannot eat it. 형님은 조선 음식을 좋아하지만 나는 못 먹겠소.

SEC. 5.—THOUGH, ALTHOUGH, STILL.

1 Although may be rendered into Korean by any one of the concessive conjunctions, —나, 도, 거니와, etc., and a stronger, form (*even though*) may be rendered by 지라도 with a relative participle.

2 Even so, and yet,—그러껏 마는, 그러하여도, etc., may be used.

1.

Although he is still very sick      아직도 미우 편치 못하  
he will probably get well.      나 나흘 듯 하오.

I suppose we'll have to take it, although it doesn't suit.	무엇에 아니 드려도 잊지 할수 업소.
Though he's a rice man he will not give a cent.	부자 되어도 혼쫓 도 안 주겟소.
He wont give up smoking, though it's injuring him.	담배가 몸에 해롭 거니와 긋 치지 아니하옵더 이다.
He's getting pretty old, but he is strong yet.	좀 늙어졌 거니와 아직 도 건장 하오.

## 2.

Still, you had better apologize.	그러겟 마는 사죄 하는 거시 낫겟소.
Still, it will cost a thousand nyang.	그러하여도 천량은 드리 야 하겟소.
Still, it would be better not to stop.	그러 하여 도 쉬지 말고 하는 거시 요켓소.
Still, he can't possibly be here for some time yet.	그러 하여 도 오래면 아직 도 멀엇소.

## SEC. 6.—EITHER, OR, WHETHER.

## 1 One or the other.

(a.) In simple sentences—나.

(b.) In direct questions connected by *or*, Koreans ask two questions without *or*.(c.) In indirect questions containing *whether*, followed by *or*—the verb is repeated with 지 or 가, sometimes by 나.2 Either one or the other, no matter which—던지...  
던지.3 Either with a negative, and equivalent to *any more*,  
or *any bether*,—도.

## 1. (a).

To-day must be about the third or fourth of the month.      오늘이 덩녕 사흘 이나 나흘 즈음 되오.

Let me know by letter or by messenger.      편지로나 사람으로 기별하기를 바라오.

## 1. (b).

Is this black or red ?      이거시 검소 붉소?

Is to-day the fifth or the sixth ?      오늘이 다섯시오 여섯시오?

Will you need a jinrikisha or not ?      인력거를 득랴오 아니 득랴오?

Were you speaking to him, or about him ?      그 사람 득려 말 하엿소 그 사람을 말하엿소?

## 1. (c).

I don't know whether that is silk or cotton.      그 거시 명주 인지 무명 인지 모르겟소

Please ask whether the bath is ready.      목욕 물이 다 되엿나 무려 보아 주시오.

I don't know whether it will rain or not.      비가 올는지 아니 올는지 알수 업소.

Do you know whether the steamer goes to-day or to-morrow ?      화륜선 오늘 썩나는지 립일 썩나는지 알으시오?

## 2.

Either take a chair or walk.      교군을 득던지 것던지 하오.

Tell him to come either to-day or to-morrow.      립일 오던지 모레 오던지 하라고 하오.

I told the carpenter he might make it round or square.	목수 데려 그 거슬 둥 굴게 하던지 모지게 하던지 하라고 하였소.
I don't care whether it rains or not.	비가 오던지 아니 오던지 관계치 안소.
It is no matter to me whether he stays or not.	류하 던지 아니 하던지 상관 업소.
It does n't make any difference whether it's bamboo or not.	대나모 던지 아니 던지 관계치 안소.

## 3.

That wont do either.	그 것도 못 쓰겟소.
There now, see that! You can't do it either.	자 그것 보오 당신도 하지 못 하리이다.
You mustn't leave your light burning at night either.	주녁 도 밤에 불혀 두지 말게.
You can't go either.	너 도 가지 못한다.
He did n't say a word about that either.	그 것도 아모 말도 아니 하옵더 이다.
They don't say that either.	그러라고 도 아니하옵 더이다.

## SEC. 7 NEITHER-NOR.

Neither...nor—도...도 with the negative.

It is neither a flea nor a mosquito.	벼룩 도 아니오 모기 도 아니오.
There is neither a table nor a chair.	교위 도 업고 상 도 업소 옵더 이다.
It neither rained nor snowed for a month.	훈 들 동안은 비 도 아니 오고 눈 도 아니 오오.

Hereafter I will neither 이 후 브러는 빌지 도  
borrow nor lend. 안코 빌너지 도 안켓소.

He can neither read nor 책 보지 도 못 하고 글자  
write. 쓰지도 못 하오.

# SEC. 8.—IF, UNLESS.

## 1 If—면.

(a.) In simple supposition—면 with one or other of the simple tenses.

(b.) Supposition contrary to fact—면 with one or other of the compound tenses.

2 When “if” introduces a future effect or consequence (sometimes expressed in English by ‘and’) it is frequently rendered by the verbal stem and 고는.

3 Mere supposition, equivalent to “in case,” “supposing that” if that was the case,” etc., it may be rendered by 디경이면, 진대, 거든.

4 Even if.—relative participle with 지라도 or verbal participle with 도.

Unless, is rendered the same as, *if not*.

## 1. (a).

If it is on the main road we 큰 길에 잇수면 곧 차질  
can find it directly. 수 잇소.

Do not go out if it is raining. 비가 오면 나가지 마오.

He will probably go if he is 다른 일이 업수면 갈 듯  
not otherwise engaged. 하오.

Unless he is in a hurry he 밧부지 아니 하면 오리끌  
will probably stop at 서 지체할 듯 하오.  
Oricole.

If it does n't suit you, you 묵음에 맞지 아니 하면  
need n't pay for it. 갑손 그만 두오.

- You'd better not buy them unless they are cheap and good. 싸고 싼 도흔거시 아니면 사지 아니하느 거시 도켓소.
- You must keep quiet if you come in here. 여기 드려 오면 조용하 여야 하겟소.
- If you will lend me your penknife I will make you a kite. 슈면이 칼을 빌니면 연 문드려 주리이다.
- If he hasn't got up yet shall I call him? 아직 니러나지 아니 하엿 시면 썩우리잇가?
- If you haven't put it in the room, where have you put it? 방에 두지 아니 하엿시면 어디 두엇소?
- If the bridges haven't been carried away they probably got along without difficulty. 두리가 두라나지 아니 하엿시면 걱정 업시 지낫실 듯 하오.
- If he is out what shall I do? 출입 하엿시면 엇더케 하리잇가?
- If it is past twelve, we must start immediately. 십이 시 지낫 시면 곧 썩나야 하겟소.
- What shall I do if the passport has not come? 빙표가 아니왔시면 엇더케 하오?

## 1. (b).

- What should we have done if the bridges had all been carried away? 두리가 썩 나갔더면 엇 더케 지나갓|실고?
- If I had not had a horse, how could I have come? 말이 업섯 더면 엇더케 왔겟소?
- How could I have studied unless I had a teacher? 셴성이 업섯 더면 엇더케 글을 비훤실고?

- If I had studied at once, it would have been well. 공부를 진즉 하였더라면  
도왔겠소.
- If he had come yesterday I would have seen him. 어제씩 왔더라면 보았지요.
- If I had gone yesterday I would have come back. 어제씩 갔더라면 도라왔  
겠소.
- If you let him have it, he'll spoil it. 가져가게 하면 상하리  
다.

## 2.

- If you are going to-morrow, you must get coolies. 리일 가랴 고는 꼬군을  
얻어야 겠소.
- If you go to Chemulpo to-morrow you can't come here. 리일 제물포를 가고는  
여기는 못 오겠소.
- If you don't take care, you will break it, 조심 아니 하고는 부러  
트리리이다.
- You'll get wet if you don't take an umbrella. 우산이 업고는 옷을  
적시리이다.
- You can't stay here if you cry. 울 고는 여기 뉘술 수가  
업다.
- You'll be late if you don't hurry. 어서 하지 아니 하고는  
늦겠소.

## 3.

- If he won't sell it for a thousand cash, give him 열량에 팔지 아니 하거든  
스무 량을 주오.
- If you've rested sufficiently, begin to study. 다 쉬엇거든 공부 시작  
하시오.
- Well, if your head aches, go and lie down. 머리 압흐거든 가 누오.

If you don't want to never 슬키든 그만 두오.  
mind.

If it suits you, take it. 믿음에 맞거든 가지오.

Take this letter, and in case 이 편지 가지고 가서 만일  
the man has gone, bring 그사람 석난 디경 이면  
it back. 도로 가지고 오오.

If he is busy never mind. 밧불진 딘 그만 두오.

## 4.

Even if he had known how 헤염을 할줄 알앗실 지  
to swim, he probably 라도 살지 못 하엿실 듯  
would not have been 하오.  
saved.

Even if I explain it he pro- 닐너 주어 도 알지 못  
bably will not under- 홀듯 하오.  
stand it.

He probably wont come, 온다고 하엿 셔도 오지  
even if he said he would. 아니 홀 듯 하오.

## SEC. 9.—BECAUSE.

Because, may be rendered by any one of the Korean conjunctions having a causal effect. It is quite often, however, expressed, by the use of the verbal noun in 기 with the postposition 에 ; or by the use of a noun such as 사뭇 or 고, expressing reason or cause, with a postposition 에 or 로.

I perfer Kumipo because it's 구미포가 셔늘 하기에  
cool. 도화 하오.

I waited because I thought 날이 끼일줄 안 사뭇에  
it would clear. 기드렸소.

He went because he had 불가불 갈 러힌 고로  
to. 갔소.



It's colder to-day because it has snowed.      **오늘은 눈이 오는고로 더 춥소.**

## SEC. 10.—THEN.

In that case—**그러면, 그런즉, 그러거든.**

Then I don't think you will find one in Sēoul.      **그러면 서울서 하나도 못 찾을 듯 하오.**

Then he may get well.      **그런 즉 날 듯 하오.**

Then you must give up smoking.      **그러거든 담배를 쏘히야 하겠소.**

Then don't go.      **그러거든 가지 마오.**

## SEC. 11.—THAT.

1 Introducing a statement—**고 하오.**

See Part I. 228. ff.

2 So that, in order that,—future verbal participle.

## 1.

I told Mr. Kim that it would be all right for him to read it.      **김서방 득려 보아도 무방 하다고 하엿소.**

Did not the doctor say that he would have to try the hot springs, to get well?      **의원이 온천을 하여야 도 라고하니 흠을 더니 잇가?**

I heard from Mr. Pak that some foreigner wrote that letter.      **그 편지는 었던 외국 사람이 썼다 고 박서방 안테 드렸소.**

## 2.

Open the door so that I can see out.      **밖 것 잘 내다 보게 문을 여오.**

Please open the door so that the air can come in.      **바람이 드려 오게 문 좀 열여 주오.**

Roll up your sleeves so that they wont get wet. 젖지 안케 소매를 것으로.

Please arrange the net well so that the mosquitoes wont get in. 모기 드리오지 못 하게 모기 장을 잘 치오.

Take care that you don't slip. 미끄러지 잔케 조심 하 여라.

# SEC. 12.—THAN.

1 With the Comparative Degree,—보다, 에서. See also Part I. ¶ 250 ff. & Part II. Chap. VI § II.

2 Rather than,—출하리 or the verb 낫소 may be used.

3 More than, (*of quantity or number*).—

(a.) In affirmative sentences—넘어.

(b.) In negative sentences—맞기.

## 1.

A mule is stronger than a horse. 로새가 물 보다 세오.

Korea is more healthy than Japan. 조선이 일본 보다 슈토가 묘소.

It rains more frequently in Japan than in Korea. 조선 보다 일본은 비가 자주 오오.

## 2.

I had rather walk than ride. 걷는것 보다 출하리 것겟소.

I had rather write to him than tell him to his face. 보고 말하는 것 보다 출하리 편지로 하겟소.

I had rather smoke cigars than cigarettes. 지권연 보다 출하리 엽 권연 먹겟소.

I had rather die than go to see the doctor. 의원을 보러 가는 것 보다 출하리 죽는 거시 낫겟소.

That fellow had rather 그 놈은 일 하기 보다  
starve than work. 굶는 거시 나혼 줄노  
아호.

I had rather live in Korea 일본 보다 출하리 조선  
than Japan. 살겟소.

3. (a.)

It will cost more than fifty 오십 량 넘저시 쓰겟소.  
nyang.

I have waited more than an 혼시간 넘어 기다렸소.  
hour for you.

We have more than an 아직 도 혼시 간 넘어 넘  
hour yet. 났소.

You must put in more than 혼 줌 넘어 너히야 하  
a handful. 겟소.

There were more than a 거기 백명 넘어 잇스  
hundred there. 읍더이다.

That book has more than 그 책에 백장 넘어잇소.  
a hundred pages.

It is more than eighty ri to 제물포 사지 팔십 리 넘어  
Chemulpo. 되호.

I want more than ten 열 근 넘어 쓰겟소.  
pounds.

3. (b).

I shall not want more than 열근 밝기 는 아니 쓰  
ten pounds. 겟소.

It will probably not cost 이삼 량 밝기 는 아니 될  
more than two or three 듯호호.  
nyang.

You must not put in more 혼 줌 밝기 더 넋치  
than a handful. 마호.



## APPENDIX A.

### PHONETICS.

#### I KOREAN PHONETICS.

##### INTRODUCTION. DEFINITIONS AND NOTES.

1. **Phonetics.** Phonetics is the science of position, movement, tension and action in speech sounds, and the art of making these sounds.

2. **The ground tone.** The ground tone is made by the vocal cords—the overtone by the cavities above, viz. pharynx, mouth, and nasal passages.

3. **A consonant** is a speech sound made by a complete or partial closure of the oral passage at one or more points.

4. **A vowel** is a voiced sound made through a fixed oral passage.

5. **Syllables.** A syllable is the least measure of speech, and is produced by a single impulse. A close syllable is one that ends in a consonant, and an open syllable is one ending in a vowel. It is a matter of some difficulty to know where one syllable begins and another ends, especially in English. English often makes a syllable with consonants l, m, and n, and these are consequently called “syllabic” consonants, but there do not seem to be any syllables in Korean words without vowels. It is worthy of note that the syllabification of the Korean spelling does not always seem to coincide with that of pronunciation.

6. **Recoil.** This, the recoil of the organs from close contact, as in English, pop, tip, (use your mirror) is a very

important element in the pronunciation of English final stop consonants, but is not heard in Korean single words as **밥**, **집**, etc. However when these words occur in sentences they usually end in a vowel, so that the recoil must of necessity take place. The glottal catch, which is the very opposite of a recoil is frequently heard in the midst of Korean sentences.

The glottis is the "mouth" between the vocal cords; we close it in straining, and in coughing. If one will lay the fingers of one hand on the side of the throat about the larynx and snap against the finger nails with those of the other hand as he breathes, it will be noted that the sound is rather dead. Now inhale and "catch" the breath, and then snap. At once there is a change in the sound. The pent-up air, held by the shut glottis, has made the difference. One must learn to control this at will, and in combination with the stops *p*, *t*, and *k*. It occurs also with *l*, *n*, *ng* and between vowels, as **나러났다 안젖소** (I rose and sat down).

7. Glide. If you pronounce the English vowels *o*, *oo*, as you look in the mirror, you will see the lips move slightly to a closer position at the end. This is called the *w* glide. At the end of the English "long" *a* and *e*, there is the *y* glide. Perhaps this is why we spell *day* and *they* and *bow*, and wrongly explain the *y* and *w* as "silent." It is difficult for English speaking people to pronounce a vowel without a glide.

8. Personal and National Difficulties.—Occasionally a person comes to the foreign field who is tongue-tied. Such an impediment must seriously interfere with ease and excellence of articulation. Inability to run one's tongue well down on to the lower lip may lead one to suspect this

defect. If so, a surgeon can easily remedy it. There are some who are accustomed to slur over their "r's", and consequently inclined to import this same pronunciation into Korean but perhaps the greatest difficulty comes from assuming that the Korean letters are the same as the corresponding sounds in English. Almost no Korean letter has the identical sound of the corresponding English letter. Special attention should be given to the point of contact for forming l, and to the shape of the rest of the tongue, during its formation. This will remove the difficulty that many Koreans have in understanding foreigners when they use words ending in l. Our American l has a glide in it that is very confusing to Koreans.

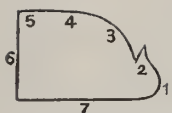
9. Analysis of Sounds.—It is very important that these suggestions as to the manner in which sounds are formed be reviewed again and again, and the sounds thoroughly analysed. To go from the analysis of the known English sounds to the unknown Korean sounds is the only practical way to accomplish this. Whispering Korean sounds will often lay bare the secret of their formation. Or it may be better to sing them with a (ah) before and after the consonant. A half-inch stick between the jaw teeth of the teacher will often facilitate the investigation. Sometimes the best way to discover the difference between the Korean sounds and our own is to make up a sentence in which the sound under investigation is prominent, and then get a Korean who knows no English to repeat these words. His departure from the normal English pronunciation will reveal to you the degree in which you ought to conform your pronunciation to his that you may speak Korean acceptably.

10. Intonation —Intonation is the peculiar melody which forms an integral part of a language, and may differ in different localities, even where the language is the same. Korean intonation in some sentences seems very much like English, and again it is absolutely different. It might be called the language “tune,” and the mastery of it is more important than the correct pronunciation of an individual sound. It is never learned by those who follow the book, or the word method. It exists only in sentences in nature, and should be watched for at such times as you have opportunity to listen to the Koreans as they talk among themselves. Failure to give the proper intonation makes the foreigner always remain a foreigner in speech, and his best efforts may cause the soul-saddening remark, “We do not understand English.” It is because our fellow countrymen retain our own melody that we are able to understand their Korean so much easier than that of the native ; and for the like reason when the native speaks English to us, we often mistake, and think he is speaking his own tongue.

11. Articulation.—Articulation is the uniting of consonants and vowels, so as to give to each its proper value. Many students of Korean will need to cultivate a better articulation in Korean than they have in their mother tongue. A valuable exercise to this end is the reading in a whisper, in either language, to some one at a distance of twenty-five or thirty feet, with such distinctness that they can understand what is read. To do this well and easily, one must know the exact position to be taken for each sound and then assume such positions clearly and as soon as the sound is made, release the position just as clearly and decidedly.



## PHONETIC ANALYSIS.



The various positions of the lips, tongue and other parts of the vocal organs, may be represented by the above diagram. No. 1, represents the lip in contact, No. 2, the teeth; Nos. 3, 4, and 5, the roof of the mouth; No. 6, represents the posterior portion of the mouth closed; and No. 7, the floor of the mouth. If the sound is a surd, i. e. unaccompanied by a vibration of the vocal cords, this line (No. 7) is a light line, if a sonant, i. e. accompanied with a vibration of the vocal cords, the line is heavy, thus —.

The position of the tongue is indicated by a line to any point where the tongue may be in contact. If the tongue lies in the floor of the mouth it is not indicated in the diagram. A mirror should be used for determining the various positions.

Let us first indicate

## THE ENGLISH CONSONANTS.

Which must always precede an intelligent study of the corresponding Korean sounds.

The labial position is a cardinal position in English and is represented in the following ways.



The letter p being a stop sound, the lips are (1) in contact, the posterior portion of the mouth (2) is closed and there is no vibration of the vocal cords.









































B differs from p only in that it is a sonant or in other words there is a vibration of the vocal cords and is therefore represented by the heavy line.



P' aspirated is represented the same as the unaspirated with the addition of the dotted line to show the explosive factor in producing the sound.

## A.—PHONETIC TABLE ENGLISH.

	STOP.	ASPIRATE.	COMBINATION OF STOP AND CONTINUANT NASAL.	CONTINUANT.		
				CENTRAL.	LATERAL.	FLAP OR TRILL.
Labial	 p	 p'	 m°	 wh		
	 b		 m	 w		
Dental					 th	 r°
					 dh	 r
Dental Labial					 f	
					 v	
Pre- Palatal	 t	 t'	 n°	 s	 l°	 r°
	 d		 n	 z	 l	 r
Blade- Palatal	 ch	 ch'	 ñ°	 sh		 r°
	 j		 ñ	 zh		 r
Velar	 k	 k'				
	 g		 ng			
Glottal				 h		



M<sup>o</sup> voiceless is uncommon but is found in the final m of word *rheumatism*.



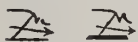
M is a nasal sound being a combination of a stop and continuant. The lips are closed but the posterior part of the mouth is open enough to allow the current of air to go through the nasal passages. With this there is a vibration of the vocal cords which is represented by a heavy base line.

The common expression that a person talks through his nose when he has a cold is not the true statement of fact, for it is just the opposite. The air in such a case does not go through the nasal passages and the *m* becomes a *b*. For example we say "good bordik" for "good morning." *m* becomes *b*, *n* becomes *d* and *ng* becomes *k*.



The *wh* and *w* are made by a continuous current of air coming through the rounded lips and back of the mouth, *wh* being voiceless while *w* is a vibrating sound.

The dental position is uncommon in English being represented only in *th* and *dh* and by some persons in the letter *r*.



In "th" the tongue is against the teeth the current of air coming out at the sides of the tongue. A vibration of the vocal cords in the same position produces *dh*.


The *r* is formed by a flap or trill with the tongue against the teeth and the sides rounded out. There is occasionally a voiceless *r* as *prey*, but usually it has the accompanying vibration of the vocal cords.





*f* and *v* are the only consonants in the dental labial position. They are made by placing the lower lip in contact with the edge of the upper teeth and allow the current of air to escape at


either side. The *f* has no vibration of the vocal cords while the *v* has such vibration.


The prepalatal position is a cardinal position.


 T is made with open lips. The tip of the tongue in the prepalatal region i. e. there is a break in the middle of the tongue, and the throat closed. It is a voiceless sound.


 D is made in the same way with the addition of a vibration of the vocal cords.


 T' The aspirated *t* is indicated by the curved dotted line.



 N is a nasal sound being a combination of a stop and a continuant. The lips are open the tongue having its tip in the prepalatal region forms the anterior stop. The posterior position is partially open so that the current of air goes through the nose as indicated by the arrow. There is at the same time a vibration of the vocal cords.


 S is a central continuant made by having both the lips and posterior position of the mouth open, as the current of air comes out it is forced through centrally because the edges of the tongue are in contact with the roof of the mouth at the prepalatal region.


 Z is produced in the same manner with the addition of a vibration of the vocal cords.


 The voiceless *l*<sup>o</sup> is uncommon—as in *ply*.


 The usual *l* is produced with the tongue in the prepalatal region but with its tip in contact and the current of air coming out at either side—represented by an arrow. It is accompanied with a vibration of the vocal cords.


  The voiceless and voiced 'r' are made as above indicated except in this position the tongue is further back, i. e. in the prepalatal position.


 In the blade palatal position we have first the stop *ch*. This is produced with the lips open, the posterior position of the mouth closed and the tongue arched so that it is in contact with the palate. It may be noticed here that while in the letter *t* there is a break in the middle of the tongue in *ch* there is no break. This is a voiceless sound.

 *J* is produced in the same way with the addition of vibration of the vocal cords.

 *Ch* aspirated is indicated by a dotted curved line.


 *Ñ*. This sound may be represented by *ny*. It is the *ñ* in *cañon* or *oñion*. The position is the same as *ch* except that the posterior position is open enough to permit the air to pass through the nose.

 *Sh* is a voiceless sound made by a continuous current of air. The sides of the arched tongue being in contact with the palate the air comes out centrally.

 *Zh* is produced in the same way with the addition of the vibration of the vocal cords.

*r* in this position is made as the *r* in the prepalatal and dental except the tongue is further back.

The velar position is represented by,

 *K* is a voiceless sound. The lips are open and the tongue is pressed against the posterior position of the mouth.



*G* is produced in the same way with the addition of vibration of the vocal cords.



*K Aspirated* is represented the same as the voiceless *k* except for the addition of dotted curved line to show the explosive quality of the sound.



*Ng* is the nasal correspondent of the velar stop. It is produced as indicated in diagram by leaving a position of the posterior part of the mouth open so as to allow the air to pass through the nose.



*H* is a glottal voiceless sound produced by a continuous current of air passing out through the rounded portion of the posterior part of the mouth.

---

Let us next consider

### The Korean Consonants.

The labial position is a cardinal position in Korean as well as in English.



**ㅍ** is a voiceless sound i. e. there is no vibration of the vocal cords. The lips and the posterior position of the mouth are closed. It is the same as the unaspirated English *p* and many make the mistake of giving it the same sound as the English aspirated *p*.\* There is no recoil to the lips when it is the final letter. To demonstrate this, watch the lips in a mirror and pronounce the English word "pop" and the Korean word **ㅍ**.







































**ㅍ** is produced with the same position of the lips as **ㅍ** except there is more tension of the lips which we may represent by a heavy line. It is

---


\* The same criticism applies to all the stop sounds which beginners are liable to give as aspirated.


# B.—PHONETIC TABLE KOREAN.


	STOP.	ASPIRATE.	COMBINATION OF STOP AND CONTINUANT NASAL.	CONTINUANT.		
				CENTRAL.	LATERAL.	FLAP OR TRILL.
Labial	 ㅂ	 ㅅ	 ㅍ	 ㅁ		
	 ㅃ	 ㅆ	 ㅑ	 ㅂ		
Dental	 ㄷ	 ㅌ	 ㄸ	 ㄴ	 ㄹ	 ㄹ
	 ㄷ	 ㅌ	 ㄸ	 ㄴ	 ㄹ	 ㄹ
Dental Labial						
Pre-Palatal						
Blade-Palatal	 ㅈ	 ㅊ	 ㅉ	 ㅊ		
	 ㅈ	 ㅊ	 ㅉ	 ㅊ		
Velar	 ㄱ	 ㅋ	 ㆁ	 ㆁ		
	 ㄱ	 ㅋ	 ㆁ	 ㆁ		
Glottal						





not made with a vibration of the vocal cords as is the English *b*. \*


 **ㅃ** differs from the unaspirated **ㅂ** in that there is more tension of lips and it is immediately followed by a sound originating in the glottis and is made much like a roughened *h* sound in English. This we represent by the curving forward of the posterior line).


 **ㅄ** is formed in the same way as the English *m* except there is less vibration of the vocal cords. It has much the sound of the final *m* of the word *rheumatism*. **ㅄ** final has no recoil to the lips before a vowel.

 **ㅆ** before the vowel **ㅏ** is like the English *wh* except for a slight roughening of the sound. Korean has no equivalent of *w* because he does not vibrate the vocal cords.

 **ㅈ** final **ㅈ**. The lips are open and the tongue slightly raised posteriorly with its tip against the teeth and the posterior of the mouth closed. **ㅈ** final has no recoil.

 **ㅊ** is formed in the same way as **ㅈ** except there is more pressure of the tongue against the teeth and more tension of the tongue, which we may represent by the dark marking. No vibration of vocal cords.

 **ㅊ** is made in the same position as **ㅈ** with more tension to the tongue with the addition of the roughened *h* sound explained above.


 Initial **ㅊ** is formed the same as the English *n* except the tip of the tongue is against the teeth and there is no vibration of the vocal cords, being a

---

\* There is no exact equivalent of the English *b* in Korean.




voiceless sound it is sometimes not pronounced at all or may have the consonantal *y*, sound as in *어*.


 Final *ㄹ* is formed by having the lips and the posterior position of the mouth open and the tip of the tongue against or just behind the upper teeth—the current of air coming out on either side.

It differs from the English final *l* as follows :

- (1) With the English *l*, the tip of the tongue is in the prepalatal region, whereas in Korean the tip of the tongue is as above indicated against or just above the upper teeth.
- (2) The English final *l* has a recoil whilst the Korean has not.
- (3) The English final *l* is usually accompanied with vibration of the vocal cords while the Korean final has little if any vibration.

 *ㄹ* medial is produced by placing the tip of the tongue against or just above the upper teeth and with the sides of the tongue not as full out as the English *r* in this same position and making a flap, i. e. bringing the tongue down to the floor of the mouth. Occasionally there is a slight trill instead of a flap. The sound is not accompanied by a distinct vibration of the vocal cords as is usual in English.


It may be noted by the above table that the Korean has no consonant sounds in the dental labial or prepalatal positions. The change of the prepalatal position in English to the dental position in Korean is one of the most striking changes.


 The consonant *ㄴ* (except when final see above) occupies a position midway between the prepalatal and blade palatal positions.


It is made by a continuous current of air coming centrally through a space left by the edges of the tongue coming in contact with the roof of the mouth at the midway point above mentioned.


This point may be ascertained with considerable exactness by pronouncing in English the following, *sin*, *syin* and *shin*. In other words in the Korean the tongue is midway between the English *s* and *sh* and has somewhat the *sy* sound.


Furthermore, it should be noted that the Korean is more subdued than the usual English *s*.

 ㅅ The position of the organs are the same as in ㅈ but there is more tension. There is not however the vibration of the vocal cords which would give the English *z* sound.


 ㅆ is in the blade palatal position. It is a voiceless sound made by the arched portion of the tongue coming in contact with the roof of the mouth at the point indicated in the diagram. The lips are open and the posterior portion closed.


 ㅈ is produced in the same manner except there is more tension of the tongue. It has not the distinct vibration of the vocal cords as the English *j*.


 ㅊ is produced in the same way as ㅆ with addition of roughened *h*. It is nearly like the English *ch*.


 There is in Korean an *ny* sound which is the same position as ㅆ except that there is an opening posteriorly allowing the air to go through the nose. This sound is not accompanied by the distinct vibration of the vocal cords, in other words

the ㄴ is almost voiceless. This probably accounts for the differences in pronunciation in some parts of the country the ㄴ being distinct, and in other parts it is left out entirely. e. g. **녀한**.

 ㄷ occupies the velar position. The lips are opened the posterior part of the mouth is closed off by an arching back of the tongue as indicated. It is a voiceless sound. There is no recoil to the final ㄷ.

 ㄷ' is produced in the same way as ㄷ with the exception of more tension of the tongue. It is not accompanied by as distinct a vibration of the vocal cords as is the English *g*.

 ㄸ differs from ㄷ only in more tension of the tongue and the roughened *h* sound following.

 ㄹ is produced with the same position as ㄷ except there is an opening posteriorly indicated by arrow allowing the current of air to go through the nose. There is also a less distinct vibration of the vocal cords than is found in English *ng*.

There is no recoil to this consonant in Korean.

The ㅇ sound in Korean is unlike the *h* in English in that it is more of an aspirate made with tongue raised at the back and a roughened sound of glottis, while the English *h* is a continuant sound and voiceless.

## PHONETIC CHANGES.

The above table of Korean consonants is of value not only as an aid to producing the sounds but also as an aid in understanding the so-called euphonic changes.

For example it is stated in books that ㄷ before ㄴ, ㄹ, and ㅁ becomes ㅇ, but no reason or explanation is given.

By referring to the Table it will be noted that ɣ is a velar, stop, voiceless sound and to change from this consonant to ʌ would require two movements, viz. opening the posterior portion to allow the air to go through the nose and placing the tip of the tongue against the teeth. ɔ is in the velar position, but is a nasal sound and requires but one change, namely the changing of the tongue to become ʌ. Therefore to facilitate the ease of speaking ɣ becomes ɔ because one change is easier to make than two, i. e. euphony is ease of utterance.

As nasal sounds are stronger than stops so the laterals as ɹ (medial) are stronger than nasals.

The change of ʌ to ɹ between two vowels is because the position of the Korean tongue makes it easier to say ɹ than ʌ. Phonetic changes are not infrequently a good clue to the organic positions.

### NORMAL POSE.

As a preliminary to the discussion of the vowels it will be well to note what is meant by the term, normal pose, or, as it is sometimes called, "organic basis," or "basis of articulation." These all refer to that characteristic attitude of the vocal organs, as produced by their positions and tensions, which prevails among any given race, while they are in the act of speaking their language. It might be termed the musical "key" of the language. The points to be observed in determining this are, whether the lips are forward, back, or neutral, whether the throat is open or rather shut, the tongue high or low, front or back, and whether the organs are tense or lax.

The imitation of the involuntary grunt, "uh," which occurs between the words of an unready speaker, is the

best key to his normal pose. So too, if one will make a Korean open his mouth and give with open jaw the vowels 아, 어, 으, and compare the position of the tongue in saying the English "a" (ah), it will be a great help to securing the correct normal pose. The high back tongue and shut throat which is, with high tension, so characteristic of Korean speech, makes one wonder that any one can speak Korean without getting a "preacher's sore throat."

### VOWEL MODIFICATIONS.

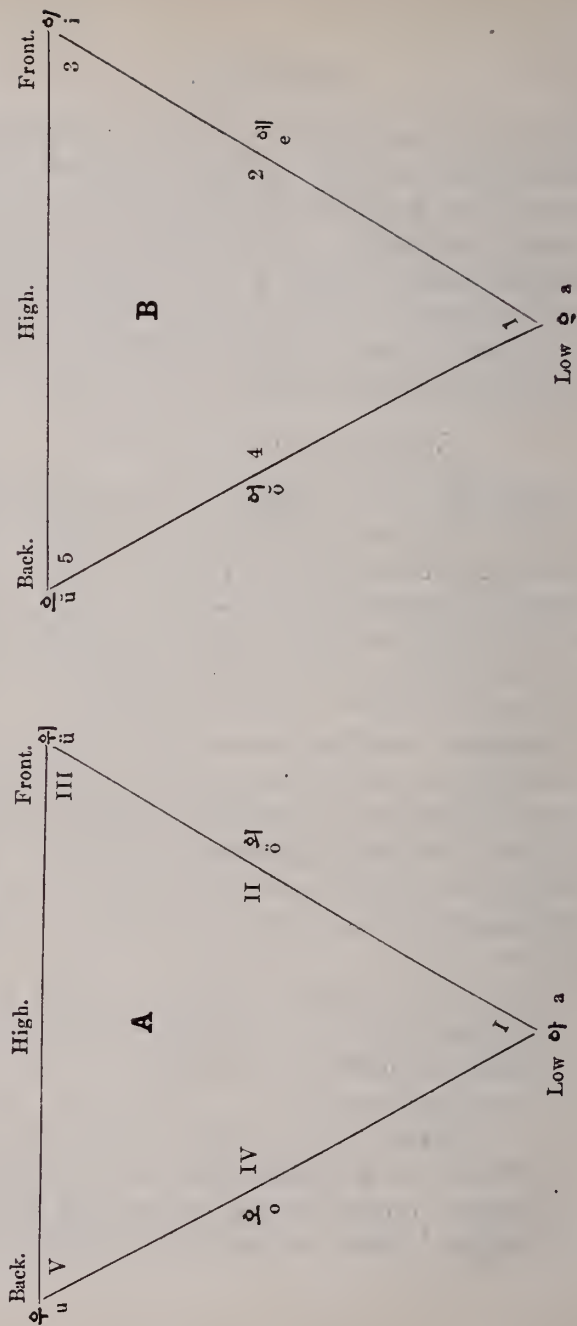
These arise from the changes in the oral cavity, made by the varying shapes and tensions of the softer organs, as when the lips are spread or passive or rounded; when the tongue is highest at back, mid, front, or tip; or when the velum, the soft palate, is open, neutrally shut, or rounded. Further, all these organs may be lax or tense, which are also termed "wide" or "narrow."

Rounding. Rounding is the making of the oral passage round at one or more points. It is distinguished as outer, between the lips; inner, between the back of tongue and the velum; and medial, between the front of the tongue and the hard palate. English has only inner and outer rounding, while Korean, with French and German, has all three.

*Vowels Triangles.* Korean has two complete triangles, though one or two of the vowels are not found everywhere in the peninsula. It has but one or two diphthongs.

Triangle "A" is formed, where the lips are either spread or neutral, and "B" is composed of rounded vowels. If you take any of the Arabic numbered vowels, and round it, you get the corres-

# VOWEL TRIANGLES.



ponding Roman number, unless it be for I. If to these ten vowels we add the one unclassified vowel short a **ㅏ**, not written in the diagram, you get eleven, the number of vowel signs in King Se-jong's alphabet. It raises the question as to whether the symbols, constant in number, may not have changed in signification, as have the vowel symbols of English. Vowel III **ㅓ** is pronounced in some places as 3 **이**, and in some as a consonant and vowel, *ui*. The symbol **ㅜ**, *ui*, is often pronounced as 3, **이**. It offers a field for investigation especially if any old rhymed poetry might be available to help to determine what the older sounds really were.

As we take up the A vowels and say **ㅏ** *ǎ* **ㅓ** *e* **ㅜ** *ĩ* we note how the tongue comes to the front of the mouth and raises higher and higher toward the back. The tongue positions of the B triangle cannot be observed by the mirror, owing to the closed position of the lips.

While both *a*'s **ㅓ** and **ㅜ** are now sounded alike, yet it may be they had this same difference of rounding, as in our English *a*, in father, and *α*, in all. If so the triangles would be complete at the apex; and if the pronunciation of the German *ü*, as now heard in Southern Korea, is the original sound of the symbol **ㅜ**, then the whole triangle agree, part for part.

The vowels frequently have two pronunciations, one a long, which occurs in syllables that have the stress; and the short, which occurs in both stressed and unstressed syllables. This short sound may differ in quality from the long, but it often differs only in quantity, that is, sometimes you may hear a short *i*, as in the word **집**, *house*, where the vowel is not the same as our English



short *i*. but a short *e* sound. So it may be with short *a*, *e*, *o* and *u*, Short *a* is often like the final *a* in "America."

The chief difference between the sounds *e* and *i*, as distinguished from English *ey* (long *a*, so called) and *i* (long *e*) is in the final glide that is characteristic of all our English long vowels. Take a mirror and say *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, (ah, ey, ee, o, oo) and note the movement of the organs, as the sound comes to its finish. That is the "glide." Have a Korean give the similar sounds and you will see how immobile his lips are, and how his glide, if he does make one, is in his throat. In speech he really makes none though in giving the syllabary he frequently does.

The easiest way to learn the sounds *ö* and *ü* is by unrounding Korean *o* and *u*. They are also a trifle more lax than the rounded sounds. It is for this reason partly that I have concluded that the Roman symbols short *o* and *u* had best be used to designate them. Another reason, however, is that the symbols *ö* and *ü* in German have these same values, and as many study German before they come out it would seem better to retain these symbols with their former signification. The differences in sound of the two are all made by rounding the vowels of the corresponding position in triangle I, save the bottom vowel, *a*. A rounded throat, and the lip give an *o*,  $\text{—}$  from an *ö*  $\text{—}$ , and a rounded throat and lip give an *u*,  $\text{—}$  from an *ü*,  $\text{—}$  while rounded throat, lip and tongue give *ö ü* from *e* and *i*.

Any difficulty in mastering the sound *ö* will arise from failure to hold the front of the tongue in rounded shape against the hard palate. Difficulty in mastering the sound



*u*, misnamed French *eu*, arises in failure to unround the organs as they are in position to say *u*. The fact that the symbol *u*, ㅜ, has different sounds in words now written with this vowel, only shows phonetic decay, and means Korean like English should have a reform in spelling. Careful copying of the teacher's organic attitude and action in the pronunciation of these vowels will enable one to reproduce the sounds. Like begets like.

To unround ㅜ or 우, ㅝ or *u*, prolong the sound and at the same time insert the little fingers in the mouth and pull the lips toward the corners.

The study of phonetics is now recognized as an integral part of the study of any language and we had hoped to have been able possibly to add a Part III to this book that would have dealt very thoroughly with this subject. This however, being impossible we are very glad that the above digest of what Prof. Cummings prepared for the student of Korean is able to be presented at this time. It is due to Dr. A. I. Ludlow, to say that he kindly consented to undertake its preparation and we sincerely hope and trust that either he or others interested in the subject will elaborate the same so that a student of Korean may be enabled the more speedily to attain a good working knowledge of this language.

There have also been those who have desired that something on the line of English phonetics for the use of Korean students of English should be prepared and Mr. Sangkyu Pack, Ph. B. of Brown University, U. S. A. has kindly prepared Part II for such purposes.

## II ENGLISH-KOREAN PHONETICS.

# 鮮英音對照

母 音

## A

에이 此字는 九種의 各音이 有하니

(1)       $\bar{a}$       어이       $\bar{a}t\bar{s} = \text{어이} \underline{\underline{ㅈ}}$

(2)       $\bar{a}$       에       $\text{s\ddot{e}n'ate} = \left. \begin{matrix} \text{센} \\ \text{세} \end{matrix} \right\} \text{에 트}$

此는上節音에揚音이有함으로因  
호야生함

(3) a 「호」及「어」의間音이니

$$a_{11} = 5 \text{ 1 2 (을)}$$

(4) a=ǝ 「어」及「아」의間音이니

was 우<sup>하</sup>아<sup>하</sup> } 흐스

(5)        ä        아        ärm=아~口(암)

(6)      à      「아」分「이」의 間音

ask =  $\left. \begin{array}{c} \text{아} \\ \text{으} \end{array} \right\} \text{스 크}$ 

(7)  $\hat{a}=\hat{e}$     애~     $\hat{c}a\hat{r}e=개\sim$

(8)      ă      애      ăt=애 트

(9)      a      어      (不分明)此는 ǎ 와或ä 가有 ㄴ節音  
에揚音이업는境遇에生 ㅎ는니

about = 어썩우르

ăn'imal=에 네 물

## E

이 1 下의七音이有하니

(1)  $\bar{e}=\ddot{i}$      $\circ |$      $H\bar{e}=\text{ㅎ} |$

(2) ē 이 此는下節音에揚音이有함을因하  
호이니

Rēmāin' = 리 먼

- (3)  $\underline{e}=\bar{a}$  에이 Eight=에이 트  
 (4)  $\hat{e}=\hat{a}$  애~ where 화~  
 (5)  $\bar{e}=\bar{i}=\hat{u}$  어~ Hēr=허~  
 (6)  $\bar{e}$  에 (短) Mēn=멘  
 (7)  $\underset{\sim}{e}$  어 (不分明) 此는上節音에揚音이有  
 함으로生하느니  
 Mō'ment=모 | 멘트

## I

아이 四種의音이有하느니

- (1)  $\bar{i}=\bar{y}$  아이 ice=아이츠  
 (2)  $\bar{i}=\bar{y}$  이 in=인  
 (3)  $\bar{i}=\bar{e}$  이 | Pōlice=폴리 | 츠  
 (4)  $\bar{i}=\bar{e}=\hat{u}$  어~ Bird=씨~드

## O

오우 八種의音이有하느니

- (1)  $\bar{o}$  오우 old=오울드  
 (2)  $\dot{o}$  오 上節音에揚音이有함을因하야  $\bar{o}$   
 와如히長音이되지못하느니  
 Hērō=히 | 로  
 (3)  $\hat{o}$  오어 Fōr=후포~  
 (4)  $\bar{o}=a$  「어」와「오」의間音이라  
 nōt=낫 } 트  
 (5)  $\underset{\sim}{o}$  어 (不分明) 下節音에揚音이有  
 함으로「어」音又호되不分明  
 하느니라 cōsūme'=컨수 | 메  
 (6)  $\hat{o}=\bar{u}$  어 cōme=컴 (俗稱캬)  
 (7)  $\underset{\sim}{o}=\bar{u}=\bar{o}\bar{o}$  우 | dō=쑤  
 (8)  $\underset{\sim}{o}=\bar{u}=\bar{o}\bar{o}$  우 gōd=쑤드

## U

유 | 七種의 音이 有하니

- (1)  $\bar{u}$  유 |  $\bar{u}se=$  유 | 흐  
 (2)  $\bar{u}$  유  $\bar{d}ur\bar{a}'tion=$  두레 | 순  
 (3)  $\bar{u}=o$  어  $\bar{u}s=$  어스  
 (4)  $\bar{u}$  「아」와「어」의 間 音이 니 上 節 音에 有  
 扃 揚 音으로 因 하야 生 하는 바 이  
 라  $\bar{d}\bar{a}'t\bar{u}m=$  떼 | 념  
 (5)  $\hat{u}=\bar{i}=\bar{e}$  으어  $\hat{u}rn=$  으연  
 (6)  $\bar{u}=o$  우 |  $\bar{r}ude=$  루 | 드  
 (7)  $\bar{u}=o$  우  $Put=$  푸트

## W

싸블뉴

此字는 音이  $\bar{o}\bar{o}=\bar{u}=$  우 | 니 恒 常  
 他 母 音 字 나 子 音 字 와 併 合 하 여  
 發 音 이 되 는 니 라

## Y

와이 二種의 音이 有하니

- (1)  $\bar{y}=\bar{i}$  이  $c\bar{i}'t\bar{y}=$  씨티  
 (2)  $\bar{y}=\bar{i}$  아이  $b\bar{y}=$  뺨이  
 $oi=oy$   $\overbrace{호이}$  Boy=썩이  
 $ou=ow$   $\overbrace{아우}$  Out=아우트

## 子音

## B

씨 |

我 諺 文 에 「ㅂ」와「ㅅ」의 間 音이 니 例  
 扃 建 디

Boy=썩이

$C\bar{o}mb\bar{i}n\bar{a}'tion=$   $\left. \begin{matrix} \text{캄} \\ \text{킵} \end{matrix} \right\}$  빈네순

## C

씨 1

此字는二音이有하니

- (1) 我諺文에「ㄱ」와「ㄱ」의間音되느境  
遇니即「K」字와同하니라

Căn=킨

mū/sic=무 1 시크

- (2) 「ㅅ」와「외」의間音이니

Cěntēr=센 } 터~  
썬

Āce=에이스

## Ch

「C」와「H」의二字가結合하야三種  
의音을成하느니

- (1) 上에論한 C=K 와同하境遇

Chēmistry=케미스추리

Christ=크라이스트

- (2) 「ㅈ」音이有하境遇

Chěsş=체스

Child=차일드

- (3) 「Sh」字音과同하境遇니此字의音  
은我諺文으로表示키難하기로  
「ㅎ」로表함

Chěroōt'=허우~트

Māchīnē'=메허인

## D

딕 1

「ㄷ」音도되고「ㄷ」音도되느니例하  
면

Dŏ=딕 1

Gōd=싸 1 드

## F

에프

此字의音과仿佛하거슨我諺文에  
는업느니라此音을發코져할진  
되上齒를下唇內에接付하고

「氣音」이有<sup>ㅎ</sup>「고」음을前齒間으로出發<sup>ㅎ</sup>면此음을得<sup>ㅎ</sup>을지니라

France=프랑스

Bœuf=썰 | 흐

## G

지 |

此字는「ㄷ」와「ㄱ」의間音이니

Göd=싸 | 드

或時는「ㄷ」와「ㄱ」의間音도되느니라

Gěrmǎnyǐ=썰 } 린네  
저 }

## Gh

F 字의音과同<sup>ㅎ</sup>

Enough=이너후

## H

에이취

此는英音의所謂「氣音」이라稱<sup>ㅎ</sup>는音이니我의「ㅎ」와相當<sup>ㅎ</sup>느니라

Hē=히 |

「H」字는「C」「G」「P」「S」「T」「W」字等과連合<sup>ㅎ</sup>야各種의音을成<sup>ㅎ</sup>느니라以上에「Ch」及「Gh」는論<sup>ㅎ</sup>바여니와「Ph」「Sh」「Th」「Wh」는「P」「S」「T」「W」字下에見<sup>ㅎ</sup>라

## J

썬

此音은上에論<sup>ㅎ</sup>바「G」字第二音과同<sup>ㅎ</sup>야「ㄷ」와「ㄱ」의間音이니例<sup>ㅎ</sup>를진디

Jew={썬 |  
썬 |

Jack={썬  
썬 |

## K

## 케

此字는二音이有하니

- (1) 「ㄱ」字와同하야 「ㅋ」와 「ㆁ」의間  
音이有하境遇라

Kōrē/a=고리 | 아

King=킹

- (2) 或時는 「ㄱ」와相當하느니

Händkerchief=헝거취취

「K」가 「N」上에在하境遇에는 「K」  
는發音되지 아니함은原則이라  
할지라

## L

## 엘

此字는二音이有하니

- (1) 빗침 「ㄹ」와同하境遇

All=올

- (2) 「L」의音을發코저하면舌端을口  
蓋(上顎)에付하며同時에 「氣  
音」이有하듯하 「ㄹ」音을發하  
느니라此音의表는 「ㄹ」로定함

Lāce=라 | 스

## M

## 엠

「ㅁ」와同하니라

Mān=민

Hām=힘 (빗침의 「ㅁ」)

## N

## 엔

- (1) 「ㄴ」와同하느니

Nāme=네임

Man=민 (빗침의 「ㄴ」)

- (2) 빗침 「ㅇ」와同하境遇도有하니

Lingēr=령거~

## Ng

「N」라 「G」의 二字가合하야받침  
「ㅇ」이되느니

Sing=쌍

Singēr=쌍어~

## P

피ㅣ

此字는兩音이有하니字頭에在호  
時는恒常氣音이有호고로 「교」  
音이有호고他에在호境遇에는  
「日」가되느니例를舉호전디

Pie=파이

Măp=립

「P」가字頭에在호며 「n」 「s」 「t」 字  
前에잇는境遇에는 「P」 音이恒  
常默音이되느니라

## Ph

「F」와同호

## Q

큐ㅣ

此字는無音호고恒常 「u」 字와結  
合하야二音を成하느니

(1) 「K」 字와同호

Liquōr=려키~

Piqu'ant=피칸트

(2) 「Kw」의音即 「파」「과」「귀」「퀴」의  
音이有하느니例를舉호전디

Quail=퀘ㅣ리

## R

아[리]

兩種의音이有하니

(1) 「리」相當

Māry=메리

(2) 字頭에在호든지字末에在하야는  
「애」의音이有호듯호 「리」音을



發하야得하느니라  
Right=~라이트

## S

에스

(1) 「쓰」와同호境遇  
Sün=썬

(2) 氣音이有호「스」音이니(此는「쓰」로表호)  
Is=이쓰

(3) 「샤」 「쉬」 의音과同호境遇니 「Sh」와同호니라  
Sūre=슈~  
Lēisūre=려 | 슈~

Sh

「Ch」 卽 「샤」 「쉬」 와 同호境遇  
Shē=쇼 |  
Shine=샤인

## T

티 |

此字은三種의音이有호니

(1) 氣音이有호境遇卽「든」와同호境遇가是라  
It=잇트  
to=투

(2) 「U」 字와 「R」 字의前에在하야는「T」 는「大」音이有호듯하니라  
Nātūre=네 | 추~

(3) 「I」 字前에在하야氣音이有호「스」卽「古」音이有호니라  
Nātion=네 | 혼

Th

此付合은兩字中에一字의音도입고他音이有호니

(1) 舌端을上下齒間에置호고氣音이有호「든」音을發하느듯하느니라

Thick=헛크

Thin=헛

- (2) 舌端을上下齒間에置호고氣音이  
有호「ㄷ」音을發호는듯호느니

The=헛 |

Thine=하인

## V

애 |

此音을發호저호면上齒를下唇內  
에付호고齒間으로「ㅂ」을發호  
면其音을得호느니라

Vās = 애 | 흐

Wh

此付合의音은「Hw」니「화」「휘」  
의音과相當호느니

Wheat=휘 | 트

What=화 | 트

## X

此字의音은「G」와「Z」의結合호  
것即「ㄱ」와「ㅈ」의間音 과氣  
音이有호「ㅅ」호「라」라相當  
호느니라

Axle=익슬

Exāmpl=엑헛볼

- (2) 「K」字와「S」字結合即「ㄱ」와「ㅅ」  
의音으로도發音되느니

Fox=학 } 스

## Z

히 |

上論호氣音을帶호「S」即「ㅅ」相  
當이니

Zōng=존

## APPENDIX B.

## PECULIAR FORMS.

While we have given in the book itself rules from which we believe almost every form of the spoken language can be derived there are certain forms that have come over at times from the book language and also other forms derived from the now obsolete verbs and also certain other forms that are almost restricted to Korean poetry.

While it is impossible to enter into a discussion of all these forms at this point a few words may possibly aid the student in the study of the same. We will therefore, consider briefly a few of these under three heads :—

I. Peculiar forms.

II. Poetic usage.

III. Book forms.

## I. Peculiar forms.

There were originally in Korean a number of honorific forms of the verb in which in a peculiar way the subject of the verb was honored by the use of the same. These verbs in most of their forms are now obsolete so that the dictionary will hardly record them and consequently there may be, naturally, difficulty in finding certain forms still remaining over from the now obsolete verb. Notably among these we would mention **흐옵다** (already referred to in the body of the book) **듯줍다** for **듯다** *to hear*. **밧줍다** for **밧다** *to receive*.

The following forms may be derived from these:  
**흐오이다**, **흐외다** **흐도소이다**, **이로소이다**, **이을시다**,

which are all declarative; **하샤이다**, imperative; **뜻자와**, a verbal participle, and **맞잡지**, a negative base.

This might be carried out almost indefinitely but the above will show how such forms are derived.

## II. Poetic forms.

In Korean poetry which has at times both rhyme and rhythm and which to no small extent inclines to what might almost be termed Oriental Antiphonies; many of the regular forms will be found with slight divergencies from common usages. In the desire for rhythm the form in **예** marked No. 2, in both the declarative and propositive terminations is very largely used and when so used the fact that it is not a polite form is lost sight of entirely. Thus in poetry **하네** (declarative) **하게** (imperative) **하세** (propositive) will be freely used and implies no inferiority at all, in the person addressed or spoken of.

In their antiphonies the verbal noun in **함** with **이여** in the first part and **이로다** in the second part will be very common. Verse after verse of their poetry will continue down with **함이여** for the end of the first half of the verse, and **함일로다** for the second half.

Questions and soliloquies are poetically put with forms of **하느고**, **흘고** and the ending in **가**. Exclamations are not unfrequently given with the forms **인더** and **진더**.

It is a pity that in most of our hymnology next to no attention has been paid to proper poetical forms, but this of course, will come in time. It should also be borne in mind that Korean poetry does not commonly follow the foreign plans of four lines following each other but as a rule has two lines each, two lines above, and two lines below. Whether this should be introduced in our hymnology time alone will show but it is to be hoped

that some of the students of Korean will make a special study of the poetic forms.

### III. Book forms.

It may possibly be in the book forms that the student will find his greatest difficulty especially as he will have considerable to do with these in his reading and preparation of Korean books. One of the greatest difficulties in the reading of Korean is the lack of punctuation points, capitalization or any thing whatever, to mark the breaks in speech and consequently, as we pick up Korean novels or other books that record conversations and describe scenes we are constantly met with what seems to us an absolutely unnecessary repetition of "he said" and "said he," etc, etc through the whole book. It seems almost necessary for the Korean.

Attempts are being made to introduce into Korean certain forms of punctuation, capitalization, etc, etc; to enable us to have a more intelligent idea of the page of printed matter almost at a glance than can be obtained now. While there are those that claim that there is no punctuation in Korean it should be noticed that the verbal endings of the paragraphs may be said to be the equivalents of punctuation.

The endings **니, 거늘** are said by some to be the equivalent of commas; **하느니라** and **흔지라** may be said to be the equivalents of a colon or semi-colon, while **하느니라** and **하더라** mark a complete ending.

When there is a series of quotations marking answers back and forth in a conversation **하니** and **하거늘** are very commonly used alternately making the statement and the reply.

The honorific verb in **시** gives us quite often in book

form the verbal participle in **샤** which naturally is the honorific form of a participle in **히려**.

The following list of book forms should therefore be carefully studied with the teacher:—**하더라** **하니라** **하덕시다** **하노라** **이로라** **이러라** all of which are declarative, and may mark the ending of a complete sentence. In addition to these we should also make a careful study of such forms as these; **하거늘**, **하니** **일가보냐**, **인더**, **하느니**, **하샤**, **이닛교**, **이니이다**, **하니이다**, etc.

#### IV. Letter writing.

In the matter of Korean letter writing all students should endeavor to attain efficiency and the following forms have been prepared and a careful study of the same will we believe be of considerable benefit to the student.

---

# 년월일 부답

사름을 권하여 농스나 혹 실시 아니 되게 하고 공부를 근간히 하여 이만 곳친다  
 경영하는 일이 뜻과 맞지 못하여 오래 되니 답답하다 점점 농시는 되어오니 너는 집안  
 나는 직중에 무고하고 주인의 후덕과 일리의 온화함으로 직리 한고의 괴로움은 업스나  
 쉰난지 오래 되어 굶굶 무궁하더니 글시보니 무양하고 혼술이 무고하다하니 다힘이다

## 답가으셔

년월일 주모 상셔

무고하오니 복행이오며 속히 환초하시기 바라옵고 이만 알외옵는다

모간절이외이다 쇼주는 침식이 무양하옵고 어마님씩셔도 안녕히 계시옵고 가늌가다  
 직중 귀후 만감하옵시고 보시는 일은 뜻과 맞치 잘되옵고 어는날 좀 환초하옵실는지 복  
 힘초하신지 드포 되오나 문안 듯잡지 못하와 하정 답답하오이다 춘일이 부도하온디

## 아바님 전상셔

아들이 집에 잇서 부친셔 하는것

다들포수이릭충신상이평결하고학교시험에몇년급이나되었스며날마다상학하  
네가집을떠난지루일에무수히가서무양히잇는지쇼식진시못드러금금갑갑하

### 이희의게

### 모가아들 공부간디

년월일 조모 평신

굿치니히외풍설에몸을조심보호하고근면하여공부하기를브란다

업하고도라와일반청년의수표되기를간절히브란다수연무궁하나로망으로이만  
양하니다행하다그리온회포무궁하나브라는거슨네가공부를독실히하야속속히잘  
가집에업슨후로쥬야실혼할듯하다너의조무써서안강하시고너의부모형데도무  
상훈증세나업스며려관숙식에음식이덕구흔지스려만만일다나는병은업스나네  
하니창결흔심회를지필노다괴록못하갓다말고먼슈로에무수득달하야히풍에  
너를유치이히로알고일시라도눈압해업스면천금을일흔듯하던바로히외에분리

### 손이의게

### 손자가외국류학하느디



## 년월일 주 (아모)

상서

괴테 강녕 함읍시기를 축슈 함읍노이다

례를 폐함읍고 가수를 불고함오니 하절에 죄송 함와이다 이만 알외오며 티릭

극난함을듯 슈야 근심이오며 제몸의 공부를 위함와 년만함신 조부모와 양당에 신히의  
무탈함읍고 학교 시험에 드리와 미일 상학함오나 과정이 다단함와 둔질 용지로 졸업이  
각 집이 편안함시며 동성 쇼음들도 무함함오니 복행이오며 주는 무수도착함와 침식이  
시중 괴후 만강함읍시고 할아바님 두분 데절이 만강함읍시며 아바님 괴테 강왕함시고  
무리 온지 들포 되와 하회 섭섭함읍더니 하셔 밧자와 복희 만만이오며 이 동안

## 어마님전 상답서

년월일 모 평신

아니훈다 너는 가루 넘려는 말고 공부를 독실히함기 밋고 브란다

써셔도 만안함시고 가늌가 다 무고함며 으히들도 충실함니 만행일다 대쇼 가수의 말은  
논지 여러 가지로 굼굼함다 여귀는 할아바님 두분 침슈 만안함시고 너의 대인(아바지)

## 년월일 모

를 닮다

괴 효성이 업슬듯하다 심요 이만 곳치니 리리 시봉 평길하고 삼가 조심하여 잘지내기  
다 미일 근간히 조심하여 효봉 송순하여 쇠가의 청예를 듯는다 하는 말을 드르면 이 बात  
이 간절하여 닢지 못하는 중 미진한 인수로 구당의 걱정이나 아니 듯는지 스려 만단일  
하시고 너의 대인 아와 안강하시고 은혜들이 무양하니 다 힘이나 나는 주쇼간에 네 생각  
하시며 각닥이 일안들하시나 향념 무궁하다 시슬 시하면 성술이나 시술이라 칭함 무고하고 할아바님 안녕  
시봉 조부 모가 잇스면 중시봉이라 함 신상이 평길하고 량대 존후 만강하시며 서랑 형제 남미 분도 평안  
스며 그후 들포 되어 굶굶하기 우편으로 두어 주붓친다 근일 일기 그새 일기 대로 할 것 부요한디  
홀쳐 보낸후 홀연 섭섭하기 지필노 다 괴록 못하겠다 하인 회편에 글시 보고 마득 반것

## 아모집 보아라

모가 쓸의게

식집성대로 아모  
집이나 실이라함

지남선이 바늘을 쓰으는 거슨 네브러 저덕이 결비훈자라야 감당하는 바요 실노 데와  
 님이 나를 천거함을 사례      평교의게

년월일 사형 답서

무를 속히 청장하고 도라가 훈가지로 양로하기를 생각하노라 이만 곳친다

니 봉양지 절이야 범연하랴 사형은 꼭디 범빅이 신산하나 엇지 피롭다하겠나 대더  
 량당 테후 안강하시다 하니 만행이오 가중이 무고하니 깃브다 내가 업서도 네가 잇스  
 분리흔지 오래 되어 심히 창연한 중 글을 보니 위션 혼회하며 시중 신상이 태평하고

답 사대서

년월일 사대 (아모)

상서

오며 이만 상달 하노이다

오래 계심으로 량당의 우려함이 갑호시오니 민망하와이다 속히 환초 흡시기를 브라  
 이다 사대는 량당 괴력 못잡지 안코 각절 일한 하시오니 다행이오나 형님씩서 꼭디에  
 괴후 만안 흡습시고 경영하시는 일은 예산과 못치 될듯하오니가 두루 복념 간절 하와  
 써나신 후로 풍일이 불순하온디 엇더케 득달하섯스며 써치시는중에

형님전 상서

남조 형데간

괴테후 만안함읍신지 복모 간절함오며 데즈는 친후가 셔중으로 여러 날 미녕함시와 초  
방학시 하직함온 후 문안 모로와 하회 섬섬함오며 로염(老炎)이 심함온디 이쎄

### 상서

### 스데간 왕복

년월일 데 (아모)

비

기드리리오 이와긔치 과도함 칭예를 밧으오니 붓그림습는다

쎄사지 침체함심을 사름마다 미우가셔히 아는 바여늘 엇지 다만 데의 구구함 포양을  
빅옥이 엇지 영영 흠에 못치고 쓰이는 바 1 되지아나함리오 형의 넉넉함신 포부로 이

### 답

년월일 데 (아모)

비

지닛소오릿가 종초가셔 뵈오려니와 위션 두어조로 치샤함읍는다

감당함을느니 두렵스온중 이로 좇차 흥업의 괴초를 세움이 만형이외다 몽미 중인들 엇  
산과긔치 높고 바다긔치 깊흔지라 엇지 다 감샤타함오릿가 그러나 형의 념려대로 가히  
치용렬 훈자의 닐을바는 아니어늘 형이 늦바아지 아니함시고 과도히 천망함신은혜

르오니 하정에 황송한은 말씀 다 알외을수업소오며 로양 여에 련한읍서  
 형초한읍신지 들이 지내읍도록 상셔치 못한읍고 하셔도 맛잡지 못하와 이새서지 문안모

### 부쥬전 상박시

아들이 킁리에 계신 부친새한는 서식

년 월 일 정말 (성명) 돈

지내 노라

도섬섬한도다 정말(情末)은 아직 한 모양이나 학교 범박이 여의치 못하야 날노 슈란이  
 이로다 슈유는 괴별대로 허하야 주나 리학 시에 켈석함도 민망한고 진시 맛나지 못함  
 천환으로 초민히 지내시는 일 듯기 너머 놀나오며 무손 약이나 써 드리는지 쏘한 향념  
 심한 더위에 생각이 미양 간절한더니 정찰 보고 깃부나

답

년 월 일 며즈 (성명) 상셔

형유한오니 하량한오서 일쥬일 슈유를 주시와 천환을 구호케 한읍시기 브라노이다  
 민한온 정소가 곁흔 쉼날 길에 업스움으로 추기 리학에 진시 참여치 못한을듯 한읍기

로가 불가하야 우금까지 음식이 순하치 못함으로 병이 절노 성기는중 불일이 헛든 머  
하니 이보다 더 줄거온 일이 쓰 어 더 잇겠느냐 이제는 믿음의 노한다 부는 이곳에 슈  
대방 제절이 안녕하옵시며 네 주당씩셔도 범절이 일안하시고 너의 형제 남의도 충견하다  
업는중에

하지도 못북쳐 조민훈 심회를 진명치 못하던 후에 네 슈셔를 밧아 보니 반갑기 측량  
집을 써난지 수삭이 갓갑도록 충요한 일에 억미여 잠시도 한극을 잊지 못함으로 편지

## 답가으셔

년월일 주모 상셔

하서로 조쳐하게 하교하옵심을 복망하옵는이다 여불비상달

과하을 도리를 차리겠습는이다 세쇄훈 말씀은 협지에 모다 알외오니 하감하옵신 후 곳  
니 복형이외다 근일 곡가가 점징하옵고 전정이 군졸하오니 속히 분부를 무려야도  
하성이외다 조모님 기테와 주친씩옵셔 제절이 조안하시고 조도 동성들과 무탈이잇소호  
기테후 안녕하옵시고 보시옵는일이 신속히 타협이나갓습는잇가 부모 원념하와 불임

못하이새에

습노이다 못춤 신편이 잇습기 두어주 알외오며 가을 괴운은 점점 늙스온디 슬피읍지  
알겄습노잇가 상셔나 붓치려흔온들 먼 길에 인편이 간단하오니 억울흔 스정도 펴수업  
당하오매 미양 문을 쉰난 회포를 견디지 못하와 비감흔 눈물이 옷깃슬 적시느줄 누가  
아바님 슬하를 쉰나 외로히 이곳에 와서 잇스온지 거연히 춘하를 다 지내읍고 이 새를

### 출가흔 딸이 친뎡 부친셔 하느 셔식

년월일 부 답셔

방심말고 아비 도라갈 새를 기드려라 늙은 말은 총요하여 이만긋친다

거던 김 아모의게 가서 말하면 얼마던지 되여주리라 내가 쉰날 새에 부탁하엿다 부디  
대방에 효성을 극진히하야 아모도록 병환 나지아니시게 하여라 양도와 용전이 부족하  
내가 어느새 도라가던지 그동안 여전히 집을 보전하고 불초흔 아비디신

더기드려 귀댁이 나지 아니할 모양이면 스세 박부득이 다 물니쳐 버리고 갈바피업다  
리 못하야 취셔가 망연흔즉 집에도라갈 괴한이 부지하세월이다 아모리 생각하여도 좀

육곤절하야 그리하니 하여도 수히 사름을 부려 너의 식부씩 편지 하고 너를 잠시 보내  
너를 보내고 주쇼로 마음이 노히지 아닐썬더러 일구 월심홀수록 보고 심혼 생각이 더

## 설의계 답서

년월일 녀석 상벌시

(지면에는 아바님전 상술)이라고 쓰는법

안후나 알게하시옵쇼셔

이만 알외오니 회편에 하셔나 곳 붓치시와 위션

량당 슬하에 환오하옵는 줄거옵 엇기를 천만 북망하옵는 이다 붓슬 잡을 겨를이 업스와  
하촉하시옵쇼셔 어셔 밋비가셔 여러 남미로 더브러

천당 부모씩옵셔 식가 구고씩 보내 주시기 청하옵는 왕복이 잇서야 되겟스오니 일직  
팁이오며 어느때에나 드려가시랴 하심는 잇가 일일이 삼츄 못스오니 천가 근히하옵기는  
복려 불이옵는 이다 녀석은 존당 테후 일안하시고 혼도가 균길하오니 하념하옵시는덕  
괴테후 일형만 안하옵시고 어마님 제절 강건하옵시며 오라비와 동성들이 무양하오니가



괴레후 만안함읍시고 어마님 제절 안녕함읍시며 대도가 증길함시오닛가 복모 불이읍  
알외오며 춘일이 화창함온디 려함읍셔

우태가 멀니잇고 인편이 간단함화 오래 상셔치 못함니 하정에 죄송함온 말슴 엇지다

### 아바님전 상술이

조부가 친당에서 식부셔 상셔함는 셔식

년월일 친부 답셔

편지 볼스이도 업슬듯함기에 이만 곳친다

스니 형이나 너의 모친이 너를 보고십허 더욱 성화함니 오기는 속히 와야 함겟다 지리히  
든녀가셔 효양 부모함고 승순 군주함야 부도를 극진히함여라 친가에서는 아직 벌고 업  
업실수 업는고로 드리려 보내갓다마는 친가에 와셔 오래 잇는 법도 업는거시니 잠시  
모가네 부모요 친당 부모와 친당집은 다 쓸디 업는니라 출가함 후 친당에 근친 몇번  
거시니 그리알고 잇거라 그러나 녀주가 되여 나셔 한번 출가함매 식가이 네 집이오 식부  
시보니 반갑기 총량업다 이 회편에 너의 식부셔 편지 곳보치고 몇칠 후에 드리려 보낼  
라 청함 후에 곳 뒤쫓차 득고 올거슬 츠려 보내랴 함엇더니 못춤 인편이 잇기 무고함클

년월일 식부 답서

다 총요하야 다 못 적는다

병환도 나흐시겟다 부디 속히 오게하여라 너의 천령 어루신네셔도 셔스로 말씀 엿주엇  
민망하다 네가 어셔 와셔 제반스를 모도 슬피야 집안 살님 모양도 되고 너의 어머니  
아직 혼술이 무고하니 형이나 너의 식모셔서 속병으로 다일 피로히 지내시니 보기에  
십흔 생각 진덩키 어렵던 초에 무고히 잇서 천당 시봉 일안혼일 혼위 무량일다 시부는  
네가 귀덩혼지 자못 날이 오래매 아릿다운 용모가 눈가온디 미여 잇서 유쇼로 보고

답 조부서

년월일 조부 상술이

괴레후 강전하옵심 천만 복망 하옵나니 다

외오며 린린

하오니 의홀하심을 더하옵셔 불효의 허들을 용서하시옵쇼서 인편이 총총하와 늦비알  
와 덩성을 광컬하오니 불효 막대하온지라 녀름 날이 되기전에 다시 나아가셔 되시랴  
지 못하옵나이다 조부는 천령 제절이 태평하시오니 소행이오나 몸이 천가에 오래 류하

# ENGLISH INDEX.

N.B.—Numbers in ordinary types refer to Paragraphs in Part I. Heavy faced types refer to Part II.

## A

- Ability, Expressed by..... —  
수, 법 with 이소 ..... 222  
만 with 호 ..... 222  
Chap. I. § III., Sec. 7.  
*About* .....  
Chap. VII. § III. Sec. 11.  
*Above, over* ..... 113  
Chap. IX. Sec. 2 and 20.  
Abstract, nouns in 흥 ..... 53  
Chap. II.  
According to, in accordance with —  
Chap. IX. Sec. 22.  
*Accordingly* ..... —  
Chap. VII. § III. Sec. 2.  
*Across* ..... 113  
Chap. IX. Sec. 11.  
Adjectives ..... Chap. VIII.  
Chap. VI.  
Comparison of ..... 250ff  
Chap. VI. § II.  
Avoidance of..... 250  
Chap. VI. § II. Sec. 1.  
Comparative ..... 251, 252, 253  
Chap. VI. § II. Sec. 1.  
Superlative ..... 254  
Chap. VI. § II. Sec. 2.  
Classification of..... 243  
Chap. V.  
Nenter verbs..... 244  
Nouns as adjectives ..... 249  
Position in Sentence ..... 282  
Chap. VI. § I. Sec. I.  
Predicate form of ..... 244, 245  
Chap. VI. § I. Sec. 2.  
Pronominal..... 59ff  
Chap. V.  
Sinico-Korean ..... 243  
Use of 보다, 보람, 에서 in  
comparison ..... 252, 253  
Chap. VI. § II. Sec. 1.  
Wrong use of 브러, 브럼 ... 233  
Adverbs ..... Chap. IX. 255  
Chap. VII.  
Classification of..... 255  
Comparison of ..... 261  
Chap. VI. § II.  
Derived.  
,, from Verbs... 256, 257, 258  
,, in 게 and 이..... 253  
,, from Nouns..... 260  
Position in Sentence ..... 282  
Primitive ..... 255, 262  
Responsives ..... 265, 266  
Verbal Participle used as ... 259  
*After, Since* ..... 111, 260  
Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 26.  
*Again* ..... 255  
Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 8.  
Agency, Nouns of..... 52  
*Ag* ..... 255  
Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 18.  
*All* ..... 70  
Chap. V. Sec. 8.  
*Almost* ..... 224

<b>Chap. VII. § III. Sec. 10.</b>	<b>Chap. V. Sec. 12.</b>
Alphabet, Korean ..... 13ff	<i>Any</i> ..... 69
Consonants ..... 14, 28, 38	<b>Chap. V. Sec. 5.</b>
„ Aspirated ..... 39	<i>Around</i> ..... —
„ Names of ..... 40	<b>Chap. IX. Sec. 13.</b>
Sounds; its ..... 15ff	Article :
Vowels ..... 14-22	Definite ..... 43
<i>Already</i> ..... —	<b>Chap. III.</b>
<b>Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 14.</b>	Indefinite ..... —
<i>Also, too</i> ..... 267	<b>Chap. III.</b>
<b>Chap. X. Sec. 3.</b>	<i>As</i> ..... —
Although..182, 189, 190, 196, 198, 270	<b>Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 11.</b>
<b>Chap. X. Sec. 5.</b>	<i>As, like</i> ..... —
<i>Always</i> ..... —	<b>Chap. VII. § III. Sec. 5.</b>
<b>Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 1.</b>	<i>At</i> ..... 94, 99, 101, 104, 111
<i>Am, are</i> ..... —	<b>Chap. IX. Sec. 1.</b>
<b>Chap. I. § III. Sec. 1.</b>	<i>At once, directly</i> ..... —
<i>Among</i> ..... —	<b>Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 24.</b>
<b>Chap. IX. Sec. 12.</b>	Auxiliary Verbs ..... 210, 219
<i>And</i> ..... 182, 194, 200, 267, 268	<b>Chap. I. § III.</b>
<b>Chap. X. Sec. 1.</b>	
<i>Another other</i> ..... 70	

## B

Basal conjugation..... 127, 179	<i>Behind</i> ..... 111
Bases.	<b>Chap. IX. Sec. 15.</b>
„ Desiderative ..... 176	<i>Below</i> ..... 111, 112
„ Negative ..... 177	<b>Chap. IX. Sec. 21.</b>
Be, to, Verb.	<i>Besides</i> ..... —
Auxiliary ..... 211	<b>Chap. IX. Sec. 18.</b>
<b>Chap I. § I.</b>	<i>Between</i> ..... —
<i>Because</i> ..... 111, 113, 182, 186, 187, 188, 270	<b>Chap. IX. Sec. 16.</b>
<b>Chap. X. Sec. 9.</b>	<i>Beyond</i> ..... 113, 259
<i>Before</i> (place) ..... 111, 112	<b>Chap. IX. Sec. 11.</b>
<b>Chap. IX. Sec. 15.</b>	Book Language.
<i>Before</i> (time) ..... 111, 260	Diff. Verbal Termination of. 6
<b>Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 25.</b>	<b>Appendix B. III.</b>
	<i>Both, either, neither</i> ..... —
	<b>Chap. V. Sec. 2.</b>

<i>Both, and</i> (conj.) .....	267	<i>By and by</i> .....	202
<b>Chap. X. Sec. 2.</b>		<b>Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 22.</b>	
<i>But</i> (conj.) .....	182, 191, 267	<i>By, through</i> .....	94, 101, 102
<b>Chap. X. Sec. 4.</b>		<b>Chap. IX. Sec. 6.</b>	
<i>But</i> (prep.) .....	94		
<b>Chap. IX. Sec. 18.</b>			

# C

<i>Can, could</i> .....	221, 222	Classification of .....	267
<b>Chap. I. § III. Sec. 7.</b>		Co-ordinate .....	267, 268 <sup>3</sup> , 269
<i>Cardinal Numbers</i> .....	76	<b>Chap. X. Sec. 1, 2a.</b>	
Case Endings.		Distributive use, of <b>교, 며</b> ...	184,
„ Lack of .....	42		200, 268
„ Postpositions as .....	44	<b>Chap. X.</b>	
<b>Chap. IX.</b>		Phrases as .....	270
Causative voice .....	121, 122, 123	Position in Sentence .....	282
Chinese, Relation to Korean ...	7	<b>Chap. X.</b>	
Classifiers, specific .....	77	Conjunctions (Cont.)	
<b>Chap. VII.</b>		Subordinate .....	270
Comparison of adjectives .....	251	<b>Chap. X.</b>	
<b>Chap. VI. § II.</b>		With verbs .....	181 <sup>ff</sup>
Comparison of adverbs .....	261	<b>Chap. X.</b>	
Composite Postpositions... 111, 112		Meaning and uses with verbs	
<b>Chap. IX.</b>		see verbs with conj.	
Compound Nouns .....	51	<i>Consequently.</i>	
Compound Verbs .....	158	<b>Chap. VII. § III. Sec. 2.</b>	
Conciseness .....	10	Consonants .....	14
Conditional Sentences .....	183	„ Aspirated .....	28-39
<b>Chap. I. § VI. Chap. X.</b>		„ Doubled .....	28
<b>Sec. 8.</b>		„ Euphonic Changes in	29
„ <b>은</b> with verbal participle	105	„ Names of .....	40
Conjugation, Basal .....	127, 179	„ Pronunciation of... 30-39	
Conjunctions .....	Chap. X.	Continued future tense .....	135
<b>Chap. X.</b>		Contraction of verbs .....	230-241

# D

Days of month .....	83, 84	Declension, lack of .....	42, 44
Declarative Terminations .....	138,	a form of .....	
	139, 140	„ for nouns .....	44

a form for pronouns .....	62	<i>Directly, at once.</i>	
Demonstrative pronouns ...	71, 72	<b>Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 24.</b>	
<b>Chap. V. Sec. 1.</b>		Distributive Pronouns .....	69, 70
Derived adverbs.		<b>Chap. V. Sec. 2ff.</b>	
„ from Nouns.....	260	<i>Do, did</i> .....	211
„ from Verbs .....	256-259	<b>Chap. I. § III. Sec. 3.</b>	
Desiderative Base .....	176	<i>During.</i>	
Diphthongs .....	23-27	<b>Chap. IX. Sec. 17.</b>	

## E

<i>Each</i> .....	65, 70	Appendix "A" on Phonetics.	
<b>Chap. V. Sec. 3.</b>		„ Adverbial changes ...	256
<i>Either, neither, both.</i>		„ Consonantal .....	89
<b>Chap. V. Sec. 2.</b>		„ Postpositions, effect	
<i>Either, or</i> (conj.). 182, 189, 192.	267	on.....	42
<b>Chap. X. Sec. 6.</b>		Euphong Pronominal changes.	29
Elliptical forms .....	230ff 287	<i>Even</i> .....	—
Emphasis.		<b>Chap. VII. § III. Sec. 9.</b>	
„ Change of Order, by.	283	<i>Ever, never</i> .....	—
„ Postposition & by		<b>Chap. VII. § II Sec. 7.</b>	
use of .....	105	<i>Every</i> .....	70
<i>Enough.</i> .....	—	<b>Chap. V. Sec. 6.</b>	
<b>Chap. V. Sec. 18.</b>		<i>Except</i> .....	—
Ernmun.		<b>Chap. IX. Sec. 18.</b>	
(see önmun).			
Euphony .....	—		

## F

<i>Few</i> .....	—	Fractions .....	86
<b>Chap. V. Sec. 10.</b>		<i>Frequently, often</i> .....	—
<i>Finally, at last</i> .....	—	<b>Chap. VII. § II Sec. 4.</b>	
<b>Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 29.</b>		<i>From, out of, off</i> .....	94, 104, 106
<i>For</i> .....	94, 102, 111, 112, 113	<b>Chap. IX. Sec. 5.</b>	
<b>Chap. IX. Sec. 10.</b>		Future past tense.....	134
<i>Formerly, used to</i> .....	—	Future tense.....	134, 140
<b>Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 15.</b>		<b>Chap. I. § III. Sec. 5.</b>	

# G

Gender .....	45	<i>Generally, usually</i> .....	—
„ Exactness, lack of ...	43	<b>Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 3.</b>	
„ Expressed by Specific		Get.....	—
Particles .....	45	„ Causative .....	—
		<b>Chap. I. § III. Sec. 9.</b>	

# H

Half-talk ... 138, 140, 141, 144, 145		Honorifics, Importance of Use	
Have to, Verb .....	—	of .....	271, 280
<b>Chap. I. § II.</b>		„ Specific Hon. Nouns	278
As Auxiliary .....	—	„ Specific Hon. Verbs.	274, 275
<b>Chap. I. § III. Sec. 4.</b>		„ Terminations... 138ff	276
Causative sense.....	—	„ Terms for Servants	
{Chap. I. § III. Sec. 9.		etc. ....	230
{Chap. I. § II.		Honorifics Verbs Honoring	
<i>Here</i> .....	262	Object .....	275
<b>Chap. VII. § I Sec. 1.</b>		Honorifics Verbs Honoring	
<i>Hitherto</i> .....	—	Subject .....	274
<b>Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 16.</b>		Honorifics Two Combined .....	276
Honorifics 12..... Chap. XI.		<i>Hope, wish</i> .....	217
„ Construction of Hon.		<b>Chap. I. § III. Sec. 15.</b>	
Verbs .....	272, 273	<i>How</i> .....	—
		<b>Chap. VII. § III. Sec. 3.</b>	

# I

<i>If, unless</i> .....	182, 185, 267	Indicative Mood ...	147, 179, 180
<b>Chap. X. Sec. 8.</b>		Indirect Discourse .....	—
Imperative .....	148	„ Verbs in .....	228, 229
„ terminations .....	145	Infinitive .....	—
„ verb .....	229	<b>Chap. I. § IV.</b>	
Impersonality of Verb .....	115	<i>Instead of</i> .....	111, 112
<i>In</i> .....	94, 101	<b>Chap. IX. Sec. 19.</b>	
<b>Chap. IX. Sec. 2.</b>		<i>Intend</i> .....	—
Indefiniteness of Speech ... 10, 235,	288	<b>Chap. I. § III. Sec. 13.</b>	
Indefinite Pronouns. 66, 67, 68, 69		Interrogative Pronouns.....	66, 67,
<b>Chap. V.</b>			68, 69, 70
		<b>Chap. IV. § III.</b>	

## J

*Just now* ..... —

Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 19.

## K

Korean, Adjectives .....	243	Korean, Money .....	79, 80
Korean, Calendar.....	82, 83, 84	Korean, Relation to Chinese ...	7

## L

<i>Last at ; finally</i> .....	—	<i>Little while, a</i> .....	—
Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 29.		Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 29.	
<i>Late of ; recently</i> .....	—	<i>Long time, long</i> .....	—
Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 17.		Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 27.	
<i>Let</i> .....	144	<i>Look, seem</i> .....	221, 225, 226
Chap. I. § III. Sec. 9.		Chap. I. § III. Sec. 17.	
<i>Like, as</i> .....	—		
Chap. VII. § III. Sec. 5.			

## M

<i>Make</i> (causative) .....	—	Months, names of.....	82
Chap. I. § III. Sec. 9.		<i>More</i> .....	231, 232, 253, 261
<i>Many</i> .....	—	Chap. V. Sec. 16.	
Chap. V. Sec. 15.		<i>More—the more</i> .....	227
<i>May, might</i> .....	—	<i>Most</i> .....	254
Chap. I. § III. Sec. 8.		Chap. V. Sec. 17.	
Measures .....	90, 91	<i>Much</i> .....	—
Memorizing, necessity of.....	5	Chap. V. Sec. 14.	
Money, Korean .....	78, 80	Multiples .....	87, 88, 89
Moods.....	—	<i>Must</i> .....	153, 154
Indicative .....	147, 179, 180	Chap. I. § III. Sec. 10.	
Volitive .....	117, 148, 179, 180		

## N

Names, plurality of.....	55	Negative.	
Native, grammarians .....	11	„ Base .....	177
<i>Need</i> .....	—	„ Difference between 한	
Chap. I. § III. Sec. 16.		and 못.....	206



Negative Formation of Neg.	
Verb. ....	207
Negative Response to Neg.	
Quest. ....	265
Negative Use of Double Neg...	286
„ Verb 마오 .....	208
Note.—For negatives of English auxiliaries see desired verb under auxiliary Verbs.	

**Part II. Chap. I. § III.**

Neither, either, both (adj.) .....	—
------------------------------------	---

**Chap. V. Sec. 2.**

Neither, nor (conj.) .....	—
----------------------------	---

**Chap. IX. Sec. 7.**

Never, ever .....	—
-------------------	---

**Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 7.**

Neuter .....	—
--------------	---

„ Verbs as Adj... 119, 120,	244
-----------------------------	-----

**Chap. VI. § I. Sec. 1, 2.**

No, none, nobody .....	—
------------------------	---

**Chap. V. Sec. 7.**

Nouns .....	42
-------------	----

**Chap. II.**

Nouns Abstract in □ .....	53
---------------------------	----

**Chap. II.**

Nouns As Adjectives .....	249
---------------------------	-----

„ Agency, of .....	52
--------------------	----

„ Compound .....	51
------------------	----

„ Gender, in .....	45
--------------------	----

„ Indeclinable .....	42
----------------------	----

**Nouns (cont.).**

„ Number .....	43
----------------	----

„ Position in Sentence. 282	
-----------------------------	--

**Nouns (cont.).**

„ Proper .....	54, 55
----------------	--------

„ Reduplication .....	48
-----------------------	----

„ Verbal in 훈 .....	53, 171
---------------------	---------

„ „ in ㅎ .....	33, 172
----------------	---------

„ „ with p.p. 는 .....	173
-----------------------	-----

„ „ with p.p. 에 .....	174
-----------------------	-----

„ „ with p.p. 로 .....	175
-----------------------	-----

Now .....	255
-----------	-----

**Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 13.**

Number .....	43, 46, 47
--------------	------------

„ Distinction, lack of... 43	
------------------------------	--

„ Specific Words for	
----------------------	--

Plural .....	50
--------------	----

Numeral Adverbs.....	263
----------------------	-----

Numerals .....	74ff
----------------	------

**Chap. VIII.**

Numerals Adjectives, as .....	74
-------------------------------	----

„ Cardinal .....	76
------------------	----

„ Classifiers, Specific. 75, 77	
---------------------------------	--

**Chap. VIII.**

Numerals Fractions .....	86
--------------------------	----

„ Korean .....	74, 76
----------------	--------

**Chap. VIII.**

„ Measures .....	90, 91
------------------	--------

„ Money .....	79, 80
---------------	--------

„ Multiples .....	87, 88, 89
-------------------	------------

„ Ordinal.....	81
----------------	----

„ Sinico-Korean.....	74, 76
----------------------	--------

**Chap VIII.**

Numerals Substantives as .....	74
--------------------------------	----

„ Times and Season ... 8	
--------------------------	--

82, 83, 84, 85	
----------------	--

Weights .....	91
---------------	----

**O**

Of .....	94, 98
----------	--------

**Chap. IX. Sec. 9.**

Off, out of, from .....	94, 104, 106
-------------------------	--------------

**Chap. IX. Sec. 5.**

Often, frequently.....	—
------------------------	---

**Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 4.**

On .....	94, 101, 111, 112, 113
----------	------------------------

**Chap. IX. Sec. 3.**

<i>One, ones</i> ..... —	<i>Ought, should</i> ..... 221, 223
<b>Chap. V. Sec. 2.</b>	<b>Chap. I. § III. Sec. 11.</b>
<i>Only</i> ..... 94, 108, 255	<i>Out of, off, from</i> ..... 94, 104, 106
<b>Chap. VII. § III. Sec. 7.</b>	<b>Chap. IX. Sec. 5.</b>
<i>Önmum</i> ..... 7, 8	<i>Over, across</i> ..... 113
<i>Ordinal Numbers</i> ..... 81	<b>Chap. IX. Sec. 11.</b>
<i>Other, another</i> ..... 70	<i>Over, above</i> ..... 111
<b>Chap. V. Sec. 12.</b>	<b>Chap. IX. Sec. 20.</b>

## P

<i>Paradigm</i> ..... 179, 180	<i>Postpositions Case endings as.</i> 44, 94
<i>Participles.</i>	„ <i>Classification of</i> ..... 93
<i>Classification of</i> ..... 146	„ <i>Composite</i> ..... 111, 112
<i>Distinction between part, in</i>	„ <i>Euphonic changes in.</i> 95
이 and 야 non-existent ... 151	„ 는 with verbs giving
<i>Participles Relative</i> ..... 160-169	Condition ..... 105
„ <i>Verbal</i> ..... 150-158	<i>Postpositions Position in Sen-</i>
„     „     with post-	tence ..... 282
positions ..... 153, 154	<b>Chap. IX. Introduction.</b>
<i>Particle</i> ..... —	<i>Postpositions Simple</i> ... 94. 96-110
„ <i>Progressive, in</i> 덕 ... 132	<i>Verbal</i> ..... 113
<i>Parts of Speech.</i>	<i>Prepositions</i> ..... —
„ <i>Classification of</i> ..... 11	<b>Chap. IX.</b>
<i>Passive, construction.</i>	<i>Present tense</i> ..... 134
<b>Chap. I. § V.</b>	<i>Primitive Adverbs</i> ..... 255, 262
<i>Passive, voice</i> ..... 121, 122	<b>Chap. VII.</b>
<b>Chap. I. § V.</b>	<i>Principal parts of verb</i> ... 178, 242
<i>Passive Avoidance of</i> ..... 124	<i>Probable fut.-past tense</i> ..... 135
<b>Chap. I. § V.</b>	<i>Probably</i> ..... 226
<i>Past tense</i> ..... 134	<i>Progressive tense</i> ..... 135
<i>Perfected Past tense</i> ..... 134	<i>Pronominal Adj.</i> ..... 243
<i>Persons in verb.</i>	<b>Chap. V.</b>
„ forms in 노라, 마 ... 118	<i>Pronouns</i> ..... 59ff
„ non-existence ..... 115	<b>Chap. IV. V.</b>
<i>Phrases as Conjunctions</i> ..... 270	<i>Classification of</i> ..... 59
<i>Pluperfect tense</i> ..... 135	<i>Demonstrative</i> ..... 71, 72
<i>Possessive</i> ..... 94, 98	<b>Chap. V.</b>
<b>Chap. IX. Sec. 9.</b>	<i>Distributive</i> ..... 69, 70
<i>Postpositions</i> ..... 93ff	<b>Chap. V.</b>
<b>Chap. IX.</b>	

Euphonic Changes in .....	62	Relative .....	73, 164
Indefinite .....	66ff	Chap. IV. § II.	
Chap. V.		Restricted use of .....	64
Interrogative .....	66ff	Third Pers. Untranslatable...	63
Chap. IV. § III.		Pronunciation .....	—
Personal .....	60, 61, 62, 63	of Consonants.....	30-40
Chap. IV. § I.		of Diphthongs .....	23, 28
Personal 1st Person.....	60	To be learned from native...	2
„ 2nd „ .....	61, 62	of Vowels .....	15-22
„ 3rd „ .....	63	Proper Nouns .....	54, 55
Pronouns (cont.) .....	—	Propositive Termination .....	144
Reflexive .....	65		
Chap. IV. § I. Sec. 2.			

**R**

<i>Recently ; of Late.</i>		<i>Should, would</i> .....	—
Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 17.		Chap. I. § VI. Sec. 6.	
Reduplication .....	—	<i>Should</i> (conditional) .....	185
„ Effects of .....	48	Chap. I. § VI.	
Reflexive Pronouns .....	65	Simple Postposition.....	94, 96-110
Chap. IV. § I. Sec. 2.		<i>Since, after</i> .....	—
Relative Pronouns .....	73	Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 26.	
Chap. IV. § II.		Sinico-Korean .....	7, 243
Responsives .....	265, 266	Sinico-Korean adj. ....	243
<b>S</b>		<i>So</i> .....	—
<i>Same</i> .....	—	Chap. VII. § III. Sec. 4.	
Chap. V. Sec. 13.		<i>Some</i> .....	66, 70
<i>Seem, look</i> .....	221, 225	Chap. V. Sec. 4.	
Chap. I. § III. Sec. 17.		<i>Sometime</i> .....	—
<i>Seldom</i> .....	—	Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 28.	
Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 6.		<i>Sometimes</i> .....	—
Sentence Structure .....	281ff	Chap. VII § II. Sec. 5.	
<i>Several</i> .....	70	<i>Soon</i> .....	253
Chap. V. Sec. 9.		Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 23.	
<i>Shall, will</i> .....	134, 140	Specific Classifiers.....	77
Chap. I. § III. Sec. 5.		Specific Honorific Nouns .....	278
<i>Should, ought</i> .....	—	Specific Honorific Verbs..	274, 278
„ obligation .....	221, 223	<i>Still</i> ... 182, 189, 190, 196, 198, 270	
Chap. I. § III. Sec. 11.		Chap. X. Sec. 5.	

<i>Still, yet</i> (adv.) .....	255	Chap. VI. § II. Sec. 2.	
Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 20.		„ of Adverbs .....	261
Subordinate Conjunctions .....	270	Chap. VI. § II. Sec. 2.	
<i>Such, this, that</i> .....	—	Supine .....	170
Chap. V. Sec. 1.		<i>Suppose, think.</i>	
Superlative degree .....	—	Chap. I. § III. Sec. 12.	
Superlative of Adjectives .....	254		

## T

Teacher .....	2	<i>There</i> .....	72
Tenses.....	—	Chap. VII. § I. Sec. 2.	
„ Classification of.....	133	<i>Therefore</i> .....	—
„ Definition of.....	134, 135	Chap. VII. § III. Sec. 2.	
Tense roots .....	129, 133	<i>Think, suppose</i> .....	—
Terminations.		Chap. I. § III. Sec. 12.	
„ Classification of .....	137	<i>This, that, such</i> .....	71
„ Declarative .....	138,	Chap. V. Sec. 1.	
	139, 140	<i>Through, by</i> .....	94, 101, 102
„ Definition of .....	136	Chap. IX. Sec. 6.	
„ Imperative .....	145	<i>Times and Seasons</i> ...	82, 83, 84, 85
„ Interrogative .....	141,	<i>Till, until,</i> .....	107
	142, 143	Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 21.	
„ Propositional .....	144	<i>Titles</i> .....	56
Terms for servants etc. ....	280	<i>To</i> .....	94, 99, 100, 101, 102, 107
<i>Than</i> .....	250	Chap. IX. Sec. 4.	
{Chap. VI. § II.		<i>Too</i> (adv.) .....	259
{Chap. X. Sec. 12.		Chap. VII. § III. Sec. 8.	
<i>That</i> .....	270	<i>Too</i> (conj.) also .....	267
Chap. X. Sec. 11.		Chap. X. Sec. 3.	
<i>Then</i> (adv.) .....	—		
Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 12.			
<i>Then</i> (conj.) .....	270		
Chap. X. Sec. 10.			

## U

<i>Under</i> .....	111, 112	<i>Untill, till</i> .....	107
Chap. IX. Sec. 21.		Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 21.	
<i>Unless, if</i> .....	267, 112, 185	<i>Used to, formerly</i> .....	—
Chap. IX. Sec. 8.		Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 15.	

*Usually, generally* ..... —

**Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 3.**

Verb ..... Chap. VII.

**Chap. I.**

Active..... 119

Auxiliary ..... 210-219

Bases ..... —

Desiderative ..... 176

Negative..... 177

Volitive ..... 177

Causative ..... 121, 122, 123

Compound ..... 158

Conjugation of ..... —

Basal ..... 127, 179

Stem ..... 128

Tense Roots ..... 129-133

Future ..... 131

Past..... 130

Conjunctions with ..... 131*f*

Euphonic changes ..... 183

Meanings and uses of..... 183*f*

도 196; 덕 199; 다가 202; 지

197; 지라도 198; 가 197;

거나 192; 거늘 193; 거든

185; 거니와 190; 고만,

고런, 고련 195; 교 200;

교나, 교리오 201; 길늬 188;

마논 191; 면 185; 면서 203;

나 189; 니 186; 닛가 187;

며 194.

Contractions of ..... 234-241

호오, 잇소, 이오 with cer-  
tain nouns..... 222, 227

List of above nouns..... 221

Half-talk ..... 138, 140,

141, 144, 145

Imperative..... 115

Impersonality of ..... 228, 229

Indirect Discourse; in ..... 146*f*

Verbs (cont.)..... —

Moods..... —

Indicative ..... 147, 179, 180

Volitive... 117, 148, 179, 180

Nenter ..... 119, 120

Paradigm ..... 179, 180

Particle, progressive in 덕 132

Participles ..... —

Classification of..... 149

No distinction between  
participles in 여 and 야. 151

Relative ..... 160, 161, 169

Future ..... 166

Future past ..... 167

Imperfect ..... 168

Past ..... 163, 164, 165

Present ..... 162

Verbal..... 150-154

Future..... 159

Past ..... 155, 158

Postpositions with..... 153, 154

Passive ..... 121, 122

**Chap. I. § V.**

Avoidance of..... 124

**Chap. I. § V.**

Persons in ..... —

found in 노라, 마 ..... 118

lack of ..... 115

Position in Sentence ..... 282

Principle Parts ..... 178, 242

Supine ..... 170

Verbs (cont.).

Tenses..... —

Classification of ..... 133

Continued-Fut. .... 135

Future ..... 134

Future-Past ..... 134

Past ..... —

Pluperfect ..... 135

Present .....	134	Propositive .....	144
Probable-Fut.-Past .....	135	Verbal Noun.	
Progressive .....	135	„ in ㄷ기 .....	53, 172, 173
Tense roots .....	129-133	„ with pp. 는 .....	173
Terminations.....	—	„ „ pp. 에 .....	174
Classification of.....	137	„ „ pp. 로 .....	175
Definition of .....	136	„ ㅎ .....	53, 171
Declarative .....	138, 139, 140	Verbal Postposition.....	113
Imperative.....	145	Very .....	255
Interrogative.....	141, 142, 143	Chap. VII. § III. Sec. 6.	

## W

Want .....	211, 217	While .....	182, 202, 203, 227
Chap. I. § III. Sec. 14.		Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 10.	
Was, were .....	211	Why .....	255
Chap. I. § III. Sec. 14.		Chap. VII. § III. Sec. 1.	
Weights .....	9L	Will, shall .....	134, 140
When .....	260	Chap. I. § III. Sec. 5.	
Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 9.		Wish, hope .....	—
Whenever.....	—	Chap. I. § III. Sec. 15.	
Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 2.		With .....	94, 101, 102
Where .....	262	Chap. IX. Sec. 7.	
Chap. VII. § I. Sec. 3.		Without .....	—
Whether ... 182, 189, 192, 197, 267		Chap. IX. Sec. 8.	
Chap. V. Sec. 6.		Would, should.....	—
		Chap. I § III. Sec. 5.	

## Y

Yet. still.....	—
Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 20.	

## INDEX OF VERBAL FORMS.

Numbers in ordinary type refer to paragraphs in Part I. The heavy faced type refers to Part II.

하얏거든.....	134, 185	하얏겻노	134, 141 (2)
하야, Verbal Participle .....	150ff	하얏겻는가	134, 109
하얏죽하다 .....	215	하얏겻노고	134, 197
하야서 .....	153	하얏겻는지	134, 197
하야도 ...	196	하얏겻네	134, 141 (2)
하여, Verbal Participle .....	150ff	하얏겻노	134, 141 (5)
하여야 .....	153	하얏겻습니다	134, 138 (7)
하여이다, Appen. B. I. ....	—	하얏겻습노잇가	134, 141 (8)
하여가다 .....	212	하얏겻스면	134, 185
하얏죽하온, Hon. rel. part. of verb.....	215	하얏겻스닛가	134, 141 (8)
하얏죽할, rel. part. ....	215	하얏겻쇼	134, 138 (3)
하얏죽하다 .....	215	하얏겻카	134, 138 (1)
하얏죽스려온 }		하얏겻다마는	134, 191
하얏죽스렵다 }	215, 216	하얏겻데	135
하여는 .....	153	probable future past ...	138 (2)
하여보아라 }		하얏겻터이다	135, 138 (6)
하여보다 }	213	하얏겻터면	135, 185
하여보지 }		하얏겻터냐	135, 141 (1)
하여라 .....	145	하얏겻터니	135, 186
하여서 .....	153	하얏겻터잇가	135, 141 (8)
하여셔야 .....	153	하얏겻터노	135, 141 (2)
하여서는 .....	153	하얏겻터가 ...	135, 141, 269 and 197
하여든 .....	153	하얏겻터고	135, 197
하여도 .....	196	하얏겻터라	135, 138
하얏겻거든... 134 (future-past)	185	하얏겻지	135, 141 (4)
하얏겻기에 .....	172, 173	하얏겻지오	135, 133 (4)
하얏겻나 .....	134, 189	하얏겻지마는	135, 191
하얏겻노이다 .....	134, 138 (7)	하얏거나	134 (past) 192
하얏겻노잇가 .....	134, 141 (8)	하얏거늘	134, 193
하얏겻노냐 .....	134, 141 (1)	하얏거니와	134, 190
		하얏것마는, =하얏것마는...	134, 191



하엿꺾느니 .....	134, 186
하엿꺾느닛가 .....	134, 141 (8)
하엿기 .....	172 <i>f</i>
하엿기에 .....	174
하엿기가 .....	173
하엿기는 .....	173
하엿기를 .....	173
하엿기로 .....	175
하엿길니 .....	134, 188
하엿고나 .....	134, 201
하엿나 .....	134, 189
하엿나보다 .....	134, 211, 214
하엿느이다 .....	134, 138 (7)
하엿느잇가 .....	134, 141 (8)
하엿느냐 .....	134, 141 (1)
하엿느니 .....	134, 141 (1)
하엿느니라 .....	134, 140
하엿느잇가=하엿느닛가, q.v. —	
하엿느뇨 .....	134, 141 (2)
하엿는가 .....	134, 197
하엿느고 .....	134, 197
하엿느고나 .....	134, 201
하엿느고로 .....	134, 169 and

## II. Chap. X. Sec. 9. .... —

하엿느딤 .....	134, 169, 199
하엿느지 .....	134, 169, 197
하엿느지라 Book form marking a partial break .....	—
하엿네 .....	134, 138
하엿노 .....	134, 141 (5)
하엿노라 .....	134, 140 and 118
하엿노라고 .....	134, 140, 228 <i>f</i>
하엿소니, honorific form of 하엿스니, q.v. ....	—
하엿스온족, honorific form of 하엿슨족, q. v. ....	—
하엿습고, honorific form of 하엿고, q. v. ....	—
하엿습니다 .....	139 (7)

하엿습느잇가 .....	142 (8)
하엿습느딤 .....	139 (8)
하엿습메다 .....	135, 140
하엿습더니 .....	135, 182
하엿저오 .....	134, 139 (4)
하엿서도 .....	134,

## II. Chap. VII. § II.

### Sec. 7, 2 (c).

하엿췌습니다 .....	134, 139 (6)
하엿췌소 .....	134, 139 (3)
하엿췌다 .....	134, 139 (1)
하엿췌저오 .....	134, 139 (4)
하엿습니다, for 하엿습느이다 139 (6)	
하엿습닛가, for 하엿습느잇가 142 (8)	
하엿습메가, contr. for the following.	
하엿습더니가 .....	135, 143
하엿슬듯하다 .....	167, 225
하엿스며 .....	134, 194
하엿스면 .....	134, 183, 185
하엿스나 .....	134, 189
하엿스니 .....	134, 186
하엿스닛가 .....	134, 187
하엿스되 .....	134, 190
하엿슨들 .....	134, 190
하엿슨족 .....	134, 187
하엿스리오 and 하엿스리라 134, 140	
하엿슬겔	}
하엿슬거시	
하엿슬것	
하엿슬거슬	
하엿슬거시니 .....	223, 186
하엿슬거시오 .....	223, 138 (3)
하엿슬거시니라 .....	223, 140
하엿슬거시로되 .....	223, 190
하엿슬고 .....	167, 197



하엿슬직에 .....	167, 227	하오면 .....	137, 185
하엿슬지라도 .....	167, 198	하온 .....	137, 163
하엿스디 .....	134, 190	하오나 .....	137, 189
하엿쇼 .....	139 (3)	하오니 .....	137, 186
하엿다 .....	139, (1)	하온잇가 .....	137, 187.
하엿다가 .....	134, 202	하온가 .....	137, 197
하엿다고 .....	134, 228	하온디 .....	137, 199
하엿다마는 .....	134, 191	하온즉 .....	17, 187
하엿다더니, for 하엿다하더니		하온지 .....	137, 197
하엿맥 .....	134, 138 (2)	하옵겟습니이다 .....	137, 134, 141
하엿답테다, for 하엿다합테다,		하옵고 .....	137, 200
or 하엿다말합테다 .....	228	하옵니다 .....	138 (6)
하엿더이다 .....	135, 140	하옵니이다 .....	138 (6)
하엿더면 .....	135, 185	하옵니잇가 .....	141 (8)
하엿던 .....	135	하옵시오 .....	145
“half talk” for 하엿더냐		하옵시고 .....	137, 200
하엿더냐 .....	135, 141 (1)	하옵신 .....	137, 163
하엿더니 .....	135, 186	하옵시닛가 .....	137, 141 (9)
하엿더닛가 } 하엿던잇가 }	135, 141 (8)	하옵시다 .....	141 (4)
하엿더뇨 .....	135, 141 (2)	하옵쇼셔 .....	137, 145
하엿던가 .....	135, 197	하옵더이다 .....	140
하엿던고 .....	135, 197	하옵테다, Contr. for above.	
하엿던들 or, 들 .....	135, 190	하옵더니 .....	137, 134, 186
하엿더라 .....	135, 140	하옵던잇가 .....	143 (4)
하엿도다 .....	134, 201	하옵지오 .....	137, 138 (4)
하엿지 .....	142 (4)	하오려니와 .....	137, 176, 190
하엿지오 .....	139 (4)	하오리잇가 .....	137, 143
하엿지마는 .....	139, 191	하오리라 .....	137, 140
하여지이다, or 하여지어다 ...	145	하오리이다 .....	137, 140
하여지다 .....	211ff	하오릿가, Contr. for 하오리잇가	
하여주다 .....	211ff	하오더 .....	137, 190
하오 .....	138.3	하샤 .....	197
하요, or 하요, Verbal Participle		하게 .....	159
with 이오		하게오 ... 150ff F. V. P. with 이오	
하와 .....		하게하려하다 .....	159 3rd, 204ff
하와이다, Appen. B. I. ....		하게하다 .....	159 3rd
하와다, Appen. B. I. ....		하겟습니다 .....	134, 138 (7)
하오매 .....	137, 187	하게되다 .....	219
하오며 .....	137, 194	하겟것마는 .....	134, 191
		하겟거든 .....	134, 185

하갯기 .....	172	하갯스닛가 .....	134, 187
하갯기에 .....	172, 174	하갯슨을 .....	134, 190
하갯기가 .....	172ff	하갯습덕닛가.....	134, 143 (4)
하갯기를 .....	172ff	하갯스되 .....	134, 190
하갯기로 .....	172ff	하갯쇼.....	134, 138 (3)
하갯길니 .....	188	or 141 (6)	
하갯고 .....	134, 200	하갯다 .....	134, 138 (1)
하갯고나 .....	134, 201	하갯다가 .....	134, 202
하갯나 .....	134, 189	하갯다고.....	134, 228ff
하갯나보다 .....	134, 214	하갯다마는 .....	134, 191
하갯누이다.....	134, 138 (7)	하갯다터니 .....	134, 191, 186
하갯누잇가 .....	134, 141 (8)	하갯덕라 .....	135, 140
하갯누나 .....	134, 141 (1)	하갯데 .....	135, 140
하갯누니.....	134, 141 (1)	하갯답데다, for 하갯다하옵데다.	
하갯누니라 .....	134, 140	하갯더이다 .....	135, 140
하갯눈잇가, for 하갯누잇가		하갯덕면 .....	135, 185
하갯눈뇨.....	134, 141 (2)	하갯덕냐.....	135, 143 (1)
하갯눈가 .....	134, 197	하갯덕니 .....	135, 186
하갯눈고 .....	134, 197	하갯덕닛가.....	135, 143 (3)
하갯눈고로 .....	134, 169,	하갯덜잇가, for above.	
II. Chap. X. Sec. 9.		하갯덕뇨 .....	135, 143 (2)
하갯눈되 .....	134, 199	하갯덜가 .....	135, 197
하갯눈지 .....	134, 197	하갯덜고 .....	135, 197
하갯눈지라, Book form of future.		하갯덕라 .....	135, 140
하갯네 .....	134, 138	하갯도다.....	134, 138 (9)
하갯니.....	134, 141 (1)	하갯지.....	134, 141 (1)
하갯스닛가 .....	134, 187	하갯저오.....	134, 138 (5)
하갯노.....	134, 141 (5)	하갯저마는 .....	134, 138 (5) 191
하갯노라 .....	134, 140 and 118	하거나 .....	192
하갯습고, Honorific for 하갯고		하거나말거나 .....	192
q. v.		하거늘 .....	193
하갯습닛다.....	134, 138 (6)	하거니 .....	192
하갯습누잇가.....	134, 141 (8)	하거니와 .....	190
하갯습데다, 하갯습덕이다 .....		하거니말거니 .....	192
134, 140		하건마는, for 하갯마는 .....	191
하갯습저오 .....	138 (5)	하건되 .....	187
하갯스며 .....	134, 194	하거든 .....	185
하갯스면 .....	134, 185	하갯마는 .....	191
하갯스나 .....	134, 189	하기 .....	171ff
하갯스니 .....	134, 186	하기에 .....	174

하기가 .....	171f
하기는 .....	173
하기를 .....	173
하기로 .....	173
하길니 .....	188
하교.....	200
하교서 .....	

II. Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 26, 1.

하교십흐다 for 하교십소 .....	217
----------------------	-----

하교도

II. Chap. X. Sec. 5, 1.

하교논

II. Chap. X. Sec. 8, 2.

하교자하다 .....	205
하교저하다 .....	205
하교지고 .....	236, 241 (f)
하교말고 .....	232, 241 b.
하구나, for 하교나	
하 ..... 171	
하마 ..... 118	
하매 ..... 187	
하마고 ..... 228 and 118	
하며 ..... 194	
하면 ..... 185	
하면서 ..... 203	
하은, Appositive of 하. Introduces the reason.	

하이 .....	171, 53
하이어나 .....	171, 192
하리오 .....하 with verb 이오.	

It can be carried through all forms.

하인더 .....	
하일시니라 .....	
하넉다 .....	138 (6)
하넉다.....	138 (8)
하넉잇가 .....	141 (8)
하네, A provincialism for 하네	
하 ..... 163	
하나 .....	189

하나보다 .....	214
하냐..... 141 (1) for 하냐냐	
하넉이다 .....	138 (6)
하넉잇가, for 하넉니잇가... 141 (8)	
하논 .....	162
하냐냐 .....	141 (1)
하넉니..... 141 (1)	
하논이, Pres. Rel. Part with 이 "person who."	
하넉니잇가 .....	141 (8)
하논이잇가, for 하넉니잇가. q. v.	
하논이가, 하논이 (q. v.) with nom. ending.	
하논이는, 하논이 (q. v.) with appos. ending.	
하넉니라 .....	140
하넉잇가, for 하넉니잇가 q. v.	
하넉뇨 .....	141 (2)
하논가 .....	197
하논가보다 .....	214
하논고 .....	197
하논고면 .....	195
하논고면 .....	195
하논고나 .....	201
하논고로 .....	162

II. Chap. X. Sec. 9.

하논바 .....	162, 73
하논새 .....	162, 260
하논딕 .....	199
하논듯하다 .....	225
하논동마논동 .....	234, 241d.
하논도다 .....	138 (9)
하논테하다 .....	221
하논자 .....	162, 73
하논지 .....	197
하논지마논지 .....	231, 241, a.
하논지라, Book form marking a partial break.	
하논줄 .....	162, 221

하느줄을 ..... 221

II. Chap. I. § III. Sec. 6 a.

하느줄노 ..... 221

II. Chap. I. § III. Sec. 12.

하느보 ..... 211, 214

하느배 Conversational form  
among equals from 하느  
보다.

하느보다 ..... 214

하네 ..... 138 (2)

하이 ..... 163, 97

하니 ..... 186, or 143 (1)

하이가 ..... 163, and 97

하니싸 ..... 182, 187

하니싸니 ..... 182, 187

하니깐드로 ..... 182, 187

하니마니 ..... 232

하니라 ..... 140

하닛가 ..... 182, 187

하노 ..... 142 (5)

하노니 ..... 118, 186

하노라 ..... 118, 140

하노라하고 ..... 228

하노라고 Contr. for above.

하노, = 하느노 ..... 141 (2)

하가 ..... 197

하가배, Conversational form from

하가보다 ..... 214

하거시어늘 ..... 220ff, 193

하거시오 ..... 221, 223

하거시니 ..... 223, 186

하것 ..... 163ff

P.R. Part with 것.

하교 ..... 197

하교로 ..... 193ff

II. Chap. X. Sec. 9.

하바 ..... 165ff, 73

하다 ..... 138 (1)

하세 ..... 163, 226

하다하들 ..... 229, 190

하다하다 ..... 229, 138 (1)

하다고 ..... 229

하다마는 ..... 138 (1), 191

하다네 ..... 229, 138 (2)

하담니다 ..... 229, 138 (6)

하담데다 ..... 229, 140

하다더라 ..... 229, 140

하단다 ..... 229

하다더니 ..... 229, 186

하되 ..... 229, 199

하드시 ..... 229, 167

하듯 ..... 163, 225

하들 ..... 163, 190

하듯하다 ..... 225, 139 (1)

하동만동 ..... 234, (d)

하쟈 ..... 163

with 자 (者).

하죽 ..... 187

하죽슨 ..... 187

하지 ..... 197

하지만지 ..... 231

하지라 book form of past.

하줄 ..... 221

하줄을 ..... 221

하줄노 ..... 221

II. Ch. I. § III. Sec. 6, 2

(a) and Sec. 12. I; Ch.

VII. § III. Sec. 3 (note).

하니다 for 하옵느이다 ... 138 (7)

하느잇가 for 하옵느잇가 ... 141 (9)

하네 ..... 138 (2)

하네다 ..... 138 (6)

하세 ..... 144 (2)

하세다 ..... 144 (5)

하시오 ..... 145

하시다 ..... 144 (4)

하쇼 = 하옵쇼 ..... 135, 145

"half talk" much used

among women.

하레다 = 하옵더이다 ..... 140

- 홑뎡다, for  $\text{하옴더이다}$  ..... 140  
 홑뎡이다 ..... 140  
 홑뎡닛가, 홑뎡가 ..... 143 (3), (4)  
 홑뎡닛가, same as above.  
 홑 ..... 166  
 하라 contr. for  $\text{하여라}$  .. ..... 145  
 하래라 ..... 229 to inferiors  
 하라오 ..... 229  
 하라하여계시다 ..... 229  
 Verb, Part. form with  $\text{계시다}$  q. v.  
 하라하여라 ..... 229, 145  
 하라하라, contr. for above.  
 하라하려하다 ..... 229, 204  
 하라하다 ..... 229 (indefinite)  
 하라다가 ..... 229, 202  
 하라겟다 ..... 229  
 하라고 ..... 229  
 하라고하다 ..... 229. (indefinite).  
 하라말나하다 235= $\text{하나말나}$   
 하다.  
 하라면 ..... 229, 185  
 하란다, for  $\text{하라한다}$  ..... 229  
 하랍시더니, for  $\text{하라하랍시더니}$   
 229, 186 and chap. honorifics.  
 하랍더니, contraction for  $\text{하라하옴더니}$   
 $\text{하옴더니}$   
 하랍던잇가, for  $\text{하라하랍더니잇가}$   
 143 (4)  
 하라더니 ..... 229  
 with  $\text{하더니}$  q. v.  
 하랴 ..... 176  
 하라오 ..... 204 for  $\text{하랴하오}$   
 하랴하다 ..... 204ff  
 하랴겟다 ..... 204  
 하랴고하다 ..... 204ff  
 하랴런 ..... 204, 185  
 하랍니다, for  $\text{하랴하랍니다}$   
 204, 138 (7)  
 하랴나 ..... 204, 141 (3) or 189  
 하랴는 ..... 204, 162  
 하란다, for  $\text{하라한다}$  ..... 204  
 하랴으로 ..... 225  
 하랴이면 ..... 225  
 하라더니 ..... 204, 186  
 하랴다, for  $\text{하랴하얏다}$  ..... 204  
 하리라, for  $\text{하라고하여라}$  ..... 229  
 하어가다, for  $\text{하러가다}$  ..... 170  
 supine with 가다.  
 하려 ..... 176ff  
 하려하여라 ..... 204, 145  
 하려하들 ..... 204, 190  
 하려하다 ..... 204  
 하려고하다 ..... 204  
 하렴 ..... 240  
 하려면 ..... 204, 185  
 하려무나 ..... 240  
 하려니와 ..... 204, 190  
 하련마는, for  $\text{하려하것마는}$  ...  
 204, 191  
 하련다, for  $\text{하려한다}$  ..... 204  
 하련다마는, for  $\text{하려한다마는}$ ..  
 204, 228, 191  
 하렸마는,= $\text{하련마는}$ , q. v. .... —  
 하렸다,= $\text{하랴다}$ , q. v. .... —  
 하려지마는 ..... 204, 191  
 = $\text{하려하지마는}$ .  
 하리 ..... 140  
 홀이 ..... 166  
 F. Rel. Part. with 이  
 "person who."  
 하리이다 ..... 140  
 하리잇가 ..... 143  
 하리잇고 ..... 135, 143  
 book language.  
 하리오, F. tense in 리 with 오  
 133 (3)  
 하리니 ..... 134, 186  
 하리라 ..... 140  
 하리로다 ..... 131, 138 (9)

하리다, for 하리이다 .....	140
하릿가, for 하리잇가 .....	143
하료, for 하리오 q. v. ....	—
홀 .....	166
홀가, 홀까 .....	166, 197
홀가말가 .....	197, 231
홀가보다 .....	214
홀가시부다 ... 217 to inferiors.	
홀걸, for 홀거슬 .....	223
홀거시 .....	223
홀거시어늘 .....	223, 193
홀거시나 .....	223, 189
홀거시니 .....	223, 186
홀거시니라 .....	223, 140
홀거시라 .....	223, 140
“니” is omitted from above.	
홀거실다 .....	223
홀고 .....	197
홀만하다 .....	222
홀나 .....	237
홀나다가, for 하랴하다가 .....	204
홀나고, for 하랴고 .....	204
홀나말나하다 .....	235, 241 (c)
하느지 .....	197
홀너니 .....	239, 241 (i)
홀너라, ending 라 on above.	
홀년지 .....	197
홀바 .....	166, 73
홀번하다 .....	224
홀법 .....	222
홀썬일다 .....	221
홀썬더러 .....	221 with 더러
홀시 .....	226
홀스룩더욱 .....	227
홀세라 .....	166
with 세 and 이오 express fear similar to 홀나.	
홀세, for 홀시 q. v. ....	—
홀상부르다 .....	166
with 상 (相) and 부르다 =	

He appears as though he will.

홀성부르다, for above.

홀수 .....	221
홀수업다 .....	221
홀수잇다 .....	221
홀쌔 .....	226
홀듯 .....	220ff, 225
홀뜻하게 .....	225, 159
홀뜻하다 .....	220, 225
홀뜻시부다, for 십다 .....	217
홀동말동 .....	234, 241d
홀터 .....	221, 223
홀터이오니 .....	223, 138 (note)
홀터이면 .....	223, 185
홀터이니 .....	223, 186
홀지로다, Fut. Rel. Part. with	
갈지 & 이오 .....	138 (9)
홀줄 .....	221
홀줄을 .....	221
홀줄노 .....	221

## II Chap. I. § III Sec. 6, 2, (a) and Sec. 12. 1.

### Chap. VII § III Sec. 3 (note).

하샤, hon. from 하시오 for	
하여 .....	153
하소이다, Appen. B. I. ....	—
하습니다, for 하소읍니다. 138 (7)	
하섯니다 .....	134, 138 (6)
하서 .....	153

## II. Chap. VII. § II. Sec. 26.

하세 .....	144
하섯나 .....	134, 142 (3) or
189 fr. 하시오.	
하섯나잇가 .....	134, 142 (8)
fr. 하시오.	
하섯느고 .....	134, 197 fr. 하시오
하섯네 .....	134, 139 (2) „ „



하섯습지요...134, 139 (5) or 142	(7) fr. 하시오.
하섯쇼 ..... 134, 139 (3) or 142	(6) fr. 하시오.
하섯지 ..... 134, 142 (4) fr. 하시오	
하섯지요..... 134, 139 (4), or	142 (7) fr. 하시오.
하시오 ..... 145, or 273	
하신, Fr. Hon. 하시다 ..... 167	
하십세다, Contr. for 하시오세다	144 (5)
하시도소이다, Appen. B. I. ...	—
하쇼,=하쇼 ...	145
하쇼서 .....	145
하다 ..... 140 book form.	
하다가 .....	202
하다고 .....	228
하답테다,=하다함테다 .....	228, 140
하다더라 .....	228, 140
하단, for 하던 q. v. ....	—
하디 .....	199
하드시 .....	225
하듯.....	225
하데 .....	140
하덕이다 .....	140
하덕요나, for 하다고나 .....	240
하덕면 .....	140, 185
하던 {Rel. part ..... 168	
“half talk” for 하덕나 q. v,	
하덕나 .....	143 (1)
하덕니 .....	186
하덕니라 .....	136
하덕니마는 .....	186, 191
하덕닛가, Contr. for 하덕니잇가	143 (3)
하던잇가, same as above.	
하덕노 .....	143 (2)
하던가 .....	197
하던가보다 .....	194, 139 (1)

하던고 .....	197
하던지 .....	197
II. Chap. VII. § I, Sec. 3, 4.	
하던지마던지 .....	197, 231
하더라 .....	135, 140
하드시다.....	135
with hon. 시 and term ...	139 (1)
하든, for 하던 q. v. ....	—
하들, 들 .....	190
하듯 .....	225
하도 .....	196
하되 .....	190
하도록, for 하드록 .....	227
하도소이다, Appen. B. I. ....	—
하도다 .....	138 (9)
하자 .....	144
하자고 .....	205
하자고하다 .....	205
하잔락=하지아니하다 .....	206ff
하지 .....	141 (4) or 177
하지아니하다 .....	206ff
하지이다=하여지이다 .....	145
하지오 .....	141 (7)
하지마는.....	141 (4), 191
하지마오.....	208
하지를.....	177, 100, Acus past
added to Neg. Base .....	—
여.....	—
이 .....	96ff 160
이아, A verbal form of 아 .....	103
fr. 이오 used in expressing	
alarm.	
이어늘 .....	193
이어든 .....	185
이여, Appen. B. II. ....	—
이오 .....	160 with verb 하오.
이완되, for 이견대 .....	187
이을시다 .....	—
이거든..... for 하거든	185
이기에 .....	174 (note)

- 이고 ..... 200  
 이며 ..... 194  
 이련 ..... 185  
 이나 ..... 189  
 이냐 ..... 141 (1)  
 이니 ..... 186  
 이니라 ..... 140  
 이닛가, for 이늑니잇가..... }  
     fr. 이오. } 141 (8)  
 이닛까, for 이늑니잇가 ... }  
 이뇨 ..... 141 (2)  
 인가 ..... 197  
 인가보=인가보오 ..... 214  
 인가베, Conversational form  
     138 (2)  
 인가보오 ..... 214, 138 (3)  
 인가보다 ..... 214, 138 (1)  
 인교 ..... 197  
 인교로 ..... 162  
 II. Chap. X. Sec. 9.  
 인덕 ..... 199  
 인들 ..... 190  
 인즉 ..... 187  
 인지 ..... 197  
 인줄 ..... 221  
 입텐다, for 이웁덕니이다  
     140, 138 (7)  
 입멧가, for 이웁덕잇가..... 143 (4)  
 이라 ..... 140  
 이라도 ..... 198 도 with 이라.  
 이란다 ..... 228, 138 (1)  
 이라 ..... 176  
 이러니, The Progressive sign  
     덕 is sometimes with 이오  
     changed to 러. This then  
     is 186 or 239  
 이러라, See above and 덕라 ... 140  
 이리라 ..... 134, 140  
 이로교, Usage has allowed the  
     introduction of a connective  
     로 between the stem and  
     termination or particals  
     with the verb 일다. This  
     then equals 이오 or 일교 200  
 이로교나 (See 이로교)..... 201  
 이로세, (See 이로교)=일세.. 138 (2)  
 이로소이다, (See 이로교 and  
     Appendix B. I)..... —  
 이로라, (See 이로교) ..... 140  
 이로다, (See 이로교) ..... 138 (1)  
     Appen. B. II.  
 이로덕, (See 로교) ..... 190  
 일늑 ..... 188  
     길 changed into 일 from  
     verb 이오.  
 일너니 ..... 239, 241 (1)  
 일년지 ..... 197  
 일세 ..... 138 (1)  
 일다 ..... 138 (1)  
 일덕냐 ..... 135, 143 (1)  
 일덕니라 ..... 135, 140  
 일덕라 ..... 135, 140  
 일던가 ..... 135, 143 (note)  
 일뜻하다 ..... 220, 225  
 일지라도 ..... 198  
 일줄 ..... 221  
 이시니 ..... 272, 186 from 이오.  
 이시니라 ..... 272, 140  
 이시닛가, Contra. for 이시늑니  
     잇가 ..... 272 141 (8)  
 이시라 ..... 272, 140  
 이실다, hon. form of 일다 272.



이되 .....	190	이던지 .....	19, 7
이더면 .....	135, 185	<b>II. Chap. VII. § I. Sec. 3, 4.</b>	
이더냐 .....	135, 143 (1)	이더라 .....	135, 140
이더닛가 .....	135, 143 (3)	이되 .....	190
이더뇨 .....	135, 143 (2)	이지오 .....	141 (7)
이던가 .....	197	이지마는.....	141 (4), 191.

---





發行所 朝鮮耶穌教書會

朝鮮京城鐘路

印刷所 福音印刷合資會社

橫濱市山下町百〇四番地

印刷者 村岡平吉

橫濱市太田町五丁目八十七番地

發行者 神學博士 元杜尤  
著作兼 米國人 エチ、ヂー、アンダーウッド

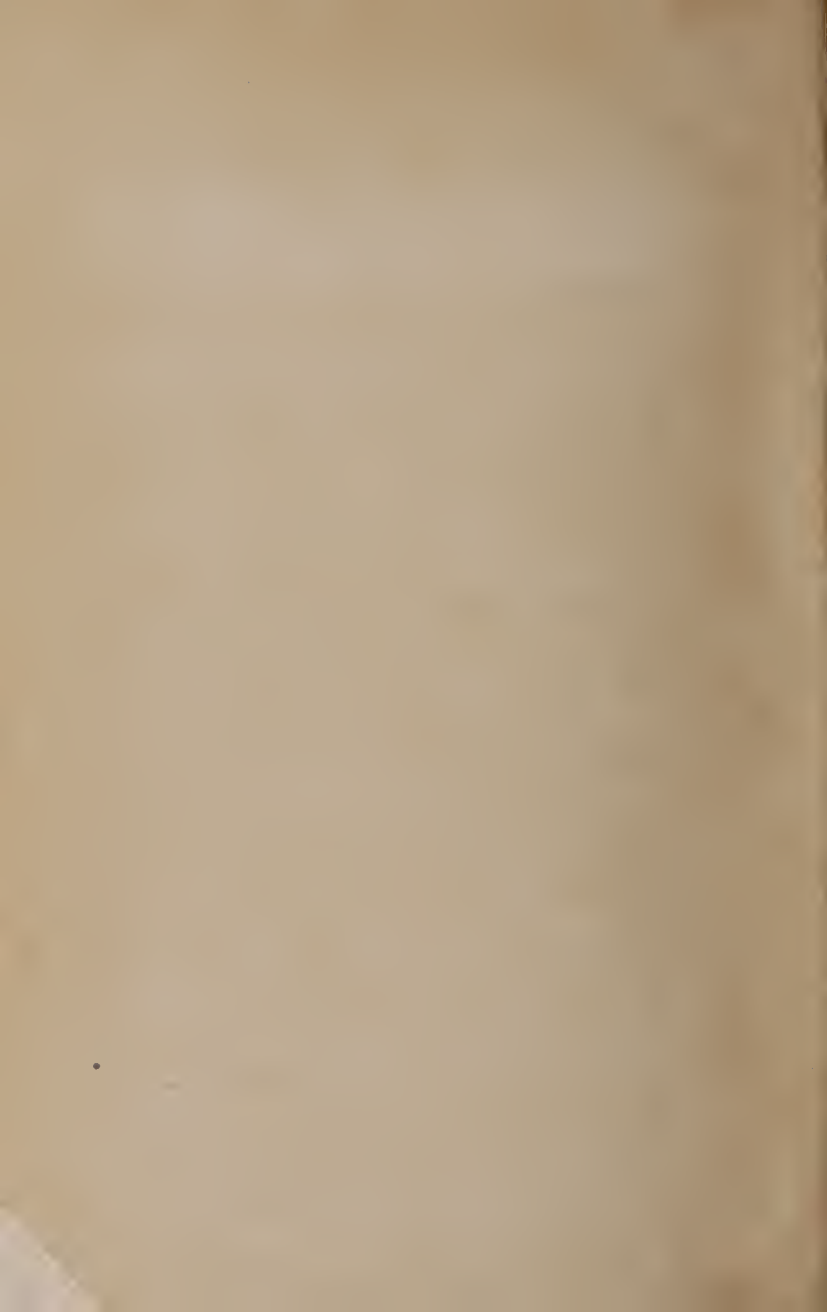
朝鮮京城南大門外御成町三十四番地

大正四年一月十二日發行  
大正三年十二月三十日印刷

定價金三圓五十錢









## Date Due

